

# Index

## A. EZRA MERKIN

Madoff feeder funds, **20:18**

## ABBREVIATIONS

Generally, **1:2**

## ABSOLUTE LIABILITY

Innocent defendants, **8:243**

## ACCESS INTERNATIONAL

Madoff feeder funds, globalization,  
**20:21**

## ACCOUNTANTS AND ACCOUNTING PRACTICES

Generally, **8:405 et seq.**

Actions in concert, **8:294**

Administrative regulation, **13:84**

Aider-Abettors (this index)

Audit Committees (this index)

Backdating of stock options, account-  
ing violations, **18:4, 18:7**

Chinese walls

Generally, **7:343 et seq.**

Evolution of rule, **7:344**

Operation, **7:345**

Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**

Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act  
(FCPA), **19:5, 19:9**

Fraudulent accounting, **13:112**

Injunctions, fraudulent accounting,  
**13:112**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:9**

Misrepresentation

Generally, **8:406**

Injunctions, fraudulent accounting,  
**13:112**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:9**

Violations in generally accepted  
accounting principles  
(GAAP). See Indirect-  
Impersonal Dealing (this  
index)

## ACCOUNTANTS AND ACCOUNTING PRACTICES

### —Cont'd

Omissions, **8:408**

Participation in misrepresentation by  
others, **8:407**

Parties and privity

Generally, **8:404 et seq.**

See also Private Actions (this  
index)

Private actions, materiality and  
GAAP, **8:42, 8:44**

Rule 10b-5 liability

Generally, **8:404 et seq.**

Actions in concert, **8:294**

Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et  
seq.**

Concerted action, **8:294**

Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**

Control person liability, **8:373 et  
seq.**

Inducement, **8:295**

Injunction suits, **8:303**

Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**

Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**

Participants generally, **8:292**

Participants in violations generally,  
**8:294**

Pleading

Generally, **8:319 et seq.**

Affirmative conduct, **8:321**

Aiding-abetting, **8:324**

Choice of parties, **8:320**

Conspiracy, **8:325**

No affirmative conduct, **8:322**

Participation, **8:323**

Special elements, **8:326**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:156 et seq.**

SEC rulemaking authority as to, **3:5**

Whistleblower bounty program, orig-  
inal information, **22:10**

**ACCREDITED INVESTORS**

Crowdfunding, JOBS Act, current status, **14:219**

**ACQUISITIONS**

See also Mergers (this index)

Agreements

Disclosure not required, **7:261**

Disclosure required, **7:260**

Cybersecurity, **26:2**

Definitions, **7:250**

Disclosure of inside information re

Generally, **7:248 et seq.**

Agreements

Disclosure not required, **7:261**

Disclosure required, **7:260**

Company, trading by, **7:256**

Definitions, **7:250**

Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**

Leaks, **7:255**

Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**

Plans, **7:211, 7:214**

Preliminary negotiations

Misleading statements, **7:253**

No statement made, **7:252**

Other situations, **7:254**

Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**

Rumors, **7:255**

Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**

Target response to tender offers, **7:258**

When disclosure required

Generally, **7:251 et seq.**

Agreements, disclosure of, **7:260**

Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**

Negotiated, **7:248**

Nonnegotiated

Generally, **7:267**

See also Tender Offer Fraud (this index)

Preliminary negotiations

Misleading statements, **7:253**

No statement made, **7:252**

**ACQUISITIONS—Cont'd**

Preliminary negotiations—Cont'd

Other situations, **7:254**

Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**

Target response to tender offers, disclosure of, **7:258**

**ACTIONS IN CONCERT**

Generally, **8:294**

Aider-Abettors (this index)

Madoff Ponzi scheme (this index)

Parties (this index)

**ACTUAL KNOWLEDGE**

Generally, **8:165**

See also Knowledge (this index)

Versions of scienter, relations among, **8:166**

**ADMINISTRATIVE**

**ENFORCEMENT**

Generally, **13:80 et seq.**

Accountings, SEC, **13:84**

Actual knowledge, scienter, **8:175**

Advantages and disadvantages

CFTC, **13:244**

SEC, **13:95**

SROs, **13:301**

Aider-abettors

Generally, **8:327 et seq., 8:368 et seq.**

Absence of benefit, **8:366**

Benefit, **8:364 et seq.**

Court cases, **8:328 et seq.**

Definitions, **8:349**

Elements, **8:352, 8:369**

Extent of benefit, **8:367**

Fact patterns, **8:370**

High conscious intent, **8:358**

Injunctions, **8:371**

Janus Capital, preparation for or assistance to another, **8:336 et seq.**

Knowledge of violation, **8:356 et seq.**

Nature of benefit, **8:367**

Origins of doctrine, **8:351**

Presence of benefit, **8:365**

Primary violations, **8:355**

INDEX

**ADMINISTRATIVE**

**ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd**

- Aider-abettors—Cont'd
  - PSLRA, **8:347**
  - Requirements, **8:352**
  - SEA § 20(f), **8:348**
  - Substantial assistance
    - Generally, **8:359 et seq.**
    - Extraordinary actions, **8:362**
    - Inaction, **8:363**
    - Ordinary actions, **8:362**
    - Proximate cause, **8:360**
    - Silence, **8:363**
    - Timing, **8:361**
  - Violations, **8:370**
- Amicus curiae participation in private litigation, **13:79, 13:234, 13:293**
- Ancillary relief
  - CFTC
    - Generally, **13:242**
    - Injunctions and, **13:250**
  - Civil penalties, **13:108 et seq.**
  - Injunctions (this index)
  - Insider trading charges, **7:419, 7:437**
  - SEC
    - Generally, **13:93**
    - Civil penalties, **13:108**
    - Injunctions and, **13:107 et seq.**
    - SROs, **13:299**
    - WorldCom, **13:109**
- Asset freezes, **13:100**
- Audit committee standards,
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **8:458**
- Bar orders. Collateral bars against individuals, below
- Bounties to informants, **7:445**
- Burden of proof, insider trading charges, **7:366**
- Causation, **10:1**
- Cease and desist orders
  - CFTC, **13:239**
  - Likelihood of future violation, **13:239**
  - Permanent, **13:85**
  - SEC, **13:85, 13:86**
  - Temporary, **13:86**

**ADMINISTRATIVE**

**ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd**

- CFTC
  - Generally, **13:235 et seq.**
  - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:244**
  - Ancillary relief
    - Generally, **13:242**
    - Injunctions and, **13:250**
  - Cease and desist orders, **13:239**
  - Collateral effects of orders, **13:241**
  - Cryptocurrencies, **25:8**
  - Duration of orders, **13:243**
  - Evidence, **13:236**
  - Proof standards, **13:236**
  - Scienter, **13:237**
  - Trading privileges, denial of, **13:240**
- Character of proceedings
  - CFTC, **13:235**
  - SEC, **13:80**
  - SROs, **13:295**
- Civil penalties
  - See also Civil Penalties (this index)
  - Ancillary relief, **13:108**
  - CFTC, **13:238**
  - Injunctions (this index)
  - Insider trading charges, **7:420**
  - SEC, **13:83**
- Collateral bars against individuals
  - Generally, **13:87**
  - Corporate office orders, **13:88**
  - Injunctions including, **13:117**
- Collateral effects of orders
  - CFTC, **13:241**
  - SEC, **13:92**
  - SROs, **13:298**
- Compliance orders, SEC, **13:82**
- Conspiracies, **8:312**
- Constructive knowledge and scienter, **8:186**
- Control person liability
  - Generally, **8:373 et seq.**
  - See also Control Person Liability (this index)
  - Insider trading charges
    - Generally, **7:451 et seq.**

**ADMINISTRATIVE**

**ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd**

- Control person liability—Cont'd
- Insider trading charges—Cont'd
  - All control persons, **7:453**
  - Amount of liability, **7:459**
  - Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**
  - B test, **7:456**
  - Contribution to violation, **7:458**
  - Failure to act, **7:455**
  - Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
  - Knowledge
    - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
    - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
  - Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**
  - Reckless disregard
    - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
    - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
  - Requirements, **7:452**
  - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
  - Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**
  - A test, **7:453**
- Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:329**
- Criminal enforcement
  - See also Criminal Enforcement (this index)
  - Compared, **13:95**
- Disgorgement, **13:84**
- Disposition of penalties, **7:445**
- Double jeopardy limitations, insider trading charges, **7:443**
- Duration of orders
  - CFTC, **13:243**
  - SEC, **13:94, 13:300**
- Equitable relief generally, **13:118**
- Evidence
  - CFTC, **13:236**
  - SEC, **13:91**
  - SROs, **13:297**
- Implied liability
  - See also Implied Liability (this index)

**ADMINISTRATIVE**

**ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd**

- Implied liability—Cont'd
  - Contraction era, **3:81, 3:82**
  - Expansion era, **3:61, 3:62**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, GAAP violations, **7:65, 7:71**
- Informal enforcement actions
  - CFTC, **13:233**
  - SEC, **13:78**
  - SROs, **13:292**
- Informants, awards to, **7:445**
- Injunctions (this index)
- Investigations
  - Generally, **13:1 et seq.**
  - See also Investigations (this index)
- Judge or jury
  - Insider trading charges, **7:421, 7:446**
  - Penalty actions, **7:446**
- Jurisdiction
  - Generally, **11:2 et seq.**
  - See also Jurisdiction (this index)
- Limitation of SEC actions, **13:89, 13:90, 13:184 to 13:189**
- MD&A predictions and projections, disclosure requirements, **7:13**
- Misappropriation theory of insider liabilities, **7:578**
- Monetary penalties
  - CFTC, **13:238**
  - SEC, **13:83, 13:108**
- Motion practice, **7:365**
- National Securities Markets Improvement Act (NSMIA), **3:199**
- Orders
  - Collateral effects of
    - CFTC, **13:241**
    - SEC, **13:92**
    - SROs, **13:298**
  - Compliance orders, **13:82**
- Penalty actions
  - Generally, **7:438**
  - Aider-abettors, **7:449**
  - Amount of penalty
    - Control persons, **7:459**
    - Court-imposed, **7:439**
  - Bounties, **7:445**

## INDEX

### ADMINISTRATIVE

#### ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd

##### Penalty actions—Cont'd

Control persons, penalties imposed on, **7:440**

Court imposed penalties, **7:439**

Disposition of penalties, **7:445**

Double jeopardy limitations, **7:443**

Factors considered in imposition of penalties, **7:442**

Informants, awards to, **7:445**

Judge or jury, **7:446**

Maximum penalties imposed, **7:441**

##### Persons liable

Generally, **7:447**

Aider-abettors, **7:449**

Control person liability, above  
Employers, **7:450**

Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**

Tipsters, **7:448**

Traders, **7:448**

Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**

Settled penalties, **7:444**

Tippees, penalties imposed on, **7:439**

Traders, penalties imposed on, **7:439**

Procedural fairness, SROs, **13:296**

##### Proof standards

CFTC, **13:236**

SEC, **13:91**

SROs, **13:297**

Quantum of proof, insider trading charges, **7:366**

Quasi-judicial jurisdiction of SEC, **10:1**

Reliance, **10:1**

Respondeat superior liability, insider trading charges, **7:450**

Rule 10b-5, implied liability, **3:62, 3:82**

##### Sanctions

SEC, **13:81, 13:82**

Statutory, **7:417**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, audit committee standards, **8:458**

### ADMINISTRATIVE

#### ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd

##### Scienter

Generally, **10:1**

Actual knowledge, **8:175**

CFTC, **13:237**

Constructive knowledge, **8:186**

Diligence, lack of, **8:235**

Negligence, **8:235**

Touting, **8:98**

Unreasonable conduct, **8:235**

SEA § 16(b), **7:159**

##### SEC

Advantages and disadvantages, **13:95**

##### Ancillary relief

Generally, **13:93**

Injunctions and, **13:107 et seq.**

WorldCom, **13:109**

Asset freezes, **13:100**

Backdating stock options, investigations, **18:6, 18:8**

##### Cease and desist orders

Permanent, **13:85**

Temporary, **13:86**

Character of proceedings, **13:80**

Collateral effects of orders, **13:92**

Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:329**

Discovery rule rejected for limitation of actions, **13:90**

Duration of orders, **13:94**

Enforcement Manual 2010 revisions, **20:15**

Equitable relief generally, **13:118**

Evidence, **13:91**

Limitation of actions, **13:89, 13:90**

Proof standards, **13:91**

Role in, **10:1**

Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act (SLUSA), **3:216**

##### SROs

Generally, **13:294 et seq.**

Advantages and disadvantages, **13:301**

Ancillary relief, **13:299**

Character of proceedings, **13:295**

Collateral effects of orders, **13:298**

**ADMINISTRATIVE**

**ENFORCEMENT—Cont'd**

- SROs—Cont'd
  - Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:329**
  - Duration of orders, **13:300**
  - Evidence, **13:297**
  - Procedural fairness, **13:296**
  - Proof standards, **13:297**
  - Standards, **13:297**
  - Summary proceedings, **13:302**
  - State laws, **13:318, 13:328**
  - State regulators, **3:210**
  - Summary proceedings, SROs, **13:302**
  - Tender offer challenges, **6:138**
  - Tipping, **7:159**
  - Trading privileges, denial of, **13:240**

**ADMINISTRATIVE**

**ENFORCEMENT ACTION**

- Whistleblower bounty program, successful action, **22:14**

**ADMISSION OF WRONGDOING**

- Compromise and settlement, **13:166 et seq.**

**ADVERTISING**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**ADVISERS**

- See also Analysts (this index)
- Insider trading liability, **7:652**

**AFFINITY FRAUD**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:3**

**AFFIRMATIVE DEFENSES**

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA) (this index)

**AGGREGATE ACCOUNTING**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

**AGREEMENT PLANNING**

- See Transaction Planning (this index)

**AIDER-ABETTORS**

- Generally, **8:327 et seq.**
- Absence of benefit, **8:366**
- Actions in concert, **8:294**
- Administrative enforcement
  - Generally, **8:368 et seq.**

**AIDER-ABETTORS—Cont'd**

Administrative enforcement—Cont'd

- Elements, **8:369**
- Fact patterns, **8:370**
- Injunctions, **8:371**
- Violations, **8:370**
- Benefit, **8:364 et seq.**
- Conspirators compared, **8:292**
- Court cases, **8:328 et seq.**
- Criminal enforcement, **8:372**
- Definitions, **8:349**
- Elements, **8:352**
- Extent of benefit, **8:367**
- Extraordinary actions, **8:362**
- High conscious intent, **8:358**
- Inaction, **8:363**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:98**
- Injunctions, **8:371**
- Insiders, **8:339, 8:340**
- Insider trading, **7:449**
- Janus Capital
  - Federal securities laws, applicability, **8:336 to 8:345**
  - Impact of Janus decision, **8:337**
  - Insiders, liability for statements of their corporations, **8:339, 8:340**
  - Legal entity, liability for statements of another, **8:338**
  - Observations and tentative conclusions, **8:342 et seq.**
  - Preparation for or assistance to another, **8:336 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5(a) and (c), **8:345**
  - SEC enforcement actions, applicability, **8:343**
  - Shield function, **8:341**
  - State law, applicability to, **8:344**
- Knowledge of violation, **8:356 et seq.**
- Legal entity, liability for statements of another, Janus Capital, **8:338**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, breach of fiduciary duty, **20:5**
- Nature of benefit, **8:367**
- Ordinary actions, **8:362**
- Origins of doctrine, **8:351**

## INDEX

### AIDER-ABETTORS—Cont'd

- Parties and privity
  - Generally, **8:327 et seq.**
  - See also Parties (this index)
- Pleading
  - Generally, **8:324**
  - Affirmative conduct, **8:321**
  - Choice of parties, **8:320**
  - Conspiracy, **8:325**
  - No affirmative conduct, **8:322**
  - Participation, **8:323**
  - Special elements, **8:326**
- Preparation for or assistance to another, Janus Capital, **8:336 et seq.**
- Presence of benefit, **8:365**
- Primary violations, **8:355**
- Privity
  - Implied liability, **8:279**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:269**
  - SA § 17(a), **8:279**
  - Sales fraud, **8:269**
- Proximate cause, **8:360**
- PSLRA, **8:347**
- Requirements, **8:352**
- Rule 10b-5 liability
  - Actions in concert, **8:294**
  - Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**
  - Concerted action, **8:294**
  - Conspirators compared, **8:292**
  - Inducement, **8:295**
  - Injunction suits, **8:303**
  - Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**
  - Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**
  - Janus Capital, Rule 10b-5(a) and (c), **8:345**
  - Participants generally, **8:292**
  - Participants in violations generally, **8:294**
  - Pleading, **8:319 et seq.**
- SEA § 20(f), **8:348**
- Silence, **8:363**
- State law, applicability of Janus Capital, **8:344**
- Substantial assistance
  - Generally, **8:359 et seq.**
  - Extraordinary actions, **8:362**

### AIDER-ABETTORS—Cont'd

- Substantial assistance—Cont'd
  - Inaction, **8:363**
  - Ordinary actions, **8:362**
  - Proximate cause, **8:360**
  - Silence, **8:363**
  - Timing, **8:361**

### ALLEGATIONS

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA) (this index)

### ALTERNATE ACCOUNT STATEMENTS

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### ALTERNATIVE DISPUTE RESOLUTION

- See Arbitration (this index)

### AMERICAN LAW INSTITUTE (ALI)

- Federal Securities Code, **1:23**
- Integration of fraud rules, proposals for, **3:52**
- IPA, current status, **3:154**

### AMERICAN STOCK EXCHANGE (ASE)

- Broker-dealer supervision requirements, **14:174**
- Liabilities under SRO rules
  - Generally, **14:62 et seq.**
- See also Self Regulatory Organizations (this index)

### AMICUS CURIAE

- Agency participation in private litigation
  - CFTC, **13:234**
  - SEC, **13:79**
  - SROs, **13:293**
- Wells Submissions (this index)
- Whistleblowers, Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:21**

### ANALOG DEVICES INC.

- Backdating of stock options, **18:1, 18:10**

### ANALYSTS

- Full disclosure regulations, **7:528**

**ANALYSTS—Cont'd**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:168**

**ANCILLARY RELIEF**

Generally, **13:93**

Administrative enforcement

CFTC, **13:242**

SEC, **13:93**

SROs, **13:299**

CFTC injunctions and, **13:250**

Criminal enforcement

CFTC references, **13:260**

SEC references, **13:130**

Disgorgement (this index)

Injunctions (this index)

Insider trading actions, **7:490**

Rescission (this index)

Restitution (this index)

SEC injunctions

Generally, **13:107 et seq.**

For detailed treatment

See Injunctions (this index)

**ANNUAL REPORTS**

Generally, **6:242**

Proxies and proxy solicitations, **6:211**

**ANNUITIES**

Flexible fund annuities as securities,  
**5:25**

Variable annuities as securities, **5:23**

**APPEARANCE**

Arbitration (this index)

**APPLE INC.**

Backdating of stock options, **18:8**

**APPRAISALS AND APPRAISAL RIGHTS**

Generally, **6:192, 6:193**

Exclusive appraisal rights, **6:192**

**APPROVAL**

SEC investigations, use of wiretap,  
**13:151**

**ARBITRATION**

Generally, **15:1 to 15:77**

AAA arbitration, **15:8**

Agreements. Pre-dispute agreements,  
below

**ARBITRATION—Cont'd**

Amendments to pleadings, **15:21**

Appearance

Hearings, **15:25**

Sanctions for noncompliance with  
arbitral orders, **15:63**

Aspects, **15:60**

Awards

Generally, **15:50 et seq.**

Challenging awards, below

Equities, awards based on, **15:75**

Madoff feeder funds, awards  
against, **20:18**

Payment, **15:64**

Power of arbitrator to grant, **15:57**

Refusal to vacate, **15:59**

Sanctions for noncompliance.  
Sanctions, below

Briefs, **15:47**

Broker as hostile witness

Claimants' case, **15:30**

Respondents' case, **15:40**

Broker-dealer disputes

Clearing brokers, **15:72**

Correspondent introducing  
brokers, **15:72**

Equities, awards based on, **15:75**

Failure to supervise, **15:73**

Introducing brokers, **15:72**

Litigation and arbitration  
compared, **15:6**

Predispute agreements, **15:5**

Punitive damages, **14:111, 15:74**

Securities law, arbitral extensions,  
**15:71 et seq.**

Splitting the baby, **15:75**

SRO arbitration, **15:8**

Transaction Planning (this index)

Unsuitability, **15:73**

Witnesses, brokers as, **15:30,**  
**15:40**

Challenging awards

Generally, **15:51 et seq.**

Authority, award exceeding, **15:57**

Common law grounds, **15:59**

Correction, **15:58**

Corruption, **15:54**

Evident partiality, **15:55**

## INDEX

### ARBITRATION—Cont'd

#### Challenging awards—Cont'd

Federal Arbitration Act § 10(a)(1),  
**15:54**

Federal Arbitration Act § 10(a)(2),  
**15:55**

Federal Arbitration Act § 10(a)(3),  
**15:56**

Federal Arbitration Act § 10(a)(4),  
**15:57**

Federal Arbitration Act § 11, **15:58**  
Fraud, **15:54**

Grounds, **15:53 et seq.**

Jurisdictional, **15:57**

Misconduct, **15:56**

Modification, **15:58**

Partiality, **15:55**

Power of arbitrator, award exceeding,  
**15:57**

Procedure, **15:52**

Refusal to vacate, **15:59**

Undue influence, **15:54**

#### Claimants' case

Attorneys' fees, **15:38**

Briefs, **15:47**

Broker as hostile witness, **15:30**

Closing, **15:46**

Costs, **15:38**

Cross-examination, defending against,  
**15:33**

Damages, **15:35**

Direct examination of witnesses,  
**15:31, 15:43**

Evidence rules, **15:32**

Expert witnesses

Generally, **15:34**

Cross examination, **15:42**

Interest, **15:38**

Mitigation of damages, **15:35**

Presentation, **15:29**

Punitive damages, **15:36, 15:37, 15:74**

Summation, **15:46**

#### Claims

Amendments to pleadings, **15:21**

Considerations before filing, **15:12**

Filing, **15:13**

Preparing, **15:13**

### ARBITRATION—Cont'd

#### Claims—Cont'd

Responding to, **15:14**

Class actions, **15:67**

Clearing brokers, **15:72**

Considerations before filing claims,  
**15:12**

Consolidation, **15:18**

Correction, challenging awards,  
**15:58**

Correspondent introducing brokers,  
**15:72**

Corruption challenges to awards,  
**15:54**

Court cases, **15:3, 15:71**

Cross-examination

Claimants' case, **15:33**

Respondents' case, **15:41, 15:44**

Customer, defined, **15:10**

Damages

Attorneys' fees, **15:38**

Costs, **15:38**

Interest, **15:38**

Mitigation of damages, **15:35**

Punitive damages, **15:36, 15:37, 15:74**

Definition of customer, **15:10**

Development of securities industry arbitration, **15:4**

Disciplinary authority

References to by arbitration, **15:62**

Relationship to arbitration, **15:61**

Disciplinary sanctions

Arbitral awards, failure to pay,  
**15:64**

Noncompliance with arbitral orders for production of documents or appearance, **15:63**

Discovery, **15:15, 15:63**

Equities, awards based on, **15:75**

Evidence, prejudicial material offered in, **15:19**

Evidence rules, **15:32**

Exchange arbitration systems, **15:8**

Expert witnesses

Claimants' experts, **15:34**

Cross examination, **15:42**

Respondents' experts, **15:45**

**ARBITRATION—Cont'd**

Expungement, **15:70**  
 Failure to supervise, **15:73**  
 Filing claims  
     Generally, **15:13**  
     Amendments to pleadings, **15:21**  
 Fraud challenges to awards, **15:54**  
 Hearings  
     Generally, **15:26 et seq.**  
     Adjournments, **15:23**  
     Appearances, **15:25**  
     Awards, **15:50 et seq.**  
     Briefs, **15:47**  
     Broker as hostile witness, **15:30, 15:40**  
     Claimants' case, **15:29**  
     Closing, **15:46**  
     Cross-examination  
         Claimants' case, **15:33**  
         Respondents' case, **15:41, 15:44**  
     Direct examination  
         Claimants' case, **15:31**  
         Respondent's case, **15:43**  
     Evidence rules, **15:32**  
     Expert witnesses  
         Claimants' experts, **15:34**  
         Cross examination, **15:42**  
         Respondents' experts, **15:45**  
     Failure to appear, **15:25**  
     Opening statements, **15:28**  
     Posthearing procedures, **15:48 et seq.**  
     Prehearing procedures, **15:11 et seq.**  
     Records of proceedings, **15:24**  
     Reopening, **15:49**  
     Respondents' case, **15:39 et seq.**  
     Sequestration of witnesses, **15:27**  
     Situs of, **15:20**  
     Summation, **15:46**  
 Implied liabilities under SRO rules, **14:72**  
 Introducing brokers, **15:72**  
 Joinder, **15:18**  
 Jurisdictional challenges, **15:57**  
 Limitation of actions, **15:9**  
 Litigation compared, **15:6**

**ARBITRATION—Cont'd**

Madoff feeder funds, awards against, **20:18**  
 Margin rules, applicability in, **14:61**  
 McMahon case, **15:3, 15:71**  
 Mediation, **15:69**  
 Mitigation of damages, **15:35**  
 Modification, challenging awards, **15:58**  
 Orders, noncompliance sanctions  
     Appearance, **15:63**  
     Production of documents, **15:63**  
 Partiality challenges to awards, **15:55**  
 Payment, disciplinary sanctions for failure to pay arbitral awards, **15:64**  
 Pleadings, **15:21**  
 Posthearing procedures  
     Generally, **15:48 et seq.**  
     Reopening the hearing, **15:49**  
 Pre-dispute agreements  
     Generally, **15:5**  
     Clearing brokers, **15:72**  
     Development, **15:4**  
     Transaction planning, **12:11**  
     Validity, **15:3, 15:71**  
 Prejudicial material offered in evidence, **15:19**  
 Preparing claims, **15:13**  
 Procedures  
     Generally, **15:11 et seq.**  
     AAA arbitration, **15:8**  
     Adjournments, **15:23**  
     Amendments to pleadings, **15:21**  
     Awards, **15:50 et seq.**  
     Briefs, **15:47**  
     Consolidation, **15:18**  
     Cross-examination  
         Claimants' case, **15:33**  
         Respondents' case, **15:41, 15:44**  
     Discovery, **15:15, 15:63**  
     Evidence rules, **15:32**  
     Exchange arbitration systems, **15:8**  
     Filing claims, **15:13**  
     Hearings, above  
     Joinder, **15:18**  
     Jurisdictional challenges, **15:57**  
     Pleadings, **15:21**

## INDEX

### ARBITRATION—Cont'd

#### Procedures—Cont'd

- Posthearing process, **15:48 et seq.**
- Prehearing, **15:11 et seq.**
- Prejudicial material offered in evidence, **15:19**
- Preparing claims, **15:13**
- Reopening the hearing, **15:49**
- Respondents' case, **15:39 et seq.**
- Responding to claims, **15:14**
- Selection of arbitrators, **15:16**
- Sequestration of witnesses, **15:27**
- Severance, **15:18**
- Situs of hearing, **15:20**
- SRO arbitration, **15:8**
- Production of documents, disciplinary sanctions for noncompliance with arbitral orders, **15:63**
- Punitive damages
  - Generally, **15:36, 15:37, 15:74**
  - Broker-dealer liability, **14:111**
- Records of proceedings, **15:24**
- Respondents' case
  - Generally, **15:39 et seq.**
  - Briefs, **15:47**
  - Broker as hostile witness, **15:40**
  - Closing, **15:46**
  - Cross-examination, defending against, **15:41, 15:44**
  - Expert witnesses, **15:45**
  - Summation, **15:46**
- Responding to claims, **15:14**
- RICO claims, **15:66**
- Rodriguez case, **15:3, 15:71**
- Sanctions
  - Appearance, **15:63**
  - Payment, **15:64**
  - Production of documents, **15:63**
- Securities law, arbitral extensions, **15:71 et seq.**
- Selection of arbitrators, **15:16**
- Sequestration of witnesses, **15:27**
- Severance, **15:18**
- Six-year eligibility rules, **15:9**
- SRO arbitration, **15:8**
- SRO rules, implied liabilities, **14:72**
- Successful and unsuccessful cases, **15:7**

### ARBITRATION—Cont'd

- Suitability rules, **14:205**
- Transaction planning, **12:11**
- Undue influence challenges to awards, **15:54**
- Unsuitability, **15:73**
- Validity of arbitration provisions, **15:3, 15:71**
- Witnesses
  - Broker as hostile witness, **15:30, 15:40**
  - Cross-examination
    - Claimants' case, **15:33**
    - Respondents' case, **15:41, 15:44**
  - Direct examination
    - Claimants' case, **15:31**
    - Respondent's case, **15:43**
  - Evidence rules, **15:32**
  - Expert witnesses
    - Claimants' experts, **15:34**
    - Cross examination, **15:42**
    - Respondents' experts, **15:45**
  - Sequestration, **15:27**

### ARGUMENTS

- Rajaratnam criminal case. Insiders and Insider Trading (this index)

### ARREST

- Criminal inside trading, Raj Rajaratnam, **21:4**

### ASE

- See American Stock Exchange (this index)

### ASSET MANAGEMENT UNIT

- SEC investigations, **20:12**

### ASSETS

- Disclosure requirements
  - Generally, **6:261 et seq., 6:267**
- Assets
  - Reasons, **6:273**
  - Value of assets, below
- Existence of assets, **6:262**
- Misrepresentations of value of assets
  - Generally, **6:270**
  - Defenses, **6:271**
  - Precautions, **6:272**

**ASSETS—Cont'd**

Disclosure requirements—Cont'd

Value of assets

Generally, **6:263 et seq.**

Firm offers, **6:265**

Hard data, **6:264**

Misrepresentations

Generally, **6:270**

Defenses, **6:271**

Precautions, **6:272**

Modified view

Disposition plans, **6:266**

Hard data, **6:264**

Other situations, **6:268**

Policies, **6:269**

Reasons, **6:269**

Replacement costs, **6:267**

Traditional view, **6:263**

Freezes, SEC, **13:100**

Insider use of information about,  
**7:206**

Sales. See Mergers (this index)

**ATTORNEY-CLIENT PRIVILEGE**

Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:8**

**ATTORNEY GENERAL ERIC SCHNEIDERMAN OF NEW YORK**

Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:336**

**ATTORNEYS**

Generally, **8:409 et seq.**

Actions against attorneys by SEC.  
SEC actions against, below

Actions in concert, **8:294**

Aider-Abettors (this index)

Backdating of stock options, **18:7, 18:11**

Chinese walls

Generally, **7:343 et seq.**

Evolution of rule, **7:344**

Operation, **7:345**

Conflicts of interest

CFTC investigations, **13:207**

SEC investigations, **13:15**

SRO investigations, **13:277**

**ATTORNEYS—Cont'd**

Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**

Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**

Investigations

Generally, **13:1 et seq.**

See also Investigations (this index)

Backdating of stock options, **18:7, 18:11**

CFTC cases, **13:219**

SEC cases, **13:27**

SRO cases, **13:281**

Issuers, advisers to as insiders, **7:569**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, compliance counsel, **20:5**

Misrepresentations

Generally, **8:411**

Bond counsel issuing improper legal opinion, SEC actions against, **8:442**

Participation, **8:410**

Multiple clients

CFTC investigations, **13:207**

SEC investigations, **13:15**

SRO investigations, **13:277**

Parties and privity

Generally, **8:409 et seq.**

See also Parties (this index)

“PIPE” schemes, SEC actions against, **8:443**

Privileges

Generally, **13:31 et seq.**

Attorney-client

Generally, **13:36**

Waiver, **13:37 et seq.**

CFTC investigations, **13:223**

Claiming, strategic considerations, **13:61 to 13:65**

SEC investigations, **13:31 et seq.**

Self incrimination

Generally, **13:32**

Waiver, **13:33**

SRO investigations, **13:285**

Waiver, **13:33, 13:37 et seq.**

Work product, **13:55, 13:59**

Professional conduct rules, **8:425**

“Pump-and-dump” schemes, SEC actions against, **8:443**

Regulation, **8:424 et seq.**

## INDEX

### ATTORNEYS—Cont'd

- Right to counsel
  - CFTC investigations, **13:206**
  - SEC investigations, **13:14**
  - SRO investigations, **13:276**
- Rule 10b-5 liability
  - Generally, **8:409 et seq.**
  - Actions in concert, **8:294**
  - Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**
  - Concerted action, **8:294**
  - Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**
  - Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**
  - Inducement, **8:295**
  - Injunction suits, **8:303**
  - Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**
  - Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**
  - Misrepresentations
    - Generally, **8:411**
    - Participation, **8:410**
  - Observations, **8:412**
  - Participants generally, **8:292**
  - Participants in violations generally, **8:294**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **8:319 et seq.**
  - Affirmative conduct, **8:321**
  - Aiding-abetting, **8:324**
  - Choice of parties, **8:320**
  - Conspiracy, **8:325**
  - No affirmative conduct, **8:322**
  - Participation, **8:323**
  - Special elements, **8:326**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act
  - Generally, **3:156 et seq., 3:165, 8:424 et seq.**
  - Follow-up reporting obligations, **8:427**
  - Reporting obligations, **8:426**
  - SEC, reporting to, **8:432 et seq.**
  - SEC actions against attorneys, below
- SEC
  - Actions against attorneys. SEC actions against, below
  - Reporting obligations, **8:432 et seq.**

### ATTORNEYS—Cont'd

- SEC—Cont'd
  - Rulemaking authority as to, **3:5**
- SEC actions against
  - Generally, **8:436 et seq.**
  - Auditors, furnishing false information to, **8:440**
  - Backdating of stock options, **18:11**
  - Financial or accounting fraud, **8:440**
  - Form 8-K, **8:439**
  - Form 10, **8:439**
  - Form 10-K, **8:439**
  - Form 10-Q, **8:439**
  - Form 13D, **8:439**
  - Form ADV, **8:439**
  - Form BD, **8:439**
  - Forms 12b-25, **8:445**
  - Manipulating stock option exercise dates, **8:444**
  - Offering circulars, **8:439**
  - Participating in preparation and filing of false and misleading forms, **8:439**
  - “PIPE” schemes, involvement, **8:443**
  - Prospectuses, **8:439**
  - Proxy statements, **8:439**
  - “Pump-and-dump” schemes, involvement, **8:443**
  - Reflections, **8:448**
  - Trading on inside information, **8:447**
  - Unethical and obstructive professional conduct, **8:446**
  - Unregistered distributions of securities, activities in connection with, **8:441**
- Second-guessing disclosure counsel, **8:423**
- Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). SEC, above
- Securities professionals as insiders, **7:572**
- SRO investigations, right to counsel in, **13:276**
- Wells Submissions (this index)

**ATTORNEYS' FEES**

Generally, **9:18**  
 Arbitrations, **15:38**  
 Broker-dealer liability, **14:53**  
 Contribution, **9:75**  
 Enforcement investigations, **13:39**,  
**13:45, 13:58**  
 Transaction planning, allocations,  
**9:75**

**AUCTION RATE SECURITY (ARS)  
 LITIGATION**

Coordinated SEC-state-SRO  
 investigations, generally, **13:322**  
**et seq.**  
 Criminal aspects, **13:330**  
 Government regulatory suits, **13:329**  
 Investor recovery as objective,  
**13:324**  
 Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**  
 Securities and market, **13:325**  
 Seller management liability, **13:330**  
 State law, private litigation, **13:328**  
 Violations, **13:326**

**AUDIT COMMITTEES**

Generally, **8:449 et seq.**  
 See also Directors, Corporate (this  
 index)  
 Backdating of stock options, resigna-  
 tions and firings, **18:7**  
 Financial experts, Sarbanes-Oxley  
 Act liabilities, **3:166**

**AUDITORS**

Indirect-impersonal dealing, GAAP  
 violations, **7:70**  
 Injunctions, ancillary relief, **13:113**  
 Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:9**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act oversight stan-  
 dards, **8:453**

**AUDIT RECORDS**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act actions based on,  
**3:171**

**AVERAGE ANNUAL RETURNS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**AWARDS**

Arbitration (this index)

**BACKDATING OF STOCK  
 OPTIONS**

Generally, **18:1 et seq.**  
 Accounting rules, violations, **18:4**  
 Acquisitions, mergers, and underwrit-  
 ings, effect on, **18:12**  
 Analog Devices Inc., **18:1, 18:10**  
 Annual, quarterly, or periodic reports,  
 false or misleading statements,  
**18:3**  
 Apple Inc., **18:8**  
 Bed Bath and Beyond, response to  
 inquiry, **18:8**  
 Brooks Automation Inc., **18:1**  
 Bullet-dodging, **18:1**  
 Comverse Technology Inc., **18:1**,  
**18:11**  
 Derivative actions by stockholders,  
**18:10**  
 DOJ investigations, **18:6, 18:8**  
 Employee recruitment incentive,  
**18:10**  
 End of options backdating, **18:15**  
 Exchange delisting, **11:9**  
 Expired option exercise, **18:1**  
 False and misleading financial state-  
 ments, **18:3**  
 Falsifying corporate books and  
 records, **18:3**  
 Federal securities laws, violations,  
**18:3**  
 Fictitious or untimely names, **18:1**  
 Forward-dating, **18:1**  
 Hedge funds, delayed filings of  
 financial statements, **18:9**  
 In-house general counsel, criminal  
 prosecution, **18:11**  
 Internal accounting controls, failure  
 to implement system, **18:3**  
 "In-the-money" options  
     Accounting rules, violations, **18:4**  
     Individual circumstances caveat,  
     **18:2**  
     "Reloading," **18:1**  
 Investigations and actions by govern-  
 ment, **18:6, 18:8**  
 IRC violations, **18:5**  
 Legal backdating, **18:2**

## INDEX

### **BACKDATING OF STOCK OPTIONS—Cont'd**

Manipulating option exercise dates,  
**18:14**  
McAfee, Inc., **18:11**  
Mercury Interactive Corp., **18:1,**  
**18:10**  
Micrel recruitment incentive, **18:10**  
Monster Worldwide Inc., **18:7, 18:11**  
Private litigation, **18:10**  
Proxy solicitation involving false and  
misleading statements, **18:3**  
Recklessness or intent to defraud,  
**18:3**  
“Reloading” with “in-the-money”  
options, **18:1**  
Resignations and firings, **18:7**  
Restatements and delayed filings of  
financial statements, **18:9**  
Reyes conviction, **18:16**  
Secret slush fund of backdated  
options, **18:2, 18:3**  
Sloppy, careless, or mistaken  
backdating, **18:2**  
Springloading, **18:1**  
Springloading and bullet dodging,  
**18:13**  
Sycamore Networks Inc. employee  
hire date practices, **18:10**  
Tax law implications and violations,  
**18:5**  
UnitedHealth Group Inc., **18:1, 18:5,**  
**18:8, 18:10**  
Violations of federal securities laws,  
**18:3**  
Vitesse Semiconductor Corp., **18:1**  
Wider ramifications, **18:6**

### **“BACK-OFFICE” EMPLOYEES**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:9**

### **BAD FAITH**

Generally, **8:210 et seq.**  
See also Good Faith (this index)  
Burden of proof, **8:219**  
Effect of good or bad faith generally,  
**8:216 et seq.**  
Good reputation, effect of, **8:218**  
Insufficiency, **8:215**  
Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**

### **BAD FAITH—Cont'd**

Proof, **8:220**  
Scienter  
Generally, **8:210 et seq.**  
Burden of proof, **8:219**  
Effect of good or bad faith gener-  
ally, **8:216 et seq.**  
Good reputation, effect of, **8:218**  
Insufficiency, **8:215**  
Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**  
Proof, **8:220**  
Sufficiency, **8:214**  
Sufficiency, **8:214**  
Versions of scienter, relations among,  
**8:211**

### **BAIL IN SECURITIES PROSECUTIONS**

Insiders and Insider Trading (this  
index)

### **BALANCE SHEETS**

Off-balance sheet transactions,  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **8:413**

### **BANCO SANTANDER**

Madoff feeder funds, globalization,  
**20:21**

### **BANKERS**

Investment Bankers (this index)

### **BANKS**

Tender offer regulation, **6:29**

### **BASIC CASE**

Private actions, loss causation in  
Supreme Court decision, **8:565**

### **BED BATH AND BEYOND**

Backdating of stock options, response  
to inquiry, **18:8**

### **BELIEF**

Defendant's belief  
Rule 10b-5 fraud, **8:240**  
Scienter  
Burden of proof, **8:74, 8:77**  
Expert parts of registration state-  
ments, **8:76 et seq.**  
Proof, **8:75, 8:78**

**BELIEF—Cont’d**

- Defendant’s knowledge and belief
  - Broker-dealer fraud, **8:141**
  - Burden of proof, **8:141**
  - Proxy fraud
    - Generally, **8:126 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:127**
    - Proof, **8:128**
  - Scienter, **8:141**
  - Tender offer fraud
    - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:134**
    - Proof, **8:135**
- Intent (this index)
- Knowledge (this index)
- Proxy fraud, defendant’s knowledge and belief
  - Generally, **8:126 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:127**
  - Proof, **8:128**
- Scienter
  - See also Scienter (this index)
  - Defendant’s belief
    - Burden of proof, **8:74, 8:77**
    - Expert parts of registration statements, **8:76 et seq.**
    - Proof, **8:75, 8:78**
  - Tender offer fraud, defendant’s knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:134**
    - Proof, **8:135**

**BESPEAKS CAUTION DOCTRINE**

- Generally, **8:2**
- Nondisclosure liability, **8:2**
- Safe harbor for predictions and projections, **7:22**

**BIRNBAUM RULE**

- Generally, **5:70**
- Interrelations of fraud rules generally, **3:50**
- Supreme Court’s dispositions, **5:71**

**BITCOIN**

- Background, **25:3**

**BLACKOUTS**

- Insider trading, director and officer trading during, **7:161**

**BLANK CHECK COMPANIES**

- Penny stock sales, **14:145**

**BLOCKCHAIN**

- Cryptocurrencies (this index)

**BLUE CHIP CASE**

- Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:560**

**BLUE SKY LAWS**

- See State Law (this index)

**BONDS**

- Actions on, SLUSA limitations, **3:211**
- Municipal securities, suitability rules, **14:193**

**BOOK VALUE**

- Value indicators generally, **5:162**

**BORAK DECISION**

- Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:557**

**BOUNTY PROGRAMS**

- Whistleblowers (this index)

**BREACH OF FIDUCIARY DUTY**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

**BREAKPOINT DISCOUNTS**

- Mutual fund violations, sales charges, **17:15**

**BRIBERY**

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), undisclosed payments to foreign government officials, **19:1 et seq.**

**BRIEFS**

- SEC proceedings, **1:13**
- Wells Submissions (this index)

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

- Generally, **14:1 et seq.**
- See also Direct-Personal Dealing (this index)

INDEX

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Accumulation of stock, manipulation by, **7:134**
- Aider-abettor liabilities, **7:449**
- Arbitration
  - See also Arbitration (this index)
  - Clearing brokers, **15:72**
  - Correspondent introducing brokers, **15:72**
  - Equities, awards based on, **15:75**
  - Failure to supervise, **15:73**
  - Introducing brokers, **15:72**
  - Litigation compared, **15:6**
  - Punitive damages, **14:111, 15:74**
  - Securities law, arbitral extensions, **15:71 et seq.**
  - Splitting the baby, **15:75**
  - SRO arbitration procedures, **15:8**
  - Suitability rules, **14:205**
  - Unsuitability, **15:73**
  - Witnesses, brokers as, **15:30, 15:40**
- Attorneys' fees, **14:53**
- Awareness of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316, 7:349 et seq.**
  - Possession distinguished, **7:349**
- Bar orders against individuals, **13:87**
- Blank check companies, **14:145**
- Broker's knowledge, **14:41**
- Burden of proof
  - Express actions, **14:42**
  - Insider trading charges, **7:366**
- Business judgment standard, **7:50**
- Capping, **7:136**
- Causation, **14:91 et seq.**
- Chinese walls
  - Generally, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Evolution of rule, **7:344**
  - Operation, **7:345**
- Churning (this index)
- Circular trading, **7:135**
- Class actions
  - SA § 11, **14:18**
  - SA § 12, **14:57**
- Clearing brokers, **15:72**
- Collateral bar orders against individuals, **13:87, 13:88**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Commissions, **5:133**
- Connection requirement
  - Commissions, **5:133**
  - Kickbacks, **5:133**
- Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**
- Control, churning, **14:113**
- Control person liability
  - Generally, **7:451 et seq., 8:373 et seq., 8:394 et seq.**
  - All control persons, **7:453**
  - Amount of liability, **7:459**
  - Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**
- B test, **7:456**
- Contribution to violation, **7:458**
- Failure to act, **7:455**
- Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
- Knowledge
  - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
  - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
- Penalties, **7:440**
- Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**
- Private actions against, **7:486, 7:512**
- Reckless disregard
  - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
  - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
- Requirements, **7:452**
- Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
- Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**
- A test, **7:453**
- Cornering the market, **7:134**
- Correspondent introducing brokers, **15:72**
- Costs in express actions, **14:53**
- Criminal prosecutions
  - Generally, **7:460 et seq.**
  - Amount of penalties, **7:466**
  - Disgorgement, **7:465**
  - Judge or jury, **7:467**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Criminal prosecutions—Cont'd
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:463**
  - Penalties, **7:466**
  - Restitution, **7:465**
  - RICO, **7:464**
  - Securities violations, **7:462**
- Cross trading
  - Generally, **14:128**
  - Manipulation, **7:135**
- Crowdfunding, **14:215**
- Cybersecurity, **26:4, 26:5**
- Damages
  - Express actions, **14:46, 14:51**
  - Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**
  - SA § 11, **14:15**
- Debt securities markups, **14:163**
- Defenses to insider trading charges
  - Amount defined, **7:355**
  - Binding contract defense, **7:351**
  - Burden of proof, **7:369**
  - Common terms and issues, **7:355 et seq.**
  - Date defined, **7:357**
  - Delegation alternative to amount, price and date, **7:358**
  - Exclusiveness of defenses, **7:360**
  - Institutional defenses, **7:361**
  - Instructions defense, **7:352**
  - Overriding limitations, **7:359**
  - Price defined, **7:356**
  - Relation to other laws, **7:362**
  - Systematic plans defense, **7:353**
  - Tracking plans defense, **7:354**
- Direct and indirect dealings, **4:1**
- Disclosures
  - Corrections, **6:312**
  - Markup and markdown practices, **14:149**
- Due diligence defense
  - Generally, **14:5**
  - Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:52**
  - SEC view, **14:9**
- Equities, arbitration awards based on, **15:75**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Excessive trading
  - Generally, **14:114 et seq.**
  - See also Churning (this index)
  - Benchmark for, **14:116 et seq.**
  - Commission ratios, **14:119 et seq.**
  - Cross trading, **14:128**
  - Frequency of trades, **14:122**
  - In-and-out trading, **14:122**
  - Loss ratio, **14:126**
  - Number of trades, **14:122**
  - Quality of securities purchased, **14:127**
  - Six, rule of, **14:116 et seq.**
  - Turnover rate, **14:115**
- Expert testimony, churning, **14:132**
- Express actions
  - Generally, **14:2 et seq.**
  - Attorneys' fees, **14:53**
  - Broker as defendant
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:20**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:28**
  - Broker's knowledge, **14:41**
  - Burden of proof, **14:42**
  - Class actions
    - SA § 11, **14:18**
    - SA § 12, **14:57**
  - Costs, **14:53**
  - Damages
    - Generally, **14:46, 14:51**
    - SA § 11, **14:15**
  - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
  - Interest, **14:48**
  - Limitation of actions
    - Generally, **14:17**
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**
  - Misrepresentations, **14:39**
  - Offerors, brokers as
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:22**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:29 et seq.**
  - Omissions, **14:39**
  - In pari delicto defense, **14:21**
  - Privity, **14:34**
  - Proximate cause, **14:35**
  - Punitive damages, **14:54**

INDEX

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

Express actions—Cont'd  
Purchaser, plaintiff as  
SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**  
SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**  
Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**  
Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**  
Rescission, **14:46, 14:50**  
SA § 11  
Generally, **14:2 et seq., 14:3 et seq.**  
Court cases, **14:6**  
Damages, **14:15**  
Due diligence defense  
Generally, **14:5**  
SEC view, **14:9**  
Integrated disclosure systems,  
**14:7**  
Later filings, effect of, **14:10**  
Non-managing underwriters,  
**14:13**  
Participating underwriters,  
**14:13**  
Policy considerations, **14:12**  
Reasonable investigation  
defense  
Generally, **14:5**  
Integrated disclosure systems,  
**14:7**  
SEC Rule 176, **14:8**  
Reasonable investigation  
requirement, **14:11**  
SEC Rule 176, **14:7**  
SEC Rule 412, **14:7**  
SEC view of due diligence  
techniques, **14:9**  
Underwriters  
Generally, **14:4**  
Due diligence, **14:14**  
SA § 12(a)(1)  
Generally, **14:19 et seq.**  
Broker as defendant, **14:20**  
Class actions, **14:57**  
Exemptions from SA § 5, **14:24**  
Limitation of actions, **14:25**  
Offerors, brokers as, **14:22**  
In pari delicto defense, **14:21**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

Express actions—Cont'd  
SA § 12(a)(1)—Cont'd  
Purchaser, plaintiff as, **14:23**  
Sellers, brokers as, **14:22**  
Violations of SA § 5, **14:26**  
SA § 12(a)(2)  
Generally, **14:27 et seq.**  
Attorneys' fees, **14:53**  
Broker as defendant, **14:28**  
Broker's knowledge, **14:41**  
Burden of proof, **14:42**  
Class actions, **14:57**  
Costs, **14:53**  
Damages, **14:46, 14:51**  
Interest, **14:48**  
Limitation of actions, **14:56**  
Misrepresentations, **14:39**  
Offerors, brokers as, **14:29 et seq.**  
Omissions, **14:39**  
Pinter case, **14:30, 14:38**  
Privity, **14:34**  
Proximate cause, **14:35**  
Punitive damages, **14:54**  
Purchaser, plaintiff as, **14:44**  
Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**  
Reasonable care, **14:43**  
Reasonable investigation  
requirement, **14:43**  
Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**  
Rescission, **14:46, 14:50**  
SEA § 10(b) and, overlap  
between, **14:55**  
Sellers, brokers as, **14:29 et seq.**  
Substantial factor in sale, broker  
as, **14:35**  
Tax considerations, **14:48**  
Tender, **14:49**  
Transactional coverage, **14:58**  
Sellers, brokers as  
SA § 12(a)(1), **14:22**  
SA § 12(a)(2), **14:29 et seq.**  
Substantial factor in sale, broker  
as, **14:35**  
Tax considerations, **14:48**  
Violations of SA § 5, **14:26**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Failure to supervise, **15:73**
- Fiduciary criteria and insider liability
  - Generally, **7:561 et seq.**
  - Contraction era, **7:576**
  - Creation
    - Generally, **7:567**
    - Advisers to issuers, **7:569**
    - Business associates of issuers, **7:570**
    - Law characterizing relation, **7:573**
    - Position with issuer, **7:568**
    - Prior dealings, creation by, **7:571**
    - Securities professionals, **7:572**
  - Criteria, **7:561 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **7:574**
  - Issuers, **7:565**
  - Market insiders, **7:575**
  - Suitability, **14:202, 14:206**
  - With whom must relationship exist, **7:562 et seq.**
- Flexible fund annuities, **5:24**
- Front running manipulation
  - Generally, **7:139 et seq.**
  - Court cases, **7:142**
  - SEC interpretations
    - Generally, **7:140**
    - Decisions, **7:142**
  - SRO interpretations
    - Generally, **7:140**
    - Criticisms, **7:141**
    - Decisions, **7:142**
    - Insider trading, **7:168**
- Full disclosure regulations, analysts' roles, **7:528**
- Good faith, **7:53**
- Guidelines for information releases, **7:54**
- Implied actions
  - See also Implied Liability (this index)
  - Margin rules
    - Generally, **14:59**
    - Arbitration, use in, **14:61**
    - Court cases, **14:60**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Implied actions—Cont'd
- Margin rules—Cont'd
  - SEA § 7, **14:59**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **14:73 et seq.**
  - Causation, **14:91 et seq.**
  - Connection requirement, **14:94**
  - Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**
  - Damages, **14:95 et seq.**
  - Elements of action, **14:74**
  - Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**
  - Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**
  - Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
  - Market misrepresentations, **14:78**
  - Market nondisclosures, **14:79**
  - Materiality, **14:82**
  - Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**
  - Mitigation of damages, **14:102**
  - Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**
  - Opinions, **14:81**
  - Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
  - Predictions, **14:81**
  - Proximate cause, **14:92**
  - Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**
  - Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
  - Recommendations, **14:81**
  - Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
  - Rescission
    - Chasins measure, **14:97**
    - Lost profits, **14:101**
    - Nye measure, **14:101**
    - Rolf measure, **14:100**
  - Restitution, **14:104**
  - Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
  - SRO rules
    - Generally, **14:62 et seq.**
    - Arbitration, **14:72**
    - Buttrey doctrine, **14:65**
    - Colonial Realty doctrine, **14:64**
    - Contraction era, **14:71**
    - Court cases, **14:64 et seq.**
    - Expansion era, **14:63 et seq.**
- In-and-out trading, **14:122**

## INDEX

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Information release guidelines, **7:54**
- Inquiry duties of brokers, **14:189**
- Insider trading
  - Generally, **7:213 et seq., 7:557 et seq.**
  - See also Insiders and Insider Trading (this index)
- Access criteria, **7:560**
- Acquisitions, **7:214**
- Administrative enforcement
  - Generally, **7:415 et seq., 7:416 et seq.**
  - Ancillary relief, **7:419, 7:437**
  - Civil penalties, **7:420**
  - Disgorgement, **7:418, 7:425 et seq.**
  - Hearing, right to, **7:424**
  - Injunctive actions
    - Generally, **7:422 et seq.**
    - Disgorgement orders, **7:425 et seq.**
    - Hearing, right to, **7:424**
  - Judge or jury, **7:421**
  - Sanctions, **7:417**
- Aider-abettors, **7:449**
- Burden of proof
  - Generally, **7:366**
  - Defenses, **7:369**
  - Institutions, **7:367**
- Buyers, **7:563**
- Congressional intent, **7:559**
- Connection with requirement
  - Market transactions, **7:370**
  - Rule 10b-5, **7:370**
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:371**
  - Tender offers, **7:371**
- Contraction era, **7:561 et seq.**
- Control person liability
  - Generally, **7:451 et seq.**
  - All control persons, **7:453**
  - Amount of liability, **7:459**
  - Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**
  - B test, **7:456**
  - Contribution to violation, **7:458**

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

- Insider trading—Cont'd
- Control person liability—Cont'd
  - Failure to act, **7:455**
  - Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
  - Knowledge
    - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
    - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
  - Penalties, **7:440**
  - Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**
  - Reckless disregard
    - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
    - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
  - Requirements, **7:452**
  - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
  - Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**
  - A test, **7:453**
- Criminal enforcement, **7:465**
- Damages, **7:488**
- Defenses, burden of proving, **7:369**
- Disgorgement, **7:465**
- Expansion era, **7:560**
- Institutions, burden of proof, **7:367**
- Issuers, applicability to, **7:565**
- Judge or jury
  - Criminal proceedings, **7:467**
  - SEC penalty actions, **7:446**
- Martha Stewart case
  - Generally, **7:403 et seq.**
  - Acquittal, **7:411**
  - Background of case, **7:404**
  - Imclone stock sale, **7:404**
  - Indictment, **7:405**
  - Inferences from evidence, **7:409**
  - Intent inference test, **7:410**
  - Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**
  - Misrepresentation, **7:406**
  - Scienter, generally, **7:403 et seq.**
  - Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - Motion practice, **7:365**
  - Opposite side traders
    - Damages, **7:522**
    - Elements of action, **7:518**
    - Relations of parties to market, **7:494**
    - Suits by, **7:504**
  - Parties, **7:363**
  - Pleading
    - Generally, **7:364**
    - Scienter, **7:398**
  - Policies, preventive
    - Generally, **7:468 et seq., 7:470**
    - Control person liabilities for failure to have, **7:457**
    - Education, **7:473**
    - Information policies and procedures, **7:474**
    - Investment advisers, **7:470**
    - Nature of policies and procedures, **7:472**
    - Organizations, requirements for, **7:471**
    - Procedures, **7:476**
    - Sanctions for violations, **7:477**
    - Tipping policies, **7:475**
    - Trading policies, **7:475**
  - Private actions
    - Generally, **7:478 et seq., 7:491 et seq.**
    - Amount of liability, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**
    - Ancillary relief, **7:490, 7:525**
    - Background, **7:501**
    - Causation, **7:517**
    - Contemporaneous traders, actions by, **7:503 et seq.**
    - Control persons, actions against, **7:486, 7:512**
    - Convertibles traders, suits by, **7:508**
    - Damages, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**
    - Elements of action, **7:514 et seq.**
    - Express causes of action, **7:478 et seq.**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - Private actions—Cont'd
    - Fiduciary theory, **7:498**
    - Implied causes of action, **7:491 et seq., 7:493 et seq.**
    - Market, relation of parties to, **7:493 et seq.**
    - Misappropriation theory, **7:499**
    - Opposite side traders
      - Damages, **7:522**
      - Elements of action, **7:518**
      - Relations of parties to market, **7:494**
      - Suits by, **7:504**
    - Option traders, suits by, **7:507**
    - Other liabilities, relation to, **7:489**
    - Parties defendant, **7:483, 7:509**
    - Parties plaintiff
      - Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**
      - Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**
      - Relation to other liabilities, **7:489, 7:524**
    - Reliance, **7:516**
    - Rule 10b-5, **7:497 et seq.**
    - Rule 14e-3, **7:500**
    - Same class of securities, actions by traders in, **7:482, 7:506**
    - Same side traders
      - Damages, **7:523**
      - Elements of action, **7:519**
      - Relations of parties to market, **7:495**
      - Suits by, **7:505**
    - Standing, **7:520**
    - Tippers, actions against, **7:485, 7:511**
  - Traders
    - Actions against, **7:484, 7:510**
    - Contemporaneous, suits by, **7:481**
    - Who can be sued, **7:483, 7:509**
    - Who can sue, generally, **7:502**
    - Who may sue
      - Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**

INDEX

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - Private actions—Cont'd
    - Who may sue—Cont'd
      - Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:368**
  - Publicity, **7:216**
  - Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**
  - Recommendations, **7:215**
  - Relationships subject to regulation, **7:562 et seq.**
  - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
  - RICO, **7:414, 7:464**
  - Same side traders
    - Damages, **7:523**
    - Elements of action, **7:519**
    - Relations of parties to market, **7:495**
    - Suits by, **7:505**
  - Scienter
    - Generally, **7:372 et seq.**
    - Fiduciary theory
      - Tippers, **7:381**
      - Trading insiders, **7:377**
      - Trading tippees, **7:385**
    - Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**
    - Martha Stewart case
      - Generally, **7:403 et seq.**
      - Acquittal, **7:411**
      - Background of case, **7:404**
      - Imclone stock sale, **7:404**
      - Indictment, **7:405**
      - Inferences from evidence, **7:409**
      - Intent inference test, **7:410**
      - Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**
      - Misrepresentation, **7:406**
      - Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**
    - Misappropriation theory
      - Tippers, **7:382**
      - Trading insiders, **7:378**
      - Trading tippees, **7:386**
    - Pleading, **7:398**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Insider trading—Cont'd
- Scienter—Cont'd
  - Proof, **7:399 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:412**
- Tippers
  - Generally, **7:379 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:401**
- Trading insiders
  - Generally, **7:375 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:400**
- Trading tippees
  - Generally, **7:383 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:402**
- SEC efforts to define, **7:559**
- SEC penalty actions
  - Generally, **7:438**
  - Aider-abettors, **7:449**
  - Amount of penalty
    - Control persons, **7:459**
    - Court-imposed, **7:439**
  - Bounties, **7:445**
  - Control persons, penalties imposed on, **7:440**
  - Court imposed penalties, **7:439**
  - Disposition of penalties, **7:445**
  - Double jeopardy limitations, **7:443**
  - Factors considered in imposition of penalties, **7:442**
  - Informants, awards to, **7:445**
  - Judge or jury, **7:446**
  - Maximum penalties imposed, **7:441**
  - Persons liable
    - Generally, **7:447**
    - Aider-abettors, **7:449**
    - Employers, **7:450**
    - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
    - Tippers, **7:448**
    - Traders, **7:448**
  - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
  - Settled penalties, **7:444**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - SEC penalty actions—Cont'd
    - Tippees, penalties imposed on, **7:439**
    - Traders, penalties imposed on, **7:439**
  - Sellers, **7:563**
  - Tender offers, **7:214**
  - Third parties, applicability to, **7:566**
  - Tipplers, scienter, **7:379 et seq.**
  - Unfairness criteria, **7:560**
- Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**
- Institutional investors, suitability rules, **14:190**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
- Intent, consideration of in misrepresentation claims, **7:53**
- Interrelations of fraud rules
  - Generally, **3:37 et seq.**
  - Birnbaum rule, **3:50**
  - Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**
  - Causation, **3:48**
  - Defenses to private actions, **3:51**
  - Displacing provisions, **3:53**
  - Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**
  - Exempt offerings, **3:46**
  - Implied and express private actions, **3:50**
  - Implied Liability (this index)
  - Integration proposals, **3:52**
  - Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**
  - Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**
  - Parties subject to rule, **3:49**
  - Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**
  - Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**
  - Public offerings, **3:40**
  - Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**
  - Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**
  - Transactions covered, **3:38**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Interrelations of fraud rules—Cont'd
  - Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**
  - Unregistered offerings, **3:46**
- Introducing brokers, **15:72**
- Joint and several liability, **9:31**
- Jurisdiction, generally, **11:15**
- Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
- Kickbacks, **5:133**
- Limitation of actions
  - Generally, **11:45 et seq.**
  - See also Limitation of Actions (this index)
- Express actions
  - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**
  - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**
- Lost profits, rescission and, **14:101**
- Manipulation
  - Generally, **7:118 et seq.**
  - Accumulation of stock, **7:134**
  - Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**
  - Capping, **7:136**
  - Circular trading, **7:135**
  - Cornering the market, **7:134**
  - Cross trading, **7:135**
  - Definition, **7:119**
  - Depressing prices, **7:124**
  - Federal securities laws, **7:120**
  - Front running
    - Generally, **7:139 et seq.**
    - Court cases, **7:142**
    - SEC interpretations
      - Generally, **7:140**
      - Decisions, **7:142**
    - SRO interpretations
      - Generally, **7:140**
      - Criticisms, **7:141**
      - Decisions, **7:142**
      - Insider trading, **7:168**
- Marking the close, **7:131**
- Matched orders, **7:121**
- Painting the tape, **7:132**
- Parking
  - Generally, **7:143 et seq.**
  - Capital requirements, use to avoid, **7:147**

INDEX

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Manipulation—Cont'd
- Parking—Cont'd
  - Control fights, use in, **7:146**
  - Definitions, **7:144**
  - Margin requirements, parking to avoid, **7:148**
  - Record keeping violations, **7:149**
  - Tax evasion uses, **7:150**
- Pegging, **7:136**
- Raising prices, **7:124**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **7:130 et seq.**
  - Accumulation of stock, **7:134**
  - Capping, **7:136**
  - Circular trading, **7:135**
  - Control, **7:138**
  - Cornering the market, **7:134**
  - Cross trading, **7:135**
  - Domination, **7:138**
  - Front running manipulation, above
  - Marking the close, **7:131**
  - Painting the tape, **7:132**
  - Parking, above
  - Pegging, **7:136**
  - Short selling, **7:137**
  - Successive activity price manipulations, **7:133**
- SEA § 9(a)(1), **7:121**
- SEA § 9(a)(2)
  - Generally, **7:122 et seq.**
  - Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**
  - Depressing prices, **7:124**
  - Purpose, **7:125**
  - Raising prices, **7:124**
  - Series of transactions, **7:123**
- SEA § 9(a)(3), **7:126**
- SEA § 9(a)(4), **7:126**
- SEA § 9(a)(5), **7:126**
- SEA § 9(a)(6), **7:127**
- SEA § 9(b), **7:128**
- SEA § 9(e), **7:129**
- Short selling, **7:137**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Manipulation—Cont'd
  - Successive activity price manipulations, **7:133**
  - Wash sales, **7:121**
- Margin rules
  - Generally, **14:59**
  - Arbitration, use in, **14:61**
  - Court cases, **14:60**
  - Parking to avoid, **7:148**
  - SEA § 7, **14:59**
- Market insiders, **7:575**
- Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
- Market reaction as public/nonpublic test of information, **7:281**
- Marking the close, **7:131**
- Markup and markdown practices
  - Generally, **14:148 et seq.**
  - Basis
    - Generally, **14:150 et seq.**
    - Contemporaneous defined
      - NASD criteria, **14:161**
      - SEC criteria, **14:156**
    - Customers, comparative frequency of purchases from, **14:158**
    - Dominating market makers, **14:154**
    - Inter-dealer prices, availability of, **14:155**
    - Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**
    - Market-makers, retail, **14:153**
    - Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
    - NASD criteria, **14:157 et seq.**
    - Non dominating market makers, **14:160**
    - Non market makers
      - NASD criteria, **14:159**
      - SEC criteria, **14:152**
    - Retailer market makers, **14:153**
    - SEC criteria, **14:150 et seq.**
- Debt securities markups, **14:163**
- Disclosure, **14:149**
- Five percent policy, **14:162**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Markup and markdown practices
  - Cont'd
  - Inter-dealer prices, availability of, **14:155**
  - Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**
  - Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
- Matched order manipulations, **7:121**
- Materiality
  - Generally, **14:82**
  - Public disclosure and, **7:280**
- Misappropriation theory of insider liabilities
  - Generally, **7:577**
  - Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**
  - Close family relationships, **7:587**
  - Connection element, **7:597**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:680**
  - Court cases, **7:582 et seq.**
  - Enforcement actions, **7:578**
  - Family relationships, **7:587**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:594**
  - Private actions, **7:579, 7:603**
  - Rule 10b5-2, **7:585 et seq.**
  - Shared confidences, **7:590**
- Misrepresentations
  - Generally, **7:5, 7:46 et seq.**
  - See also Forward Looking Information (this index)
  - Analyst projections, **7:9**
  - Business judgment standard, **7:50**
  - Company projections, **7:8**
  - Due diligence, **7:52**
  - Earnings, **7:47**
  - Express actions, **14:39**
  - Good faith, **7:53**
  - Guidelines for information releases, **7:54**
  - Information release guidelines, **7:54**
  - Intent, **7:53**
  - Negligence, **7:52**
  - Predictions, **7:46**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Misrepresentations—Cont'd
- Predictions and projection disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:10 et seq.**
- Capital resources, **7:15**
- Liquidity, **7:14**
- With MD&A requirement
  - Administrative enforcement, **7:13**
  - Private actions, **7:17**
- Operation results, **7:16**
- Private actions on MD&A requirements, **7:17**
- Restrictions on disclosures, **7:18**
- Safe harbor
  - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
  - Background, **7:20**
  - Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
- PSLRA
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Corrections, **7:45**
  - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Eligible makers, **7:37**
  - Exclusions, **7:40**
  - Expandability, **7:41**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
  - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
  - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
  - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
  - Scope of Act, **7:24**

## INDEX

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

- Misrepresentations—Cont'd
  - Predictions and projection disclosure obligations—Cont'd
    - Safe harbor—Cont'd
      - PSLRA—Cont'd
        - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
        - Update duty, **7:45**
      - Readily available cautionary statements
        - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
        - SEC filings, **7:33**
        - Timing, **7:32**
      - SA Rule 175, **7:21**
      - SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
    - SEC, traditional position, **7:18**
    - With SEC encouragement, **7:12**
    - Without SEC rule, **7:11**
  - Public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Reasonable investor standard, **7:51**
  - Scienter, **7:53**
  - Standards for preparation of information, **7:49**
  - Suitability rules, **14:198**
  - Violations, criteria for determining, **7:49**
- MNPI
  - Nonpublic information, below
- Motion practice, **7:365**
- Negligence
  - Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:52**
  - Suitability claims, **14:203**
- Non-managing underwriters, **14:13**
- Nonpublic information
  - Generally, **7:271 et seq.**
  - Absorption requirement, **7:306 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **7:312**
  - Duty to disclose generally, **7:275**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, Regulation FD, **7:552**
  - Full disclosure duty triggered by partial disclosure of, **7:536**

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

- Nonpublic information—Cont'd
  - Investment community disclosure, **7:300**
  - Issuer disclosures
    - Generally, **7:282 et seq.**
    - Proxy statements, **7:287**
    - Reports, **7:289**
    - Tender offer statements, **7:288**
  - Law and fact questions, **7:314**
  - Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
  - Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
  - Media disclosures
    - Generally, **7:292 et seq.**
    - Particular media, **7:299**
    - Timing, **7:297**
  - Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Motion practice, **7:311**
  - Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **7:310**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:309 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:313**
  - Proxy statements, **7:287**
  - Public as affecting insider trading, **7:272 et seq.**
  - Quantum of proof, **7:312**
  - Rumors, **7:301**
  - Time in becoming public, **7:304 et seq.**
  - Tipping of, **7:272 et seq.**
- Omissions
  - Express actions, **14:39**
  - Public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- On basis of inside information, trades made, **7:348**
- Opinions, **14:81**
- Opposite side traders
  - Damages, **7:522**
  - Elements of action, **7:518**
  - Relations of parties to market, **7:494**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Opposite side traders—Cont'd
  - Suits by, **7:504**
- Options, suitability rules, **14:192**
- Organization of treatise, **4:1**
- Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
- Painting the tape, **7:132**
- In pari delicto defense, **14:21**
- Parking
  - Generally, **7:143 et seq.**
  - Capital requirements, use to avoid, **7:147**
  - Control fights, use in, **7:146**
  - Definitions, **7:144**
  - Margin requirements, parking to avoid, **7:148**
  - Record keeping violations, **7:149**
  - Tax evasion uses, **7:150**
- Participating underwriters, **14:13**
- Pegging, **7:136**
- Penny Stock Sales (this index)
- Personal and impersonal dealings, **4:1**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **11:104 et seq.**
  - See also Pleading (this index)
  - Churning, **14:131**
  - Insider trading charges, **7:364**
  - Nonpublic nature of information, **7:310**
- Possession of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316**
  - Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, **7:321, 7:341**
  - Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:342**
  - Knowing possession, **7:320**
  - Mere possession, **7:319**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Precautions against trading, **7:346**
  - Proof, **7:322 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5
    - Generally, **7:318 et seq.**
    - Access, proof of, **7:323**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Possession of MNPI—Cont'd
- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, **7:321**
  - Contact, proof of, **7:324**
  - Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**
  - Knowing possession, **7:320**
  - Mere possession, **7:319**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:326**
  - Proof, **7:322 et seq.**
  - Trading, proof of, **7:325**
  - Use inferred from possession, **7:328**
- Rule 14e-3
  - Generally, **7:340 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **7:341**
  - Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:342**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Precautions against trading, **7:346**
  - Standard of proof, **7:341**
- Standard of proof, **7:341**
- Use compared, **7:317**
- Predictions, **7:7, 14:81**
- Privity
  - Express actions, **14:34**
  - Implied liability, **8:276**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:266**
  - SA § 17(a), **8:276**
  - Sales fraud, **8:266**
  - SEA § 15(c)(1), **8:286**
- Procedure, **14:130 et seq.**
- Proof of churning, **14:132**
- Proximate cause
  - Generally, **14:92**
  - Express actions, **14:35**
- Public or nonpublic character of information. Nonpublic information, above
- Punitive damages
  - Generally, **14:106 et seq., 15:74**
  - Arbitration, **14:111**
  - Express actions, **14:54**

## INDEX

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

- Purchaser, plaintiff as
  - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**
  - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**
- Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**
- Quantum of proof, insider trading charges, **7:366**
- Reasonable investigation defense
  - Generally, **14:5**
  - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
  - SA § 11, **14:11**
  - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:43**
  - SEC Rule 176, **14:8**
- Reasonable investor standard, **7:51**
- Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
- Recommendations
  - Generally, **14:81**
  - Suitability rules, **14:186**
- Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
- Remedies (this index)
- Rescission
  - Chasins measure, **14:97**
  - Express actions, **14:46, 14:50**
  - Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**
  - Lost profits, **14:101**
  - Nye measure, **14:101**
  - Rolf measure, **14:100**
- Respondeat superior liability, insider trading, **7:450**
- Restitution, **14:104**
- Retirement accounts, suitability and fiduciary duty, **14:206**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **14:73 et seq.**
  - Application to, **3:27**
  - Causation, **14:91 et seq.**
  - Connection requirement, **14:94**
  - Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**
  - Damages, **14:95 et seq.**
  - Elements of action, **14:74**
  - Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**
  - Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**
  - Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
  - Market misrepresentations, **14:78**
  - Market nondisclosures, **14:79**
  - Materiality, **14:82**

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**
  - Mitigation of damages, **14:102**
  - Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**
  - Opinions, **14:81**
  - Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
  - Predictions, **14:81**
  - Proximate cause, **14:92**
  - Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**
  - Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
  - Recommendations, **14:81**
  - Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
  - Rescission
    - Chasins measure, **14:97**
    - Lost profits, **14:101**
    - Nye measure, **14:101**
    - Rolf measure, **14:100**
  - Restitution, **14:104**
  - Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
- Rumors, **7:301**
- SA § 11
  - Generally, **14:2 et seq., 14:3 et seq.**
  - Court cases, **14:6**
  - Damages, **14:15**
  - Due diligence defense
    - Generally, **14:5**
    - SEC view, **14:9**
  - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
  - Later filings, effect of, **14:10**
  - Non-managing underwriters, **14:13**
  - Participating underwriters, **14:13**
  - Policy considerations, **14:12**
  - Reasonable investigation defense
    - Generally, **14:5**
    - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
    - SEC Rule 176, **14:8**
  - Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:11**
  - SEC Rule 176, **14:7**
  - SEC Rule 412, **14:7**
  - SEC view of due diligence techniques, **14:9**
  - Underwriters' due diligence, **14:14**
- SA § 12(a)(2), **14:43**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Sales fraud, privity, **8:266**
- Same side traders
  - Damages, **7:523**
  - Elements of action, **7:519**
  - Relations of parties to market, **7:495**
  - Suits by, **7:505**
- Scalping, **12:3**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:139 et seq., 14:83 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:141**
  - Churning, **14:129**
  - Defendant's intent, **8:143**
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:140 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:141**
    - Proof, **8:142**
  - Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:53**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:144**
  - Pleading, **8:145**
  - Proof, **8:142**
  - SEA § 15(c)(1), **8:139 et seq.**
- SEC investigations, integration of broker-dealer and investment management examinations, **20:13**
- SEC supervisory authority over broker-dealers, **10:1**
- Securities types
  - Generally, **5:9 et seq.**
  - Alternative government regulation, **5:35**
  - Certificates of deposit, **5:28**
  - Characteristics of instrument in commerce, **5:39**
  - Common elements in defining a security, **5:32 et seq.**
  - Context clause, **5:18**
  - Cooperative apartment corporation shares, **5:26**
  - Court cases, **5:20 et seq.**
  - Employee benefit plans
    - Generally, **5:42 et seq.**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Securities types—Cont'd
- Employee benefit plans—Cont'd
  - Contributory plans
    - Involuntary, **5:46**
    - Voluntary, **5:48**
  - Defined plans, **5:49**
  - Distinguishing contributory from noncontributory, **5:52**
  - Distinguishing voluntary from involuntary plans, **5:51**
  - ERISA, preemptive effect of, **5:43**
  - ESOPs, **5:48**
  - Involuntary contributory plans, **5:46**
  - Involuntary noncontributory plans, **5:45**
  - Noncontributory plans
    - Involuntary, **5:45**
    - Voluntary, **5:47**
  - Pension plans, **5:49**
  - Sales, **5:44**
  - Voluntary contributory plans, **5:48**
  - Voluntary noncontributory plans, **5:47**
- Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**
- Expectations of public, **5:40**
- Flexible fund annuities, **5:25**
- Fractional interests in mineral rights, **5:21**
- Guarantees, **5:15**
- Howey test, **5:22**
- Interest, **5:14**
- International Brotherhood of Teamsters case, **5:27**
- Investment risk as factor, **5:34**
- Joiner Leasing Corp case, **5:21**
- Judicial decisions, **5:20 et seq.**
- Landreth Timber Co case, **5:29**
- Marine Bank case, **5:28**
- Marketing as factor, **5:33**
- Motivations of purchasers, **5:37**
- Motivations of sellers, **5:38**
- 9 month notes, **5:17**
- Notes, **5:30**

## INDEX

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

Securities types—Cont'd

Oil and gas interests

Generally, **5:16**

Fractional interests, **5:21**

Passive or active purchasers, **5:36**

Pension plans, employee interests  
in, **5:27**

Perceptions of public, **5:40**

Reeves v. Ernst & Young case,  
**5:30**

Relative importance of elements,  
**5:41**

SA § 2(1)(a) definition

Generally, **5:10**

Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**

Guarantees, **5:15**

Interest, **5:14**

9 month notes, **5:17**

Oil and gas interests, **5:16**

SEA § 3(a)(10) differences, **5:12**  
**et seq.**

SEA § 3(a)(10) similarities, **5:11**

SEA § 3(A)(10)

Generally, **5:10**

Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**

Guarantees, **5:15**

Interest, **5:14**

9 month notes, **5:17**

Oil and gas interests, **5:16**

SA § 2(1)(a) differences, **5:12 et**  
**seq.**

SA § 2(1)(a) similarities, **5:11**

State law definitions, **5:19**

Statutory definitions, **5:10 et seq.**

United Benefit Life Ins Co case,  
**5:24**

United Housing Foundation, Inc  
case, **5:26**

Variable annuities, **5:23**

Sellers, brokers as, express actions,  
**14:22, 14:29 et seq.**

Short selling manipulation, **7:137**

SRO rules

Generally, **14:62 et seq.**

Arbitration, **14:72**

Buttrey doctrine, **14:65**

### **BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

#### **—Cont'd**

SRO rules—Cont'd

Colonial Realty doctrine, **14:64**

Contraction era, **14:71**

Court cases, **14:64 et seq.**

Expansion era, **14:63 et seq.**

Substantial factor in sale, broker as,  
**14:35**

Successive activity price manipula-  
tions, **7:133**

Suitability rules

Generally, **14:183 et seq.**

See also Suitability (this index)

Arbitration, **14:205**

Consumer fraud claims, **14:204**

Damage claims, **14:196 et seq.**

Disciplinary actions, **14:194**

Fiduciary breaches, **14:202**

Fiduciary duty, **14:206**

FINRA Rule 2090, know your  
customer, **14:191**

FINRA Rule 2111, **14:186**

FINRA Rule 2111(a), **14:187,**  
**14:188**

Fraud claims, **14:199**

Inquiry duties of brokers, **14:189**

Institutional investors, **14:190**

Investment strategy, **14:188**

Know your customer, **14:191**

Misrepresentation, claims based  
on, **14:198**

Municipal securities, **14:193**

NASD IM-2320-3, **14:190**

NASD Rule 2310(c), **14:187**

NASD rules generally, **14:185**

Negligence, **14:203**

Options, **14:192**

Private damage claims, **14:196 et**  
**seq.**

Recommendations to customers,  
**14:187**

Retirement accounts, **14:206**

Rule 10b-5 claims, **14:197 et seq.**

SEA § 10(b) claims, **14:197 et seq.**

SEC rules, **14:195**

SRO rules, **14:184**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Suitability rules—Cont'd
  - State law claims
    - Generally, **14:200 et seq.**
    - Consumer fraud, **14:204**
    - Fiduciary breaches, **14:202**
    - Negligence, **14:203**
    - Statutory violations, **14:201**
- Supervisory duties
  - Generally, **14:164 et seq.**
  - Amex requirements, **14:174**
  - Branch office managers, **14:178**
  - Chief executive officers, **14:180**
  - Compliance officers, **14:181**
  - Court cases, **14:176**
  - Deficiencies, **14:175**
  - General counsel, **14:182**
  - Heads of functional areas, **14:179**
  - Individual responsibilities, **14:177 et seq.**
  - Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**
  - NASD requirements, **14:172**
  - NYSE requirements, **14:173**
  - Rule 14e-3(b), **14:169**
  - Safe harbor programs, **14:175**
  - Sanctions, **14:175**
  - SEA § 15(b)(4)(D), **14:166**
  - SEA § 15(b)(4)(E), **14:165**
  - SEA § 15(b)(6), **14:165**
  - SEA § 19, **14:170**
  - SEA § 20(a), **14:167**
  - SRO requirements, **14:171 et seq.**
- Tippee liability
  - Generally, **7:623, 7:631**
  - Benefit to insider-tipper, **7:627**
  - Dirks background, **7:625**
  - Family benefit to, **7:630**
  - Fiduciary breach requirement, **7:626**
  - Friends, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Need for fiduciary benefit, **7:626**
  - Nonpublic information, **7:272 et seq.**
  - Pecuniary benefit, **7:628**
  - Receipt in fiduciary breach, **7:623**

**BROKER-DEALER LIABILITY**

—Cont'd

- Tippee liability—Cont'd
    - Relations, benefit to, **7:630**
    - Reputational benefit, **7:629**
    - Tip defined, **7:624**
  - Transaction Planning (this index)
  - Unsuitability, **15:73**
  - Use of MNPI
    - Generally, **7:316**
    - Burden of proof, **7:331**
    - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
    - Possession compared, **7:317**
    - Rule 10b-5
      - Generally, **7:327 et seq.**
      - Burden of proof, **7:331**
      - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
      - Inferences, **7:328**
      - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
      - Possession, use inferred from, **7:328**
      - Rebuttal evidence, **7:337, 7:338**
      - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
      - Standard of proof, **7:331**
      - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
      - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
    - Rule 14e-3, generally, **7:347**
    - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
    - Standard of proof, **7:331**
    - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
    - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
  - Wash sales manipulation, **7:121**
  - What is a Security (this index)
- BROOKS AUTOMATION INC.**
- Backdating of stock options, **18:1**
- BURDEN OF PROOF**
- Actual knowledge, **8:178**
  - Bad faith, **8:219**
  - Broker-dealer liability, **14:42**
  - Causation, **5:98**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:189**

## INDEX

### **BURDEN OF PROOF—Cont'd**

- Diligence, lack of, **8:238**
- Fraud on the market theory (FOMT),  
**8:548**
- Implied liability, **8:255**
- Insider trading charges, **7:366**
- Intent, **8:201**
- Manipulation, **8:104**
- Motive, **8:208**
- Negligence, **8:238**
- Proportionate liability, **9:63**
- Proxies and proxy solicitations, **8:127**
- Recklessness, **8:227**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:66, 8:77, 8:84**
  - Actual knowledge, **8:178**
  - Bad faith, **8:219**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:189**
  - Diligence, lack of, **8:238**
  - Intent, **8:201**
  - Motive, **8:208**
  - Negligence, **8:238**
  - Proxies and proxy solicitations,  
**8:127**
  - Recklessness, **8:227**
  - SEC, false reports to, **8:148**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:134**
  - Unreasonable conduct, **8:238**
- SEC, false reports to, **8:148**
- Securities Act Section 17(a), **8:84**
- Tender offer fraud, **8:134**
- Unfair terms, **5:153**
- Unreasonable conduct, **8:238**

### **BUSINESS ASSOCIATES**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### **BUSINESS JUDGMENT STANDARD**

- Misrepresentation claims,  
consideration of, **7:50**
- Timely disclosure of inside informa-  
tion, **7:241**

### **BUSINESS PRIORITY**

- ESG, **29:1**

### **BUYER-SELLER REQUIREMENTS**

- Generally, **5:110 et seq., 8:582**

### **BUYER-SELLER**

#### **REQUIREMENTS—Cont'd**

- Broad interpretation, **5:117**
- Broker-dealer liability
  - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**
  - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**
- Company as buyer-seller, **5:124**
- Control, sales of, **5:113**
- Definition, **5:111**
- Direct-impersonal dealing, **6:182**
- Direct-personal dealing
  - Generally, **5:110 et seq.**
  - Broad interpretation, **5:117**
  - Company as buyer-seller, **5:124**
  - Control, sales of, **5:113**
  - Definition, **5:111**
  - Forced sales, **5:120**
  - Injunction suits, **5:122**
  - Interpretation of requirement,  
**5:117**
  - Issuances, **5:121**
  - Liquidations, **5:119**
  - Loss causation as substitute, **5:123**
  - Mergers, **5:118**
  - Modified view, **5:117**
  - Pleading, **5:126**
  - Strict view, **5:112 et seq.**
- Forced sales, **5:120**
- Injunction suits, **5:122**
- Interpretation of requirement, **5:117**
- Issuances, **5:121**
- Liquidations, **5:119**
- Loss causation as substitute, **5:123**
- Mergers, **5:118**
- Modified view, **5:117**
- Pleading, **5:126**
- Reliance, **8:582**
- Strict view, **5:112 et seq.**

### **BUYOUTS**

- Investment Bankers (this index)

### **CAPPING**

- Manipulation, **7:136**

### **CASE OPINIONS**

- See Court Decisions (this index)

### **CASH FLOW**

- Disclosures, **6:260**

**CAUSATION**

- Generally, **5:89 et seq.**
- Administrative enforcement actions, **10:1**
- Broker-dealer liability, **14:91 et seq.**
- Burden of proof, **5:98**
- Damage causation. See Damages (this index)
- Definition, **5:90**
- Direct-personal dealing
  - Generally, **5:89 et seq.**
  - Loss causation, **5:91**
  - Meaning, **5:90**
  - Transaction causation, **5:92**
- Fraud on the market
  - Generally, **8:520 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, curtail-  
ing scheme to defraud, **7:76**
- Insider trading actions, **7:517**
- Loss causation
  - Generally, **5:91**
  - See also other entries throughout  
this topic
  - Scienter, SA § 17(b), touting, **8:93**
  - Substitute for buyer-seller require-  
ment, **5:123**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, cause  
investigation, **20:5**
- Materiality, pleading and proof, **5:107**
- Minority vote requirements, **5:93 et seq.**
- Misconduct, relation to securities  
transaction generally, **3:48**
- Modified view, **5:95**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **8:571 et seq.**
  - Materiality, **5:107**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
- Policies, **5:97**
- Private Actions (this index)
- Proof
  - Materiality, **5:107**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**

**CAUSATION—Cont'd**

- Proof—Cont'd
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
- Reasons, **5:97**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:484 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
- Strict view, **5:93, 5:94**
- Transaction causation, **5:92, 8:484**
- Ute presumption, **8:484**
- Voting
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Strict causation, **5:100 et seq.**

**CEA**

- See Commodities Exchange Act (this  
index)

**CEASE AND DESIST ORDERS**

- CFTC, **13:239**
- Likelihood of future violation, **13:239**
- Permanent, **13:85, 13:239**
- SEC
  - Permanent, **13:85**
  - Temporary, **13:86**
- Temporary, **13:86**

**CERTIFICATES OF DEPOSIT**

- Security, treatment as, **5:28**

**CFTC**

- See Commodity Futures Trading  
Commission (this index)

**CHADBOURNE & PARKE LLP v.  
TROICE**

- Post-Chadbourne cases, **3:220 to 3:222**
- Securities Litigation Uniform Stan-  
dards Act (SLUSA), **3:217 et seq.**

**CHARGES**

- Mutual fund violations, sales prac-  
tices, **17:15**
- SEC investigations, investor  
recovery, **13:55**

**CHARITABLE FOUNDATIONS**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:3**

## INDEX

### **CHIASSON/NEWMAN CASES**

Court decisions, **7:387 et seq.**

### **CHICAGO BOARD OPTIONS EXCHANGE (CBOE)**

Suitability rules, **14:192**

### **CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6, 20:8**

### **CHINESE WALLS**

Generally, **7:343 et seq.**

Evolution of rule, **7:344**

Operation, **7:345**

### **CHINESE WAY OF DOING BUSINESS**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:11**

### **CHURNING**

Generally, **14:112 et seq.**

Control, **14:113**

Damages, **14:136**

Defenses, **14:133 et seq.**

Definition, **14:138**

Elements of action, **14:113 et seq.**

Excessive trading

Generally, **14:114 et seq.**

Benchmark for, **14:116 et seq.**

Commission ratios, **14:119 et seq.**

Cross trading, **14:128**

Frequency of trades, **14:122**

In-and-out trading, **14:122**

Loss ratio, **14:126**

Number of trades, **14:122**

Quality of securities purchased, **14:127**

Six, rule of, **14:116 et seq.**

Turnover rate, **14:115**

Expert testimony, **14:132**

In-and-out trading, **14:122**

Pleading, **14:131**

Procedure, **14:130 et seq.**

Proof, **14:132**

Scienter, **14:129**

State law actions, **14:137 et seq.**

### **CIRCUITS**

See Court Decisions (this index)

### **CIRCULAR TRADING**

Manipulation through, **7:135**

### **CIVIL PENALTIES**

Generally, **7:438 et seq.**

See also Securities and Exchange

Commission (this index)

Administrative enforcement generally

CFTC, **13:238**

SEC, **13:83**

Ancillary relief, **13:108 et seq.**

CFTC, **13:238**

Financial test, **13:238**

Injunctions (this index)

SEC

Administrative enforcement, **13:83**

Ancillary relief, **13:108**

### **CLASS ACTIONS**

Generally, **8:515 et seq.**

Backdating of stock options, private litigation, **18:10**

Blockchain, **24:9**

Certification

Generally, **8:516**

Materiality of alleged misrepresentation, proof, **8:550**

Misrepresentation cases, **8:517**

Omission cases, **8:518**

Covid-19 Pandemic (this index)

Cryptocurrencies, **24:9**

Cybersecurity, **26:6, 26:7**

Damages, **9:13**

Derivative suits compare, **3:212**

Desirability of class actions, **8:526**

Discovery limitations, **3:203**

Initial coin offerings, **24:9**

Jurisdictional means, **11:42**

Limitation of actions

Generally, **11:96 et seq.**

Tolling, **11:97**

Mass-type actions, SLUSA limitations, **3:206**

Private, ESG, **29:3**

Related class-type actions, SLUSA limitations, **3:205**

Reliance, **8:515 et seq.**

SA § 11, **14:18**

**CLASS ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- SA § 12, **14:57**
- SA § 17(b), touting, **8:90**
- SLUSA limitations on state actions
  - Generally, **3:201 et seq.**
  - Abolition of state claims, **3:202**
  - Administrative actions by states, **3:210**
  - Administrative enforcement, **3:216**
  - Bonds, actions on, **3:211**
  - Congressional intent, **3:201**
  - Covered class actions, **3:204**
  - Criminal enforcement, **3:216**
  - Derivative suits, **3:212**
  - Discovery limitations, **3:203**
  - Government enforcement, **3:216**
  - Incorporation state, actions under laws of, **3:209**
  - Indenture contract actions, **3:211**
  - Individual fraud claims, **3:215**
  - Mass-type actions, **3:206**
  - Permitted class actions, **3:208 et seq.**
  - Private rights, effect on, **3:215**
  - Recklessness, **3:214**
  - Related class-type actions, **3:205**
  - Scienter, **3:214**
  - Scope, **3:204 et seq.**
  - Securities covered by SLUSA, **3:207**
  - State governments, actions by, **3:210**
  - Utility of class actions, **8:526**

**CLOSING ARGUMENTS**

- Insiders and inside trading, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:25**

**COHMAD SECURITIES CORPORATION**

- Madoff feeder funds, **20:22**

**COLLATERALIZED DEBT OBLIGATIONS (CDOS)**

- Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:331.10**

**COMMODITIES EXCHANGE ACT (CEA)**

- Section 6(b), **13:194**
- Section 8, **13:193**
- Section 14(b), **13:196**
- Section 16(a), **13:193**
- USCA cross reference table, **App I**

**COMMODITIES FRAUD**

- Joint and several liability, **9:46**
- Suitability rules, **14:192**

**COMMODITY FUTURES TRADING COMMISSION (CFTC)**

- Generally, **1:15**
- Administrative Enforcement (this index)
- Amicus curiae participation in private litigation, **13:234**
- Ancillary relief, **13:250**
- Authority to investigate
  - Generally, **13:192**
  - Publishing data, restrictions on, **13:193**
- Cease and desist orders, **13:239**
- Collateral effects of orders, **13:241**
- Conferences with staff, **13:218**
- Conflicts of interest in investigations, **13:207**
- Counsel investigations, **13:219**
- Criminal enforcement references
  - Generally, **13:254 et seq.**
  - See also Criminal Enforcement (this index)
- Cryptocurrencies (this index)
- Decisions, **1:15**
- Deregulation. Progressive deregulation, below
- Discovery
  - Generally, **13:224 et seq.**
  - Document subpoenas, **13:225**
  - FOIA requests, **13:226**
  - Production requests, **13:227**
- Document production, **13:217**
- Documents, third party access to, **13:224 et seq.**

## INDEX

### COMMODITY FUTURES TRADING COMMISSION (CFTC)—Cont'd

Enforcement actions. See  
Administrative Enforcement  
(this index)

Exempt transactions, see also Pro-  
gressive deregulation, below

Factors influencing outcome of  
investigations, **13:264**

FOIA requests, **13:226**

Informal enforcement actions, **13:233**

Informal warnings, **13:230**

Information given by agency, **13:204**

Injunctions (this index)

Interrogations, generally, **13:221**

Investigations  
Generally, **13:1 et seq.**  
See also Investigations (this index)

Justice Department references  
Generally, **13:254 et seq.**  
See also Criminal Enforcement  
(this index)

Orders  
Cease and desist orders, **13:239**  
Collateral effects of orders, **13:241**  
Duration of orders, **13:243**  
Formal orders of investigation,  
**13:208 et seq.**  
Validity challenges, **13:212**

Outcomes of investigations, **13:228  
et seq.**

Progressive deregulation  
See also Exempt transactions,  
above

Pronouncements, **1:15**

Public reports of investigations,  
**13:232**

Reports of investigations, **13:232**

Requests for information, **13:203**

Right to counsel in investigations,  
**13:206**

Risk disclosure requirements, **6:289**

Securities law and preemption. Juris-  
diction, above

Staff conferences, **13:218**

State authorities, references to,  
**13:231**

State investigations, **13:197**

### COMMODITY FUTURES TRADING COMMISSION (CFTC)—Cont'd

Subpoena power, **13:200**

Subpoenas  
Generally, **13:213 et seq.**  
Content, **13:214**  
Document production, **13:217**  
Document subpoenas, **13:225**  
Evaluation, **13:215**  
Responses, **13:217**  
Validity challenges, **13:216**

Testimony  
Generally, **13:220 et seq.**  
Interrogations, **13:221**  
Preparing witnesses, **13:220**  
Transcripts, **13:222**

Trading privileges, denial of, **13:240**

Transcripts  
Generally, **13:222**  
Third party access to, **13:224 et  
seq.**

Warnings, **13:230**

Wells submissions, **13:265**

### COMMON LAW FRAUD

Commodities fraud generally, **1:24**

Conspirators, **8:261**

Corrections, disclosure, **6:291**

Defendant's knowledge and intent,  
**8:59**

Direct-personal dealing  
Generally, **5:2**  
Theories and sources of liability,  
**5:54**

Disclosures, **6:291**

Fraud on the market theory, **8:531**

Insider trading liability, **7:153**

Joint and several liability, **9:20**

Joint tortfeasors, **8:261**

Materiality, **8:6**

Parties, **8:259**

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:60**

Privity, **8:259**

Reliance, **8:487**

Securities fraud generally, **1:22**

Special facts and common law fraud,  
**3:19**

**COMMON LAW FRAUD—Cont'd**

State law, **3:185**

**COMMUNICATIONS**

Disclosure (this index)  
Letters (this index)  
Supplementary Communications (this index)

**COMPARATIVE FAULT**

Contribution (this index)  
Indemnification, **9:76**  
Insurance, **9:76**  
Proportionate Liability (this index)

**COMPENSATION**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, affiliated individuals, **20:5, 20:6, 20:9**  
Private actions, materiality, **8:43**

**COMPLIANCE COUNSEL**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

**COMPLIANCE PERSONNEL**

Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:9**

**COMPLIANCE PROGRAMS**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:14**

**COMPROMISE AND SETTLEMENT**

Admission of wrongdoing, **13:166 et seq.**  
Contribution, **9:72**  
Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA) (this index)  
Indemnification, **9:76**  
Insider trading penalty actions, **7:444**  
Insurance, **9:76, 13:183**  
Investigations  
Investment bankers global settlement, ancillary relief, **13:110**  
SEC, **13:154 to 13:157, 20:15**  
SROs, **13:305**  
State agency, **13:321**  
Investment bankers global settlement, ancillary relief, **13:110**  
Madoff fraud, Picower settlement, **20:24**  
Mediation, **15:69**

**COMPROMISE AND SETTLEMENT—Cont'd**

Negotiations (this index)  
No-action letters, SEC, **1:12**  
Penalty actions, **7:444**  
Releases of Rule 10b-5 liability, **12:11**  
Restitution to defrauded investors, SEC role in  
In court, **10:3**  
Out of court, **10:2**  
SEC cases, **1:9**  
SEC role in, **10:2, 10:3**  
State agency investigations, **13:321**  
Uncontested court decisions, **1:17**

**COMPULSORY DISCLOSURE**

See Disclosure (this index)

**COMPUTER PROGRAMMERS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:7**

**COMVERSE TECHNOLOGY INC.**

Backdating of stock options, **18:1, 18:11**

**CONCEALMENT**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**CONCERTED ACTION**

Generally, **8:294**  
Aider-Abettors (this index)  
Conspiracies and Conspirators (this index)  
Parties (this index)

**CONFLICTS OF INTEREST**

Generally, **5:145**  
Arms length transactions  
Generally, **5:144**  
Reasons and policies, **5:149**  
Corporate officers, **8:417**  
Directors, **8:417**  
Direct-personal dealing  
Generally, **5:53 et seq., 5:141 et seq.**  
Alternative forums, efficiency of, **5:65**  
Arms length transactions  
Generally, **5:144**  
Reasons and policies, **5:149**

## INDEX

### CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

#### —Cont'd

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
  - Birmaun Canon, **5:70 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof
    - Causation requirements, **5:98**
    - Unfair terms, **5:153**
  - Buyer-seller requirements
    - Generally, **5:110 et seq.**
    - Broad interpretation, **5:117**
    - Company as buyer-seller, **5:124**
    - Control, sales of, **5:113**
    - Definition, **5:111**
    - Forced sales, **5:120**
    - Injunction suits, **5:122**
    - Interpretation of requirement, **5:117**
    - Issuances, **5:121**
    - Liquidations, **5:119**
    - Loss causation as substitute, **5:123**
    - Mergers, **5:118**
    - Modified view, **5:117**
    - Strict view, **5:112 et seq.**
  - Causation requirements
    - Generally, **5:89 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **5:98**
    - Loss causation, **5:91**
    - Loss causation as substitute for buyer-seller requirement, **5:123**
    - Meaning, **5:90**
    - Minority vote requirements, **5:93 et seq.**
    - Modified view, **5:95**
  - Pleading
    - Materiality, **5:107**
    - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
    - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
    - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Policies, **5:97**
  - Proof
    - Materiality, **5:107**
    - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**

### CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

#### —Cont'd

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
- Causation requirements—Cont'd
  - Proof—Cont'd
    - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
    - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Reasons, **5:97**
  - Strict view, **5:93, 5:94**
  - Transaction causation, **5:92**
  - Voting
    - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
    - Strict causation, **5:100 et seq.**
- Common law theories and sources, **5:54**
- Connection requirement
  - Generally, **5:127 et seq.**
  - Another's sale, misconduct in connection with, **5:132**
  - Commissions, **5:133**
  - Court cases, **5:135**
  - Definition, **5:128**
  - Injunction suits, **5:138**
  - Kickbacks, **5:133**
  - Market transactions, misconduct affecting, **5:134**
  - Mechanical interpretation of, **5:130**
  - Modified view, **5:130 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **5:140**
  - Policies, **5:139**
  - Post-sale misconduct, **5:131**
  - Reasons, **5:139**
  - Strict view, **5:129**
  - Third party misconduct, **5:132**
- Continuity of investor protection, **5:67**
- Control, sales of, **5:113**
- Court cases
  - Birmaun Canon, **5:70 et seq.**
  - Connection requirement, **5:135 et seq.**
  - Unfairness
    - Generally, **5:183 et seq.**

**CONFLICTS OF INTEREST**

**—Cont'd**

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
  - Court cases—Cont'd
    - Unfairness—Cont'd
      - Fair terms, **5:185**
      - SEC decisions, **5:186**
      - Unfair terms, **5:184**
  - Deception requirement
    - Generally, **5:79 et seq.**
    - Company, deception of, **5:84 et seq.**
    - Creditors, deception of, **5:86**
    - Decisional impairment, **5:84**
    - Directors, deception of, **5:82**
    - Economic effect of deception, **5:84**
    - Knowledge, imputation of, **5:85**
    - Meaning, **5:80**
    - Modified views, **5:82 et seq.**
    - Pleading, **5:88**
    - Policies, **5:87**
    - Reasons, **5:87**
    - Shareholders, deception of, **5:83**
    - Strict view, **5:81**
  - Disclosure
    - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
    - Information disclosed, **5:189**
    - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
  - Fairness. Unfair terms, below
  - Fraud vs fiduciary breach, **5:60**
  - Injunction suits
    - Buyer-seller requirements, **5:122**
    - Connection requirements, **5:138**
  - Intrusion argument, **5:61 et seq.**
  - Investor protection, continuity of, **5:67**
  - Mismanagement exception
    - Generally, **5:72 et seq.**
    - Abuse of trading process, **5:76**
    - Fraud as part of, **5:75**
    - Meaning, **5:73**
    - Pleading, **5:78**
    - Policies, **5:77**
    - Reasons, **5:77**
    - Strict view, **5:74**

**CONFLICTS OF INTEREST**

**—Cont'd**

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
  - Obstacles
    - Generally, **5:56 et seq.**
    - Alternative forums, efficiency of, **5:65**
    - Application to other provisions, **5:69**
    - Birmbaun Canon, **5:70 et seq., 5:71**
    - Causation requirements
      - Loss causation, **5:91**
      - Meaning, **5:90**
      - Transaction causation, **5:92**
    - Continuity of investor protection, **5:67**
    - Deception requirement
      - Generally, **5:79 et seq.**
      - Company, deception of, **5:84 et seq.**
      - Creditors, deception of, **5:86**
      - Decisional impairment, **5:84**
      - Directors, deception of, **5:82**
      - Economic effect of deception, **5:84**
      - Knowledge, imputation of, **5:85**
      - Meaning, **5:80**
      - Modified views, **5:82 et seq.**
      - Policies, **5:87**
      - Reasons, **5:87**
      - Shareholders, deception of, **5:83**
      - Strict view, **5:81**
    - Decline of, **5:58**
    - Federal comparison, **5:55**
    - Fraud vs fiduciary breach, **5:60**
    - Interrelation of, **5:59**
    - Intrusion argument, **5:61 et seq.**
    - Investor protection, continuity of, **5:67**
    - Mismanagement exception
      - Generally, **5:72 et seq.**
      - Abuse of trading process, **5:76**
      - Fraud as part of, **5:75**
      - Meaning, **5:73**

## INDEX

### CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

#### —Cont'd

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
- Obstacles—Cont'd
  - Mismanagement exception—Cont'd
    - Policies, **5:77**
    - Public, effect of trading abuse on, **5:76**
    - Reasons, **5:77**
    - Strict view, **5:74**
  - Operation of, **5:57 et seq.**
  - Policies, **5:60**
  - Reasons for, **5:60**
  - Rise of, **5:58**
  - Standards, uniformity of, **5:66**
  - Uniformity of standards, **5:66**
- Pleading
  - Buyer-seller requirements, **5:126**
  - Causation requirements, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Company as buyer seller, **5:126**
  - Connection requirement, **5:140**
  - Deception requirement, **5:88**
  - Materiality, **5:107**
  - Mismanagement exception, **5:78**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Unfair terms, **5:152**
- Sources, common law, **5:54**
- Standards, uniformity of, **5:66**
- Theories, common law, **5:54**
- Unfair terms
  - Generally, **5:142 et seq.**
  - Actual control, **5:156**
  - Arms length transactions
    - Generally, **5:144**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:149**
  - Book value, **5:162**
  - Burden of proof, **5:153**
  - Business decisions as value determiners, **5:171**
  - Capitalization of earnings as test of value, **5:161**
  - Conflict transactions
    - Generally, **5:145**

### CONFLICTS OF INTEREST

#### —Cont'd

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
- Unfair terms—Cont'd
  - Conflict transactions—Cont'd
    - Reasons and policies, **5:150**
  - Control, proof of, **5:155**
  - Control premiums and discounts, **5:166**
  - Control sales, **5:191**
  - Court cases, **5:183 et seq.**
  - Definition, **5:143**
  - Disclosure
    - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
    - Information disclosed, **5:189**
    - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
    - Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**
  - Discounts, control, **5:166**
  - Earnings tests of value, **5:161**
  - Fair terms, effect of, **5:147**
  - Full disclosure, effect of
    - Generally, **5:146**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
  - Influence, proof of, **5:155**
  - Investment bankers
    - Generally, **5:172 et seq.**
    - Controlled company bankers, **5:175**
    - Controlling company bankers, **5:177**
    - Dual representation bankers, **5:176**
    - No banker transactions, **5:178**
    - Opinions of, challenging, **5:181**
    - Prior relations of, **5:182**
    - Qualities of bankers, **5:173**
    - Roles of bankers, **5:174**
    - Successive bankers, **5:179**
    - Trials, bankers for, **5:180**
  - Legal decisions as value determiners, **5:170**
  - Liquidation value, **5:163**
  - Market prices as value indicators, **5:160**
  - Pleading, **5:152**
  - Policies, **5:148 et seq.**

**CONFLICTS OF INTEREST**

—Cont'd

- Direct-personal dealing—Cont'd
- Unfair terms—Cont'd
  - Potential control, **5:156**
  - Premiums, control, **5:166**
  - Proof of elements, **5:154**
  - Range of fairness, **5:143**
  - Reasons, **5:148 et seq.**
  - Shareholder votes, effect of
    - Generally, **5:146**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
  - Tax factors in value determination, **5:164**
  - Time factors in value determination, **5:165**
  - Value determiners, **5:169 et seq.**
  - Value indicators, **5:158 et seq.**
  - Uniformity of standards, **5:66**
- Disclosure
  - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
  - Information disclosed, **5:189**
  - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
  - Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**
- Reasons and policies, **5:150**

**CONFLICTS OF LAW**

- Jurisdiction, foreign cubed cases, **11:31**

**CONGRESS**

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), actions against members of Congress, **19:12**

**CONGRESSIONAL INTENT**

- Concurrent history, **3:92**
- Implied liability
  - Contraction era, **3:76**
  - Expansion era, **3:56**
- Insiders, scope of regulations, **7:559**
- Interpretation, use of legislative history in
  - Concurrent history, **3:92**
  - Contraction era, **3:90 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **3:68**
  - Later history, **3:93**
  - Occasions for use, **3:91**

**CONGRESSIONAL INTENT**

—Cont'd

- Interpretation, use of legislative history in—Cont'd
  - Statutory structure, **3:94**
- Later history, **3:93**
- Merger regulation
  - Generally, **6:154 et seq.**
  - Information statement rules, **6:156**
  - Proxy rules, **6:155**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:157**
  - SEA § 14(a), **6:155**
  - SEA § 14(c), **6:156**
- Private Securities Litigation Reform Act (PSLRA), **3:214**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **3:14 et seq.**
  - Deceptive devices, **3:17**
  - Manipulative devices, **3:17**
  - Private enforcement rights, **3:16**
  - Scienter, **8:158**
  - Scope of coverage, **3:15**
  - Securities Act and, **3:10**
  - Semiofficial evidence, **3:15**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:158**
- Scienter, **8:158**
- SEA
  - Generally, **3:11**
  - Rule 10b-5 history
    - Generally, **3:14 et seq.**
    - Deceptive devices, **3:17**
    - Manipulative devices, **3:17**
    - Private enforcement rights, **3:16**
    - Scope of coverage, **3:15**
    - Semiofficial evidence, **3:15**
- Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act (SLUSA), **3:201, 3:214**
- Statutory structure, **3:94**
- Tender offers
  - Generally, **6:16 et seq.**
  - Disclosure, **6:17**
  - Fairness, **6:19**
  - Investor protection, **6:17**
  - Target management protection, **6:18**

## INDEX

### CONNECTION WITH REQUIREMENT

- Generally, **5:127 et seq.**
- Another's sale, misconduct in connection with, **5:132**
- Commissions, **5:133**
- Definition, **5:128**
- Direct-impersonal dealing
  - Generally, **6:183 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:185**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:183**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:184**
- Direct-personal dealing
  - Generally, **5:127 et seq.**
  - Another's sale, misconduct in connection with, **5:132**
  - Commissions, **5:133**
  - Court cases, **5:135**
  - Injunction suits, **5:138**
  - Kickbacks, **5:133**
  - Market transactions, misconduct affecting, **5:134**
  - Mechanical interpretation of, **5:130**
  - Modified view, **5:130 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **5:140**
  - Post-sale misconduct, **5:131**
  - Reasons, **5:139**
  - Strict view, **5:129**
  - Third party misconduct, **5:132**
- Injunction suits, **5:138**
- Insider trading
  - Generally, **7:676 et seq.**
  - Inducing action, **7:682**
  - Investment decision, influencing, **7:682**
  - Market transactions, **7:370**
  - Misappropriation theory, **7:597, 7:680**
  - Non-participation in pertinent transactions, **7:677**
  - Possession vs use, **7:681**
  - Price, affecting, **7:682**
  - Purchase, inducing, **7:682**
  - Purchaser-seller test, **7:678**
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:371**
  - Tender offers, **7:371**
  - Touching test, **7:678**

### CONNECTION WITH REQUIREMENT—Cont'd

- Kickbacks, **5:133**
- Market transactions, misconduct affecting, **5:134**
- Mechanical interpretation of, **5:130**
- Merger challenges
  - Generally, **6:183 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:185**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:183**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:184**
- Misappropriation theory of insider liabilities, **7:597**
- Modified view, **5:130 et seq.**
- Pleading, **5:140**
- Policies, **5:139**
- Post-sale misconduct, **5:131**
- Purchaser-seller test, **7:678**
- Reasons, **5:139**
- Strict view, **5:129**
- Third party misconduct, **5:132**
- Touching test, **7:678**

### CONSISTENCY OF RETURNS

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

### CONSOLIDATION OF ACTIONS

- SLUSA restrictions, **3:206**

### CONSPIRACIES AND CONSPIRATORS

- Generally, **8:304 et seq.**
- Actions in concert, **8:294**
- Affirmative conduct
  - Generally, **8:305 et seq.**
  - No affirmative conduct, **8:310**
- Aider-abettors compared, **8:292**
- Common law fraud, **8:261**
- Control sales, **8:307**
- Injunctions, **8:312**
- Insiders and Insider Trading (this index)
- Madoff Ponzi Scheme (this index)
- Misrepresentations, **8:305**
- Nondisclosures, **8:306**
- Other violations, **8:309**
- Overt acts
  - Generally, **8:305 et seq.**
  - No overt act, **8:310**

**CONSPIRACIES AND  
CONSPIRATORS—Cont'd**

- Parties and privity
  - Generally, **8:304 et seq.**
  - See also Private Actions (this index)
- Pleading
  - Generally, **8:325**
  - Affirmative conduct, **8:321**
  - Aiding-abetting, **8:324**
  - Choice of parties, **8:320**
  - No affirmative conduct, **8:322**
  - Participation, **8:323**
  - Special elements, **8:326**
- Privity
  - Implied liability, **8:280**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:270**
  - SA § 17(a), **8:280**
  - Sales fraud, **8:270**
- Relations to other actors, **8:311**
- Rule 10b-5 liability
  - Actions in concert, **8:294**
  - Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**
  - Aider-abettors compared, **8:292**
  - Concerted action, **8:294**
  - Inducement, **8:295**
  - Injunction suits, **8:303**
  - Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**
  - Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**
  - Participants generally, **8:292**
  - Participants in violations generally, **8:294**
  - Pleading, **8:319 et seq.**
  - SEC decisions, **8:312**

**CONSTRUCTIVE FRAUD**

- Generally, **8:242**

**CONSTRUCTIVE KNOWLEDGE**

- Generally, **8:180**
- See also Knowledge (this index)
- Versions of scienter, relations among, **8:181**

**CONTRACTION ERA**

- See also Expansion Era; Implied Liability (this index)
- Compensatory damages in, **14:105**

**CONTRACTION ERA—Cont'd**

- Fiduciary criteria
  - Generally, **7:561 et seq.**
- Contraction era, **7:576**
- Creation
  - Generally, **7:567**
  - Advisers to issuers, **7:569**
  - Business associates of issuers, **7:570**
  - Law characterizing relation, **7:573**
  - Position with issuer, **7:568**
  - Prior dealings, creation by, **7:571**
  - Securities professionals, **7:572**
- Criteria, **7:561 et seq.**
- Information possession criteria, **7:574**
- Issuers, **7:565**
- Market insiders, **7:575**
- With whom must relationship exist, **7:562 et seq.**
- Implied liabilities under SRO rules, **14:71**
- Implied private actions under 10b-5
  - Generally, **3:74 et seq.**
  - See also Implied Liability (this index)
  - Administrative enforcement, supplement to, **3:81**
  - Administrative interpretation, **3:82**
  - Congressional intent, **3:76**
  - Cort v Ash, **3:95**
  - Flexibility to achieve remedial purpose, **3:88**
  - Judicial restraint, **3:85**
  - Legislative history, uses of, **3:90 et seq.**
  - Modes of interpretation, **3:86 et seq.**
  - Negative implication, **3:87**
  - Policies, **3:75**
  - Policy effectuation, **3:80**
  - Practicality, **3:83**
  - Reasons, **3:75**
  - Statutory jurisdictional grant, **3:79**
  - Statutory literalism, **3:89**
  - Statutory tort, **3:77**

## INDEX

### CONTRACTION ERA—Cont'd

- Implied private actions under 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Supplement to administrative enforcement, **3:81**
  - Vexatiousness, **3:84, 3:85**
  - Voidability, statutory, **3:78**
- Information possession criteria of insider liabilities, **7:576**
- Insider trading by issuers, **7:646**
- Overlapping remedies
  - Generally, **3:102 et seq.**
  - Comparison of elements of express and implied rights, **3:105**
  - Defense strategies, **3:103**
  - Exclusions, effect of, **3:108**
  - Falsity vs scheme, **3:106**
  - Nullification test, **3:104**
- SA § 11
  - Generally, **3:109 et seq.**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:112**
  - Documents excluded, **3:113**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**
  - Securities excluded, **3:110**
  - Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**
  - Transactions excluded, **3:110**
- SA § 12(2)
  - Generally, **3:116 et seq.**
  - Commercial paper, **3:119**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:121**
  - Documents excluded, **3:122**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:124**
  - Government securities, **3:118**
  - Municipal securities, **3:117**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:120**
  - Securities excluded, **3:117 et seq.**
  - Substantive elements, **3:124**
- SEA § 9
  - Generally, **3:125 et seq.**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:129**
  - Documents excluded, **3:130**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**

### CONTRACTION ERA—Cont'd

- Overlapping remedies—Cont'd
  - SEA § 9—Cont'd
    - Government securities, **3:127**
    - Municipal securities, **3:127**
    - OTC securities, **3:126**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**
    - Securities excluded, **3:126 et seq.**
    - Substantive elements, **3:132**
  - SEA § 18
    - Generally, **3:133 et seq.**
    - Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**
    - Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:141**
    - Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**
    - Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**
    - Fischman rationale, **3:135**
    - Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**
    - Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**
    - Scienter, **3:135**
    - Securities excluded, **3:139**
    - Substantive elements, **3:145**
    - Statutory cumulativity, **3:107**
    - Supreme Court approach, **3:104**
- Rule 10b-5 history generally, **3:32**
- SRO rules, implied liabilities, **14:71**
- State law, **3:184**

### CONTRACT PLANNING

- See Transaction Planning (this index)

### CONTRIBUTION

- Generally, **9:66 et seq.**
- Attorneys' fees, **9:75**
- Costs, **9:75**
- Court cases, **9:68**
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Knowing defendants, **9:70**
- Limitation of actions, **9:74**
- Measure of, **9:73**
- Musick case, **9:68**

**CONTRIBUTION—Cont'd**

- Nonknowing defendants, **9:71**
- Proportionate liability and, **9:69**
- Settlement, **9:72**
- Statutory bases, **9:67**

**CONTROL, SALES OF**

- See also Tender Offer Fraud (this index)
- Buyer-seller requirements, **5:113**
- Conspiracies, **8:307**

**CONTROL PERSON LIABILITY**

- Generally, **7:451 et seq., 8:373 et seq.**
- Actions in concert, **8:294**
- Actual control, **5:156**
- Broker-dealers
  - Generally, **7:456**
  - Good faith defense, **8:394 et seq.**
- B test, **7:456**
- Conspiracies
  - Generally, **8:304 et seq.**
  - Control, sales of, **8:307**
- Contribution to violation, **7:458**
- Corporate policy, control over, **8:382 et seq.**
- Court cases, **8:380 et seq.**
- Culpable participation, **8:378, 8:388 et seq.**
- Disclosure of merger offers leading to board control changes, **6:61**
- Element of control, **8:379**
- Failure to act, **7:455**
- Good faith defense
  - Generally, **8:393 et seq.**
  - Broker-dealers, **8:394 et seq.**
  - SA § 15, **8:393 et seq.**
  - SEA § 20(a), **8:393 et seq.**
- Influence, proof of, **5:155**
- Insider trading charges
  - Generally, **7:451 et seq.**
  - All control persons, **7:453**
  - Amount of liability, **7:459**
  - Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**
  - B test, **7:456**
  - Contribution to violation, **7:458**
  - Failure to act, **7:455**

**CONTROL PERSON LIABILITY—Cont'd**

- Insider trading charges—Cont'd
  - Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
- Knowledge
  - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
  - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
  - Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**
  - Private actions against, **7:486, 7:512**
- Reckless disregard
  - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
  - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
- Requirements, **7:452**
- Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
- Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**
- A test, **7:453**
- Insider trading penalties imposed on, **7:440**
- Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
- Investment bankers for controlled companies, **5:175**
- Investment bankers for controlling companies, **5:177**
- Investment bankers representing controlled and controlling companies, **5:176**
- Joint and several liability
  - Generally, **9:33**
  - SA § 15, **9:25**
  - SEA § 20(a), **9:33**
- Knowledge
  - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
  - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
- Law and fact questions, **8:381**
- Legislative history, **8:375**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**
- Parking stock in control fights, **7:146**
- Participation, culpable, **8:378, 8:388 et seq.**
- Parties and privity
  - Generally, **8:373 et seq.**

## INDEX

### CONTROL PERSON LIABILITY

#### —Cont'd

- Parties and privity—Cont'd
  - See also Parties (this index)
- Pleading
  - Affirmative conduct, **8:321**
  - Aiding-abetting, **8:324**
  - Choice of parties, **8:320**
  - Conspiracy, **8:325**
  - No affirmative conduct, **8:322**
  - Participation, **8:323**
  - Special elements, **8:326**
- Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**
- Potential control, **5:156**
- Privity
  - Implied liability, **8:281**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:271**
  - SA § 17(a), **8:281**
  - Sales fraud, **8:271**
- Proof of, **5:155**
- Proportionate liability, **9:53**
- Reckless disregard
  - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
  - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
- Requirements, **7:452**
- Rule 10b-5 liability
  - Actions in concert, **8:294**
  - Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**
  - Concerted action, **8:294**
  - Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**
  - Inducement, **8:295**
  - Injunction suits, **8:303**
  - Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**
  - Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**
  - Participants, **8:292, 8:294**
  - Pleading, **8:319 et seq.**
- SA § 15, **8:393 et seq.**
- Sales, unfair terms, **5:191**
- SEA § 20(a), **8:393 et seq.**
- Standard of participation, **8:377**
- Statutory language, **8:374**
- Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**
- Unfair terms in control sales, **5:191**
- Valuation of control premiums and discounts, **5:166**

### COOPERATION

- SEC investigation, **20:15**

### COOPERATIVE APARTMENTS

- Shares in as securities, **5:26**

### COORDINATED SEC-STATE-SRO INVESTIGATIONS

- Generally, **13:322 et seq.**
- ARS securities and market, **13:325**
- ARS seller management liability, **13:330**
- ARS violations, **13:326**
- Auction Rate Security (ARS), generally, **13:323**
- Criminal aspects, **13:331**
- Government regulatory suits, **13:329**
- Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**
- Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**
- State law, private litigation, **13:328**

### CORNERING THE MARKET

- Manipulation, **7:134**

### CORONAVIRUS

- Covid-19 Pandemic (this index)

### CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

- Generally, **8:414**

### CORPORATE OFFICERS

- See Officers, Corporate (this index)

### CORRECTION

- Arbitration, challenging awards, **15:58**
- Private actions, correction and price drop, Proposition 2, **8:580**

### CORRUPTION

- Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:338**

### COSTS AND EXPENSES

- Costs of enforcement, insiders and insider trading, **7:195**
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), affirmative defense, **19:4**

**COUNSEL, RIGHT TO**

See Attorneys (this index)

**COURT DECISIONS**Aider-abettor liability, **8:328 et seq.**Arbitration provisions, validity of,  
**15:3, 15:71**Asterisks, **1:2**

Birnbaum Rule (this index)

Broker-dealer supervision liabilities,  
**14:176**Cady, Roberts & Co case, **App E**Central Bank decision, **7:79, 7:85**Chadbourne case, **3:217 et seq.**Chiasson/Newman cases, **7:387 et seq.**Citation formats, **1:3**Contested cases, **1:16**Contribution, **9:68**Control person liability, **8:380 et seq.**Cooper case, **8:419**Corporate officers, Rule 10b-5  
liabilities, **8:415 et seq.**

Damages

Benefit of bargain measure, **9:6**Circuit Courts, **9:4 et seq.**Consequential damages, **9:8**Constructive trust measure, **9:7**Disgorgement, **9:7**District court confusion, **9:10**Out-of-pocket measure, **9:5**Supreme Court, **9:3**Unjust enrichment, **9:7**Directors, Rule 10b-5 liabilities,  
**8:415 et seq.**Disclosures, **6:281**Disgorgement, **9:42**Fischman rationale, **3:135**Front running, **7:142**Gould case, **8:417**Grace case, **8:423**Gutfreund case, **8:420**Howey test, **5:22**Implied liabilities under SRO rules,  
**14:64 et seq.**Indirect-impersonal dealing, GAAP  
violations, **7:62 et seq.**International Brotherhood of  
Teamsters case, **5:27****COURT DECISIONS—Cont'd**International transactions, **11:174**IPA, current status of, **3:148 et seq.**Joiner Leasing Corp case, **5:21**Joint and several liability, **9:42**Lampf case, **11:63 et seq.**Lipkind case, **11:63 et seq.**Loss causation, private actions in  
Supreme Court decisions, **8:556  
to 8:570**Margin rules, **14:60**

Materiality tests

Mills case, **8:13**TSC cases, **8:14**McMahon case, **15:3, 15:71**Mills case, **8:13, 8:558**Misappropriation theory of insider  
liabilities, **7:582 et seq.**Musick case, **9:68**National Telephone case, **8:422**Notations, **1:2**Omnicare decision, fact vs. opinion  
standard, **8:3**Petigrow case, **11:63 et seq.**Pinter case, **14:30, 14:38**Plaut case, **11:69**Pleva case, **11:63 et seq.**Post-Chadbourne cases, **3:220 to  
3:222**Private actions, Supreme Court deci-  
sions. Private Actions (this  
index)Prupis case, **11:63 et seq.**Recklessness, **11:141 et seq., 11:162  
et seq., 14:83 et seq.**Risk disclosures, **6:281**Rodriguez case, **15:3, 15:71**SA § 11, **14:6**Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**SRO rules, implied liabilities, **14:64  
et seq.**Stirling Homex case, **8:416**Stoneridge case, **7:82, 7:83**TSC cases, **8:14**UBS Securities decision, proof of  
retaliatory intent under  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **22:24**Uncontested cases, **1:17**

## INDEX

### COURT DECISIONS—Cont'd

- Unfairness
  - Generally, **5:183 et seq.**
  - Fair terms, **5:185**
  - SEC decisions, **5:186**
  - Unfair terms, **5:184**
- United Benefit Life Ins Co case, **5:24**
- United Housing Foundation, Inc case, **5:26**
- Ward La France Truck Corp case, **App D**
- What is a security
  - Generally, **5:20 et seq.**
  - Flexible fund annuities, **5:25**
  - Howey test, **5:22**
  - International Brotherhood of Teamsters case, **5:27**
  - Joiner Leasing Corp case, **5:21**
  - Landreth Timber Co case, **5:29**
  - Marine Bank case, **5:28**
  - Reeves v. Ernst & Young case, **5:30**
  - SEC v. Edwards case, **5:31**
  - United Benefit Life Ins Co case, **5:24**
  - United Housing Foundation, Inc case, **5:26**
  - Variable annuities, **5:23**

### COVID-19 PANDEMIC

- Generally, **27:1 to 27:9**
- Class actions
  - Foreign companies, misleading disclosure re: impact and effect of Covid-19 on, **27:7**
  - Insider trading, **27:4**
  - Material nonpublic information, misuse of, **27:4**
  - Misleading disclosures, **27:3, 27:5 to 27:7**
  - Misuse of material nonpublic information, **27:4**
  - Other Covid-19 related class actions, **27:8**
  - Private securities, **27:1**
  - Tests and treatments, misleading disclosure re:, **27:3**
  - Video conferencing, misleading disclosure re: capacity of

### COVID-19 PANDEMIC—Cont'd

- Class actions—Cont'd
  - provider for remote learning to meet surge demand, **27:6**
  - Video conferencing, misleading disclosure re: privacy and security for, **27:5**
- DOJ criminal actions, **27:2**
- Foreign companies, misleading disclosure re: impact and effect of Covid-19 on, class actions, **27:7**
- Insider trading, class actions, **27:4**
- Material nonpublic information, misuse of, class actions, **27:4**
- Misleading disclosures, class actions, **27:3, 27:5 to 27:7**
- Misuse of material nonpublic information, class actions, **27:4**
- Other Covid-19 related class actions, **27:8**
- Overview, **27:1**
- Private securities, class actions, **27:1**
- Private securities class actions related to, **27:1**
- Securities enforcement actions, **27:1, 27:2**
- Tests and treatments, misleading disclosure re:, class actions, **27:3**
- Video conferencing, misleading disclosure re: capacity of provider for remote learning to meet surge demand, class actions, **27:6**
- Video conferencing, misleading disclosure re: privacy and security for, class actions, **27:5**

### CREDIBILITY

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

### CREDIT SUISSE SECURITIES LITIGATION

- Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:337**

### CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT

- Generally, **13:121 et seq., 13:253 et seq.**

**CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT**

—Cont'd

- Actual knowledge, scienter, **8:176**
- Administrative enforcement
  - compared, SEC, **13:95**
- Advantages and disadvantages
  - CFTC references, **13:262**
  - SEC references, **13:132**
- Aider-abettor liability
  - Generally, **8:327 et seq., 8:372**
  - Absence of benefit, **8:366**
  - Benefit, **8:364 et seq.**
  - Court cases, **8:328 et seq.**
  - Definitions, **8:349**
  - Elements, **8:352**
  - Extent of benefit, **8:367**
  - High conscious intent, **8:358**
  - Janus Capital, preparation for or assistance to another, **8:336 et seq.**
  - Knowledge of violation, **8:356 et seq.**
  - Nature of benefit, **8:367**
  - Origins of doctrine, **8:351**
  - Presence of benefit, **8:365**
  - Primary violations, **8:355**
  - PSLRA, **8:347**
  - Requirements, **8:352**
  - SEA § 20(f), **8:348**
  - Substantial assistance
    - Generally, **8:359 et seq.**
    - Extraordinary actions, **8:362**
    - Inaction, **8:363**
    - Ordinary actions, **8:362**
    - Proximate cause, **8:360**
    - Silence, **8:363**
    - Timing, **8:361**
- Ancillary relief
  - CFTC references, **13:260**
  - SEC references, **13:130**
- Burden of proof, insider trading charges, **7:366**
- CFTC references
  - Generally, **13:254**
  - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:262**
  - Ancillary relief, **13:260**
  - Character, **13:253**

**CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT**

—Cont'd

- CFTC references—Cont'd
  - Collateral effects, **13:259**
  - Duration, **13:261**
  - Grand juries, **13:256**
  - Participation of agency, **13:255**
  - Plea bargaining, **13:257**
  - Proof standards, **13:258 et seq.**
  - Sentencing, **13:261**
- Character
  - CFTC references, **13:253**
  - SEC references, **13:121**
- Collateral effects
  - CFTC references, **13:259**
  - SEC references, **13:129**
- Commodities fraud generally, **1:24**
- Constructive knowledge, **8:187**
- Continuations of civil proceedings, **13:137, 13:138**
- Control person liability
  - Generally, **8:373 et seq.**
  - See also Control Person Liability (this index)
- Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:331**
- Defenses, **13:128**
- Deferred prosecution agreement, JPMorgan/Madoff, **10:5**
- Diligence, lack of, **8:236**
- Discovery
  - Civil-criminal flow of information, **13:139**
  - Criminal-civil flow of information, **13:139.10, 13:141**
  - Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**
- Double jeopardy limitations, insider trading charges, **7:443**
- Duration
  - CFTC references, **13:261**
  - SEC references, **13:131**
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA) (this index)
- Global Ponzi scheme. Madoff Ponzi Scheme (this index)

INDEX

**CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT**

—Cont'd

- Grand juries
  - CFTC references, **13:256**
  - SEC references, **13:124**
- Ignorance of law, **13:128**
- Implied Liability (this index)
- Insider trading
  - Generally, **7:415 et seq., 7:460 et seq.**
  - See also Administrative Enforcement (this index)
  - Amount of penalties, **7:466**
  - Burden of proof
    - Generally, **7:366**
    - Defenses, **7:369**
    - Institutions, **7:367**
  - Connection with requirement
    - Market transactions, **7:370**
    - Rule 10b-5, **7:370**
    - Rule 14e-3, **7:371**
    - Tender offers, **7:371**
  - Defenses
    - Generally, **7:350**
    - Amount defined, **7:355**
    - Binding contract defense, **7:351**
    - Burden of proving, **7:369**
    - Common terms and issues, **7:355 et seq.**
    - Date defined, **7:357**
    - Delegation alternative to amount, price and date, **7:358**
    - Exclusiveness of defenses, **7:360**
    - Institutional defenses, **7:361**
    - Instructions defense, **7:352**
    - Overriding limitations, **7:359**
    - Price defined, **7:356**
    - Relation to other laws, **7:362**
    - Systematic plans defense, **7:353**
    - Tracking plans defense, **7:354**
  - Disgorgement, **7:465**
  - Institutional defenses, **7:361**
  - Institutions, burden of proof, **7:367**
  - Judge or jury, **7:467**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:463**

**CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT**

—Cont'd

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - Martha Stewart case. Scierter, below in this group
  - Misappropriation theory, **7:578 et seq.**
  - Motion practice, **7:365**
  - New York district federal prosecutions, **App J**
  - Parties, **7:363**
  - Penalties, **7:466**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **7:364**
  - Scierter, **7:398**
- Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**
- Proof, **7:368**
- Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**
- Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:1 et seq.**
- Restitution, **7:465**
- RICO, **7:414, 7:464**
- Scierter
  - Generally, **7:372 et seq.**
- Fiduciary theory
  - Tippers, **7:381**
  - Trading insiders, **7:377**
  - Trading tippees, **7:385**
- Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**
- Martha Stewart case
  - Generally, **7:403 et seq.**
  - Acquittal, **7:411**
  - Background of case, **7:404**
  - Imclone stock sale, **7:404**
  - Indictment, **7:405**
  - Inferences from evidence, **7:409**
  - Intent inference test, **7:410**
  - Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**
  - Misrepresentation, **7:406**
  - Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**
- Misappropriation theory
  - Tippers, **7:382**
  - Trading insiders, **7:378**
  - Trading tippees, **7:386**
- Pleading, **7:398**
- Proof, **7:399 et seq.**

**CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT****—Cont'd**

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - Scienter—Cont'd
    - Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**
    - Rule 14e-3, **7:412**
  - Tippers
    - Generally, **7:379 et seq.**
    - Proof, **7:401**
  - Trading insiders
    - Generally, **7:375 et seq.**
    - Proof, **7:400**
  - Trading tippees
    - Generally, **7:383 et seq.**
    - Proof, **7:402**
  - Securities violations, **7:462**
  - Tippers, scienter, **7:379 et seq.**
- Intent, **8:197**
- Investigations
  - Generally, **13:1 et seq.**
  - See also Investigations (this index)
- JPMorgan/Madoff, deferred prosecution agreement, **10:5**
- Mail and wire fraud
  - Generally, **7:171, 7:463**
  - Scienter, **7:413**
- Martha Stewart case
  - Generally, **7:403 et seq.**
  - Acquittal, **7:411**
  - Background of case, **7:404**
  - Imclone stock sale, **7:404**
  - Indictment, **7:405**
  - Inferences from evidence, **7:409**
  - Insiders and inside trading, generally, **7:403 et seq.**
  - Intent inference test, **7:410**
  - Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**
  - Misrepresentation, **7:406**
  - Scienter, generally, **7:403 et seq.**
  - Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**
- Motion practice, **7:365**
- Negligence and scienter, **8:236**
- No-knowledge defenses, **13:128**
- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings
  - Generally, **13:133 et seq.**
  - Battle over discovery, **13:135**

**CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT****—Cont'd**

- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings—Cont'd
  - CFTC references, **13:263**
  - Civil-criminal flow of information, **13:139**
  - Continuation of criminal proceedings, **13:140**
  - Continuations of civil proceedings, **13:137, 13:138**
  - Criminal-civil flow of information, **13:141, 13:143**
  - Criteria for stay of discovery, **13:136**
  - Discovery, **13:138, 13:139, 13:141, 13:142, 13:143**
  - Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**
  - Reasons for concern, **13:134**
  - SEC references, **13:133 et seq.**
- Participation of agency
  - CFTC references, **13:255**
  - SEC references, **13:123**
- Penalty actions
  - Generally, **7:438 et seq.**
  - See also Securities and Exchange Commission (this index)
- Plea bargaining
  - CFTC references, **13:257**
  - SEC references, **13:125**
- Pleadings, **7:364**
- Private actions, scienter, **8:65**
- Proof standards
  - CFTC references, **13:258 et seq.**
  - SEC references, **13:126 et seq.**
- Quantum of proof, **7:366**
- Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:1 et seq.**
- References from administrative agencies
  - CFTC references, **13:254**
  - SEC references, **13:122**
  - SRO references, **13:304**
- Sanctions under rules generally, **3:4**
- Scienter
  - Actual knowledge, **8:176**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:187**

## INDEX

### CRIMINAL ENFORCEMENT

#### —Cont'd

Scienter—Cont'd

Diligence, lack of, **8:236**

Intent, **8:197**

Negligence, **8:236**

Private actions, **8:65**

SEC references, **13:127**

Unreasonable conduct, **8:236**

SEC

Investigations, information sharing  
by Office of Market Intel-  
ligence, **20:14**

Raj Rajaratnam case, early  
investigation, **21:3**

References

Generally, **13:122**

Advantages and disadvantages,  
**13:132**

Ancillary relief, **13:130**

Character, **13:121**

Collateral effects, **13:129**

Defenses, **13:128**

Duration, **13:131**

Grand juries, **13:124**

Ignorance of law, **13:128**

No-knowledge defenses, **13:128**

Participation of agency, **13:123**

Plea bargaining, **13:125**

Proof standards, **13:126 et seq.**

Scienter, **13:127**

Sentencing, **13:131**

Willfulness, **13:127**

Role in, **10:1, 10:4**

Securities fraud generally, **1:22**

Securities Litigation Uniform Stan-  
dards Act (SLUSA), effect of,  
**3:216**

Sentencing

CFTC references, **13:261**

SEC references, **13:131**

SRO references, **13:304**

State investigations, **13:320**

Touting, scienter, **8:99**

Unreasonable conduct, **8:236**

Whistleblowers, retaliation, **22:16**

Willfulness, **13:127**

### CROSS TRADING

Manipulation practices, **7:135**

### CROWDFUNDING

Generally, **14:207 et seq.**

Accredited investors, JOBS Act, cur-  
rent status, **14:219**

Background, **14:207**

Broker-dealer liability, **14:215**

Disclosure, JOBS Act, current status,  
**14:219**

Enforcement priorities, **14:208**

Fraud, potential, **14:209, 14:212**

History, **14:210 et seq.**

Implementation, JOBS Act, current  
status, **14:219**

JOBS Act, **14:214 et seq.**

Kickstarter, **14:211**

Loomi lampshade, **14:211**

Ogre, **14:211**

Portals, **14:217**

Description, **14:223**

Proposed rules, reaction, **14:220,**  
**14:221**

Registration of securities, **14:216**

Regulation A, application of law,  
**14:215**

Regulation D, application of law,  
**14:215**

Risk, **14:212**

Safecast Geiger counter, **14:211**

SEC rules and regulations, **14:216**

Securities and Exchange Commission  
(SEC), **14:218**

Solicitation, JOBS Act, current status,  
**14:219**

State regulators, reaction, **14:222**

Vetting projects, **14:212**

### CRYPTOCURRENCIES

Generally, **24:1**

Bitcoin, **25:3**

Cases in the southern district of NY,  
**24:5**

Class actions, **24:9**

Commodities, virtual currencies as,  
**25:6**

**CRYPTOCURRENCIES—Cont’d**

- Commodity Futures Trading Commission (CFTC)
  - Generally, **25:1 to 25:10**
  - Background, **25:3**
  - Bitcoin, **25:3**
  - Criminal activity, **25:4**
  - Enforcement actions, **25:8**
  - Jurisdiction, **25:2, 25:7**
  - Regulation and oversight, **25:5**
  - Spot markets, **25:7**
  - Statutory framework, **25:2**
  - Warning to investors, **25:9**
- Criminal activity, **25:4**
- Enforcement actions, **24:4**
  - CFTC, **25:8**
- Insider trading cases, **24:8**
- Jurisdiction of CFTC, **25:2, 25:7**
- Private litigation, **24:9**
- Regulation
  - CFTC, **25:5**
  - SEC, **24:1 to 24:9**
- SEC
  - 21(a) Report, **24:3**
  - Regulation by, **24:1 to 24:9**
- SEC approach to cryptocurrencies prior to January, 2025, **24:2**
- SEC v. Ripple Labs, **24:6**
- Touting cases, **24:7**

**CUSTODIAN OF CLIENT ASSETS**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**“CUSTOMER” UNDER SECURITIES INVESTOR PROTECTION ACT**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:3**

**CYBERSECURITY**

- Generally, **26:1 et seq.**
- Broker-dealer, hacking of, **26:4, 26:5**
- Customer data
  - Disclose hacking, failure to, **26:1**
  - Protect, failure to, **26:5**
- Cyber breaches. Private securities litigation, cyber breaches, below
- Disclose hacking, failure to, customer data, **26:1**

**CYBERSECURITY—Cont’d**

- Failure to
  - Disclose hacking, **26:1**
  - Implement identity theft program, **26:4, 26:5**
  - Protect customer data, **26:5**
- Final rule
  - Cybersecurity risk management, **26:9**
  - Governance, **26:9**
  - Incident disclosure, **26:9**
  - Strategy, **26:9**
- Governance, final rule, **26:9**
- Identity theft program, failure to implement, **26:4, 26:5**
- Illegal trading, **26:2, 26:3**
- Incident disclosure, final rule, **26:9**
- Mergers and acquisitions, **26:2**
- Misappropriation
  - Customer data, **26:5**
  - Non-public information, **26:2, 26:3**
- Non-public information, misappropriation of, **26:2, 26:3**
- Private securities litigation, cyber breaches
  - Class actions
    - Securities Act of 1933, **26:7**
    - Securities Exchange Act of 1934, Rule 10b-5, **26:6**
  - Fiduciary duties, **26:8**
  - Shareholder derivative actions, **26:8**
- Regulation S-P, **26:4, 26:5**
- Risk management, final rule, **26:9**
- Safeguards rule, SEC, **26:4, 26:5**
- Strategy, final rule, **26:9**

**DAMAGES**

- Generally, **9:1 et seq.**
- Ancillary remedies and, **9:17**
- Arbitrations
  - Attorneys’ fees, **15:38**
  - Costs, **15:38**
  - Interest, **15:38**
  - Mitigation of damages, **15:35**
  - Punitive, **15:36, 15:37, 15:74**
- Attorneys’ fees
  - Generally, **9:18**
  - Arbitrations, **15:38**

## INDEX

### DAMAGES—Cont'd

- Attorneys' fees—Cont'd
  - Broker-dealer liability, **14:53**
  - Contribution, **9:75**
- Benefit of bargain measure, **9:6**
- Broker-dealer liability
  - Express actions, **14:46, 14:51**
  - Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **14:95 et seq.**
  - SA § 11, **14:15**
- Causation, **8:553**
- Churning, **14:136**
- Civil Penalties (this index)
- Class actions, **9:13**
- Consequential damages, **9:8**
- Constructive trust measure, **9:7**
- Contribution (this index)
- Costs
  - Arbitrations, **15:38**
  - Broker-dealer liability, **14:53**
  - Contribution, **9:75**
- Court cases
  - Benefit of bargain measure, **9:6**
  - Circuit Courts, **9:4 et seq.**
  - Consequential damages, **9:8**
  - Constructive trust measure, **9:7**
  - Disgorgement, **9:7**
  - District court confusion, **9:10**
  - Out-of-pocket measure, **9:5**
  - Supreme Court, **9:3**
  - Unjust enrichment, **9:7**
- Disgorgement (this index)
- Enforcement action civil penalties
  - CFTC, **13:238**
  - Financial test, **13:238**
  - SEC, **13:83**
- Fraud on the market theory (FOMT)
  - Generally, **8:520 et seq., 8:552**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Insider trading violations, **7:488**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Interest, **15:38**
- Joint and Several Liability (this index)
- Lost profits, rescission and, **14:101**
- Market based price determinations, **8:525**

### DAMAGES—Cont'd

- Multiple recoveries, **9:15**
- Other damages, **9:14**
- Out-of-pocket damages, broker-dealer liability, **14:103**
- Out-of-pocket measure, court cases, **9:5**
- Price, market based price determinations, **8:525**
- Proportionate Liability (this index)
- Punitive Damages (this index)
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:484 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
  - Causation, **8:553**
  - Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:552**
- Rescissional damages, **14:51**
- Rule 10b-5, **14:95 et seq.**
- SA § 11, **14:15**
- SEA § 21D(e), **9:11**
- Statutory bases, **9:2**
- Unjust enrichment, **9:7**

### DAY TRADING

- NASD risk disclosure requirements, **6:284**

### DECEPTION

- Generally, **5:79 et seq.**
- Directors, deception of, **5:82**
- Economic effect of deception, **5:84**
- Knowledge, imputation of, **5:85**
- Meaning, **5:80**
- Modified views, **5:82 et seq.**
- Pleading, **5:88**
- Policies, **5:87**
- Reasons, **5:87**
- Shareholders, deception of, **5:83**
- Strict view, **5:81**

### DEFENSES

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA) (this index)

### DEFINED BENEFIT PLANS

- Employee Benefit Plans (this index)

### DEFINITIONS

- See also What is a Security (this index)

**DEFINITIONS—Cont'd**

Aider-abettor, **8:349**  
 Causation, **5:90**  
 Churning, **14:138**  
 Customer, **15:10**  
 Direct-personal transactions, **1:2**  
 Manipulation, **7:119**  
 Materiality, **8:9**  
 Material nonpublic information,  
     **7:152**  
 Mergers, **6:147**  
 MNPI, **7:152**  
 Opposite side traders, **7:494**  
 Parking, **7:144**  
 Prospectus, **3:41 et seq.**  
 Proxy, **6:208**  
 Same side traders, **7:495**  
 Scalping, **12:3**  
 Scierter, **8:155 et seq.**  
 Security. See What is a Security (this  
     index)  
 Solicitation, **6:209**  
 Tip, **7:624**  
 Trade, **1:2**  
 Whistleblowers, **22:5, 22:23 et seq.**

**DEPOSITORY TRUST**

**CORPORATION (DTC)**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, BMIS  
 account, **20:6**

**DERELICTION OF DUTIES**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5, 20:9**

**DERIVATIVE SUITS**

Class actions compared, **3:212**  
 Jurisdictional means, **11:43**  
 Private securities litigation, cyber  
 breaches, **26:8**  
 Securities Litigation Uniform Stan-  
 dards Act, effect on, **3:212**

**DEXIA v. BEAR STEARNS  
 LITIGATION**

Coordinated investigations following  
 subprime mortgage crisis,  
**13:335**

**DIGITAL REALTY TRUST, INC. v.  
 SOMERS**

Whistleblowers, definition, **22:23 et  
 seq.**

**DILIGENCE, LACK OF**

Generally, **8:229 et seq.**  
 See also Due Diligence (this index)  
 Burden of proof, **8:238**  
 Criminal cases, **8:236**  
 Injunctions, **8:234**  
 Insufficiency, **8:237**  
 Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**  
 Proof, **8:239**  
 Scierter, **8:234**  
 SEC decisions, **8:235**  
 Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**  
 Versions of scierter, relations among,  
**8:230**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

Generally, **6:1 et seq., 12:12**  
 Actual knowledge and scierter, **8:171**  
 Antifraud provisions  
     Materiality standard  
         Generally, **6:165 et seq.**  
         Rule 10b-5, **6:168**  
         Rule 14a-9, **6:166**  
         Rule 14c-6, **6:167**  
     Mergers, **6:151**  
     Scierter standard  
         Generally, **6:169 et seq.**  
         Rule 10b-5, **6:171**  
         Rule 14a-9, **6:169**  
         Rule 14c-6, **6:170**  
 Buyer-seller requirement, **6:182**  
 Contested offers  
     Generally, **6:8 et seq.**  
     Mode of attack, **6:8**  
     Publicity, prefilng, **6:10**  
     Relief available, **6:9**  
 Direct and indirect dealings, **4:1**  
 Disclosure  
     Generally, **6:212 et seq., 6:267**  
     Advance letters  
         Proxy rules, **6:240**  
         Registration under SA, **6:241**  
     Aggregate materiality, **6:253**  
     Annual reports, **6:242**  
     Application of funds, **6:260**  
     Assets  
         Generally, **6:261 et seq.**  
         Existence of, **6:262**

INDEX

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Disclosure—Cont'd
  - Assets—Cont'd
    - Reasons, **6:273**
    - Value of assets, below
  - Balance, **6:229**
  - Buried facts, **6:232**
  - Cash flow, **6:260**
  - Clarity, **6:225**
  - Comparative tables, **6:219**
  - Consistency, **6:228**
  - Conspicuity. Prominence, below
  - Context, **6:235**
  - Corrections
    - Generally, **6:290 et seq., 6:321**
    - See also Supplementary communications, below
    - Another's statements, correction of, **6:319**
    - Blue sky laws, **6:292**
    - Broker-dealer fraud, **6:312**
    - Common law, **6:291**
    - False reports to SEC, **6:313**
    - Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**
    - How long correction is necessary
      - Rule 14a-9, **6:304**
      - Rule 14c-6, **6:308**
      - SA § 11, **6:296**
    - How long is correction necessary
      - Generally, **6:323, 6:325**
      - Direct-personal transactions, **6:324**
      - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:326**
    - How must correction be made
      - Rule 10b-5, **6:328**
      - Rule 14a-9, **6:306**
      - Rule 14c-6, **6:310**
      - SA § 11, **6:298**
    - Market manipulation, **6:300**
    - Proxy fraud, **6:302**
    - Registration fraud, **6:294 et seq.**
    - Rule 10b-5 requirements
      - Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Disclosure—Cont'd
- Corrections—Cont'd
  - Rule 10b-5 requirements—Cont'd
    - How long is correction necessary, **6:323 et seq.**
    - How must correction be made, **6:328**
    - What makes correction necessary, **6:319 et seq.**
    - What must be corrected, **6:327**
    - Who entitled to correction, **6:328**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:303 et seq.**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:307 et seq.**
  - SA § 11, **6:294 et seq.**
  - SA § 12(2), **6:293**
  - SA § 17(a), **6:299**
  - Sales fraud
    - Express liability, **6:293**
    - Implied liability, **6:299**
  - SEA § 9(a), **6:300**
  - SEA § 10, **6:301**
  - SEA § 14, **6:302**
  - SEC, false reports to, **6:313**
  - State law, **6:292**
  - Tender offer fraud, **6:311**
  - What makes correction necessary
    - Generally, **6:319**
    - Direct-personal transactions, **6:320**
    - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:322**
    - Rule 14a-9, **6:303**
    - Rule 14c-6, **6:307**
    - SA § 11, **6:295**
  - What must be corrected
    - Rule 10b-5, **6:327**
    - Rule 14a-9, **6:305**
    - Rule 14c-6, **6:309**
    - SA § 11, **6:297**
  - Who entitled to correction
    - Rule 10b-5, **6:328**
    - Rule 14a-9, **6:306**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING****—Cont'd**

- Disclosure—Cont'd
  - Corrections—Cont'd
    - Who entitled to correction
      - Cont'd
        - Rule 14c-6, **6:310**
        - SA § 11, **6:298**
  - Cross references, **6:233**
  - Detail, **6:234**
  - Distribution, **6:214 et seq.**
  - Earnings
    - Generally, **6:254**
    - Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**
    - Interim, **6:259**
    - Misrepresentations, **6:255**
    - Nondisclosure of, **6:257**
    - Predictions, **6:255**
  - Exchange offers, **6:12**
  - Form and substance, **6:235**
  - Interim earnings, **6:259**
  - Interpretation, **6:236**
  - Level, **6:227**
  - Locus, **6:214 et seq.**
  - Materiality
    - Generally, **6:248 et seq.**
    - Aggregate, **6:253**
    - Might, use of term, **6:249**
    - Practical problems, **6:251**
    - Probably would, use of term, **6:250**
    - Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**
    - Would, use of term, **6:249**
  - Misrepresentations
    - Earnings, **6:255**
    - Value of assets
      - Generally, **6:270**
      - Defenses, **6:271**
      - Precautions, **6:272**
  - Numerical information, **6:237**
  - Opposition communications, **6:247**
  - Organization, **6:226**
  - Overall effect, **6:238**
  - Predictions, earning, **6:255**
  - Presentation, **6:224 et seq.**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING****—Cont'd**

- Disclosure—Cont'd
  - Prominence
    - Generally, **6:230 et seq.**
    - Buried and scattered facts, **6:232**
    - Similar emphasis, **6:231**
  - Public sales, **6:12**
  - Repetition, **6:233**
  - Risk
    - Generally, **6:275 et seq.**
    - CFTC requirements, **6:289**
    - Context, **6:275**
    - Court cases, **6:281**
    - Day trading, **6:284**
    - Extended hour trading, **6:285**
    - Margin trading, **6:286**
    - NASD requirements, **6:283 et seq.**
    - Plain English requirements, **6:278**
    - Safe harbor, **6:282**
    - SA filings, **6:279**
    - SEA filings, **6:280**
    - Short selling, **6:287**
    - Specific requirements, **6:277**
    - Uninsured products, **6:288**
  - Rule 10b-5 requirements, **6:218**
  - SA § 5 requirements, **6:217**
  - Scattered facts, **6:232**
  - SEA § 14(a) requirements, **6:215**
  - SEA § 14(c) requirements, **6:216**
  - Sources of funds, **6:260**
  - Sources of requirements
    - Generally, **6:220 et seq.**
    - Antifraud provisions, **6:222**
    - Specific items, **6:221**
    - Timing, **6:223**
  - Specific information requirements, **6:2**
  - Style, **6:224 et seq.**
  - Supplementary communications
    - Generally, **6:239 et seq.**
    - See also Corrections, above
    - Advance letters
      - Proxy rules, **6:240**
      - Registration under SA, **6:241**
    - Annual reports, **6:242**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Disclosure—Cont'd
  - Supplementary communications
    - Cont'd
    - Cover letters, **6:243**
    - Followup solicitations, **6:244**
    - Generally available information, **6:246**
    - Other communications, **6:245**
    - Transmittal letters, **6:243**
  - Timing requirements, **6:223**
  - Value of assets
    - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
    - Firm offers, **6:265**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
  - Misrepresentation
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
  - Modified view
    - Disposition plans, **6:266**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
    - Other situations, **6:268**
  - Policies, **6:269**
  - Reasons, **6:269**
  - Replacement costs, **6:267**
  - Traditional view, **6:263**
- Distributions
  - Generally, **6:4**
  - Disclosure, **6:12**
  - Exchange offers, below
  - Registered offerings, **6:5**
  - Unregistered offerings, **6:6**
- Exchange offers
  - Generally, **6:4, 6:7**
  - Contested offers
    - Generally, **6:8 et seq.**
    - Mode of attack, **6:8**
    - Publicity, prefiling, **6:10**
    - Relief available, **6:9**
    - Standing to challenge, **6:11**
  - Disclosure, **6:12**
  - Registered offerings, **6:5**
  - Unregistered offerings, **6:6**
- Fraud on the market
  - Generally, **8:520 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Issuer tender offers
  - Generally, **6:141**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:144**
  - Price, **6:142**
  - Redemptions, **6:145**
  - Standing to challenge, **6:143**
- Market-informing responsibilities, **12:7**
- Mediation, **15:69**
- Mergers
  - Generally, **6:146 et seq.**
- Antifraud provisions
  - Generally, **6:158 et seq.**
  - Buyer-seller requirement, **6:182**
- Causation
  - Generally, **6:179 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:181**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:179**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:180**
- Comparative language, **6:164**
- Connection requirement
  - Generally, **6:183 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:185**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:183**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:184**
- Federal laws generally, **6:151**
- Jurisdictional means
  - Generally, **6:188 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:190**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:188, 6:189**
- Materiality standard
  - Generally, **6:165 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:168**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:166**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:167**
- Operation, areas of, **6:163**
- Private actions, **6:160 et seq.**
- Privity
  - Generally, **6:172 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:175**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:173**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:174**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **6:176 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:178**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:176**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Mergers—Cont'd
- Antifraud provisions—Cont'd
  - Reliance—Cont'd
    - Rule 14c-6, **6:177**
  - Rule 10b-5, relation of proxy rules to, **6:159 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5 private actions, **6:162**
  - Rule 14a-9 private actions, **6:160**
  - Rule 14c-6 private actions, **6:161**
- Scienter standard
  - Generally, **6:169 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:171**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:169**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:170**
- SEA § 14(e), **6:186**
- Securities Act, **6:187**
- State law
  - Generally, **6:191 et seq.**
  - Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**
  - Delaware law, **6:196**
  - Effect of merger or dissolution, **6:194**
  - Equitable approach, **6:197**
  - Standing approach, **6:196**
- Violations covered, **6:164**
- Background, **6:148 et seq.**
- Congressional intent
  - Generally, **6:154 et seq.**
  - Information statement rules, **6:156**
  - Proxy rules, **6:155**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:157**
  - SEA § 14(a), **6:155**
  - SEA § 14(c), **6:156**
- Definition, **6:147**
- Disclosures
  - Generally, **6:212 et seq.**
  - Advance letters
    - Proxy rules, **6:240**
    - Registration under SA, **6:241**
  - Aggregate materiality, **6:253**
  - Annual reports, **6:242**
  - Application of funds, **6:260**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Mergers—Cont'd
- Disclosures—Cont'd
- Assets
  - Generally, **6:261 et seq.**
  - Existence of, **6:262**
  - Reasons, **6:273**
- Balance, **6:229**
- Buried facts, **6:232**
- Cash flow, **6:260**
- Clarity, **6:225**
- Comparative tables, **6:219**
- Congressional intent, **6:156**
- Consistency, **6:228**
- Conspicuity. Prominence, below
- Context, **6:235**
- Cross references, **6:233**
- Detail, **6:234**
- Distribution, **6:214 et seq.**
- Earnings
  - Generally, **6:254**
  - Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**
  - Interim, **6:259**
  - Misrepresentations, **6:255**
  - Nondisclosure of, **6:257**
  - Predictions, **6:255**
- Form and substance, **6:235**
- Interim earnings, **6:259**
- Interpretation, **6:236**
- Level, **6:227**
- Locus, **6:214 et seq.**
- Materiality
  - Generally, **6:248 et seq.**
  - Aggregate, **6:253**
  - Might, use of term, **6:249**
  - Practical problems, **6:251**
  - Probably would, use of term, **6:250**
  - Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**
  - Would, use of term, **6:249**
- Misrepresentations
  - Earnings, **6:255**
  - Value of assets
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**

INDEX

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Mergers—Cont'd
- Disclosures—Cont'd
  - Misrepresentations—Cont'd
    - Value of assets—Cont'd
      - Precautions, **6:272**
    - Numerical information, **6:237**
    - Opposition communications, **6:247**
    - Organization, **6:226**
    - Overall effect, **6:238**
    - Predictions, earning, **6:255**
    - Presentation, **6:224 et seq.**
    - Prominence
      - Generally, **6:230 et seq.**
      - Buried and scattered facts, **6:232**
      - Similar emphasis, **6:231**
    - Repetition, **6:233**
    - Rule 10b-5 requirements, **6:218**
    - SA § 5 requirements, **6:217**
    - Scattered facts, **6:232**
    - SEA § 14(a) requirements, **6:215**
    - SEA § 14(c) requirements, **6:216**
    - Sources of funds, **6:260**
    - Sources of requirements
      - Generally, **6:220 et seq.**
      - Antifraud provisions, **6:222**
      - Specific items, **6:221**
      - Timing, **6:223**
    - Style, **6:224 et seq.**
    - Supplementary communications
      - Generally, **6:239 et seq.**
      - Advance letters
        - Proxy rules, **6:240**
        - Registration under SA, **6:241**
      - Annual reports, **6:242**
      - Cover letters, **6:243**
      - Followup solicitations, **6:244**
      - Generally available information, **6:246**
      - Other communications, **6:245**
      - Transmittal letters, **6:243**
      - Timing requirements, **6:223**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Mergers—Cont'd
- Disclosures—Cont'd
  - Value of assets
    - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
    - Firm offers, **6:265**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
  - Misrepresentations
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
  - Modified view
    - Disposition plans, **6:266**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
    - Other situations, **6:268**
  - Policies, **6:269**
  - Reasons, **6:269**
  - Replacement costs, **6:267**
  - Traditional view, **6:263**
- Federal laws
  - Generally, **6:149**
  - Antifraud provisions, **6:151**
  - Proxy rules, **6:150**
  - SA registration requirements, **6:152**
- Private actions
  - Generally, **6:160 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:162**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:160**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:161**
- Proxy solicitations
  - Generally, **6:198 et seq.**
  - Scope of regulations
    - Generally, **6:207 et seq.**
    - Annual reports, **6:211**
    - Excluded solicitations, **6:210**
    - Proxy defined, **6:208**
    - Solicitation defined, **6:209**
- Securities covered
  - Generally, **6:199 et seq.**
  - Insurance companies
    - Generally, **6:201**
    - Antifraud provisions, federal, **6:204**
  - Federal and state rules, **6:202**
  - McCarran Act, **6:203**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING****—Cont'd**

- Mergers—Cont'd
  - Proxy solicitations—Cont'd
    - Securities covered—Cont'd
      - Investment companies, **6:205**
      - Public utility holding companies, **6:206**
  - SA registration requirements, **6:152**
  - Scope of regulations
    - Generally, **6:207 et seq.**
    - Annual reports, **6:211**
    - Excluded solicitations, **6:210**
    - Proxy defined, **6:208**
    - Solicitation defined, **6:209**
  - State law
    - Generally, **6:153**
    - Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**
- Organization of treatise, **4:1**
- Personal and impersonal dealings, **4:1**
- Proxy solicitations
  - Generally, **6:198 et seq.**
  - See also Proxy Fraud (this index)
  - Mergers, **6:198 et seq.**
  - Nonmerger solicitations, **6:274**
  - Scope of regulations
    - Generally, **6:207 et seq.**
    - Annual reports, **6:211**
    - Excluded solicitations, **6:210**
    - Proxy defined, **6:208**
    - Solicitation defined, **6:209**
  - Securities covered
    - Generally, **6:199 et seq.**
    - Insurance companies
      - Generally, **6:201**
      - Antifraud provisions, federal, **6:204**
      - Federal and state rules, **6:202**
      - McCarran Act, **6:203**
    - Investment companies, **6:205**
    - Public utility holding companies, **6:206**
- Publicity, pre-filing, **6:10**
- Public sales
  - Generally, **6:4**
  - Disclosure, **6:12**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING****—Cont'd**

- Public sales—Cont'd
  - Exchange offers, above, **6:7**
  - Registered offerings, **6:5**
  - Unregistered offerings, **6:6**
- Registered offerings, **6:5**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:484 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
- Risk disclosures. Disclosures, above
- Rule 10b-5
  - Application to, **3:28**
  - Responsibilities generally, **12:7**
- Scienter and actual knowledge, **8:171**
- Standing to challenge transaction, tender offers
  - Generally, **6:124**
- Implied rights, **6:124**
- Issuer offers, **6:143**
- Nontendering offerees, **6:126**
- Offerees, **6:125**
- Offerors, **6:129**
- Target companies, **6:128**
- Tenderees
  - Nontendering, **6:126**
  - Undecided, **6:127**
- Tendering offerees, **6:125**
- Third parties, **6:130**
- State law appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**
- Tender offers
  - Banks, regulation of, **6:29**
- Challenging
  - Relief available
    - Generally, **6:131 et seq.**
    - Balance of equities, **6:134**
    - Clean hands, **6:136**
    - Final relief, **6:140**
    - Inadequacy of other remedies, **6:133**
    - Irreparable injuries, **6:133**
    - Preliminary, **6:131 et seq.**
    - Probability of success, **6:132**
    - Proof elements, **6:132**
    - SEC actions, **6:138**
    - Time for relief, **6:139**
    - Types of relief, **6:135**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Tender offers—Cont'd
  - Challenging—Cont'd
    - Standing to challenge, below
  - Congressional intent
    - Generally, **6:16 et seq.**
    - Disclosure, **6:17**
    - Fairness, **6:19**
    - Investor protection, **6:17**
    - Target management protection,  
**6:18**
  - Definitions, **6:31**
  - Disclosure requirements
    - Regulated offers
      - Generally, **6:41**
      - Arrangements, **6:47**
      - Changes, effects of
        - Generally, **6:49**
        - SEC filings, **6:52**
        - Ten percent threshold disclosure require-  
ments, **6:57**
      - Control change information,  
**6:61**
      - Control purposes, **6:64**
      - Date of information
        - Generally, **6:49**
        - SEC filings, **6:52**
        - Ten percent threshold disclosure require-  
ments, **6:57**
      - Deviation from stated plans,  
**6:70**
      - Fund source data, **6:44**
      - Groups, data on, **6:48**
      - Ideas vs plans, **6:68**
      - Issuer offers, **6:144**
      - Noncompliance, effects of,  
**6:74**
      - Offer data, **6:43**
      - Offeror data, **6:42**
      - Ownership, **6:55**
      - Plans and proposals, **6:45,**  
**6:66 et seq.**
      - Publicity
        - Offeror, **6:94**
        - Target company, **6:98**

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Tender offers—Cont'd
  - Disclosure requirements—Cont'd
  - Regulated offers—Cont'd
    - Publicity—Cont'd
      - Third persons, **6:108**
    - Purposes, **6:45, 6:62 et seq.**
    - Sanctions for noncompliance,  
**6:74**
    - SEC filings
      - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**
      - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
      - Date of information, **6:52**
      - Other disseminations, **6:54**
      - Processing, **6:53**
      - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
      - Time of filing, **6:50**
    - Securities, data on, **6:46**
    - Ten percent threshold
      - Generally, **6:55 et seq.**
      - Changes, effect of, **6:57**
      - Date of information, **6:57**
      - Exemptions, **6:60**
      - Other disseminations, **6:59**
      - Ownership, **6:55**
      - Scope of disclosure, **6:56**
      - SEC processing, **6:58**
    - Understandings, **6:47**
  - Unregulated offers
    - Generally, **6:113**
    - Insiders, **6:114**
    - Outsiders
      - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
      - Issuer, information about,  
**6:117**
      - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
      - Other information, **6:118**
      - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
      - Policy factors, **6:120**
      - Target company, **6:121**
      - Third persons, **6:122**
  - Disclosures, corrections, **6:311**
  - Duration of offer, **6:89**
  - Exchange offers, **6:36**
  - Five percent offers
    - Generally, **6:32**
    - Base for percentages, **6:34**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING****—Cont'd**

- Tender offers—Cont'd
  - Foreign laws, **6:15**
  - Insiders, offers by
    - Generally, **6:111**
    - Disclosure requirements, **6:114**
  - Issuer offers
    - Generally, **6:141**
    - Disclosure requirements, **6:144**
    - Price, **6:142**
    - Redemptions, **6:145**
    - Standing to challenge, **6:143**
  - Medium of payment, **6:36**
  - Outsiders, offers by
    - Generally, **6:112**
    - Disclosures
      - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
      - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
      - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
      - Other information, **6:118**
      - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
      - Policy factors, **6:120**
  - Price
    - Increases, effect of, **6:90 et seq.**
    - Issuer offers, **6:142**
    - Third-party offers, **6:123**
  - Regulated offers
    - Generally, **6:13 et seq., 6:33**
    - Antifraud provisions, applicability to
      - Generally, **6:22 et seq.**
      - Connection, **6:26**
      - Jurisdictional means, **6:27**
      - Opposition, applicability to, **6:23**
      - Proxy rules, **6:24**
      - SEA § 14(e), **6:24**
    - Banks, coverage of, **6:29**
    - Congressional intent
      - Generally, **6:16 et seq.**
      - Disclosure, **6:17**
      - Fairness, **6:19**
      - Investor protection, **6:17**
      - Target management protection, **6:18**
    - Coverage, **6:28 et seq.**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING****—Cont'd**

- Tender offers—Cont'd
  - Regulated offers—Cont'd
    - Definitional exclusions, **6:40**
    - Definitions, **6:31**
    - Disclosure requirements
      - Generally, **6:41**
      - Arrangements, **6:47**
      - Changes, effects of
        - Generally, **6:49**
        - SEC filings, **6:52**
        - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
    - Control change information, **6:61**
    - Control purposes, **6:64**
    - Date of information
      - Generally, **6:49**
      - SEC filings, **6:52**
      - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
    - Deviation from stated plans, **6:70**
    - Funds, source of, **6:44**
    - Fund source data, **6:44**
    - Groups, data on, **6:48**
    - Ideas vs plans, **6:68**
    - Issuer offers, **6:144**
    - Noncompliance, effects of, **6:74**
    - Offer data, **6:43**
    - Offeror data, **6:42**
    - Ownership, **6:55**
    - Plans, **6:45**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:66 et seq.**
    - Publicity
      - Offeror, **6:94**
      - Target company, **6:98**
      - Third persons, **6:108**
    - Purposes, **6:45, 6:62 et seq.**
    - Sanctions for noncompliance, **6:74**
    - SEC filings
      - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**

INDEX

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Tender offers—Cont'd
  - Regulated offers—Cont'd
    - Disclosure requirements—Cont'd
      - SEC filings—Cont'd
        - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
        - Date of information, **6:52**
        - Other disseminations, **6:54**
        - Processing, **6:53**
        - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
        - Time of filing, **6:50**
  - Securities, data on, **6:46**
  - Ten percent threshold
    - Generally, **6:55 et seq.**
    - Changes, effect of, **6:57**
    - Date of information, **6:57**
    - Exemptions, **6:60**
    - Other disseminations, **6:59**
    - Ownership, **6:55**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:56**
    - SEC processing, **6:58**
  - Understandings, **6:47**
  - Duration of offer, **6:89**
  - Exchange offers, **6:36**
  - Excluded offers, **6:38 et seq.**
  - Express exclusions, **6:39**
  - Five percent offers
    - Generally, **6:32**
    - Base for percentages, **6:34**
  - Foreign laws, **6:15**
  - Insurance companies, **6:30**
  - Market activities
    - Offeror
      - Before offer, **6:97**
      - During offer, **6:96**
    - Target company
      - Generally, **6:106 et seq.**
      - Filing, **6:107**
      - Information to be disclosed, **6:107**
      - Scope of regulation, **6:106**
    - Third persons, **6:109**
  - Medium of payment, **6:36**
  - Opposition, applicability of antifraud provisions to, **6:23**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Tender offers—Cont'd
  - Regulated offers—Cont'd
    - Price increases, effect of
      - Generally, **6:90 et seq.**
      - Exemptions, **6:93**
      - Procedure, **6:92**
      - Purpose of requirement, **6:91**
    - Proxy rule antifraud provisions, applicability to, **6:24**
  - Publicity
    - Offeror
      - Before offer, **6:95**
      - During offer, **6:94**
    - Target company
      - Generally, **6:98**
      - Attack, modes of, **6:105**
      - Change, effect of, **6:101**
      - Date of information, **6:101**
      - Exemptions, **6:103**
      - Other disseminations, **6:102**
      - Scope of antifraud provisions, **6:104**
      - Scope of disclosure, **6:100**
      - Time of filing, **6:99**
    - Third persons, **6:108**
  - Recommendations
    - Offeror
      - Before offer, **6:95**
      - During offer, **6:94**
    - Target company
      - Generally, **6:98**
      - Attack, modes of, **6:105**
      - Change, effect of, **6:101**
      - Date of information, **6:101**
      - Exemptions, **6:103**
      - Other disseminations, **6:102**
      - Scope of antifraud provisions, **6:104**
      - Scope of disclosure, **6:100**
      - Time of filing, **6:99**
    - Third persons, **6:108**
  - Scope
    - Generally, **6:28, 6:31 et seq.**
    - Definitions, **6:31**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Tender offers—Cont'd
- Regulated offers—Cont'd
- Scope—Cont'd
  - Exchange offers, **6:36**
  - Five percent offers
    - Generally, **6:32**
    - Base for percentages, **6:34**
  - Jurisdictional means, **6:35**
  - Medium of payment, **6:36**
  - Special bids, **6:37**
  - Two percent offers
    - Generally, **6:32**
    - Base for percentages, **6:34**
- SEA § 14(e) antifraud provisions, **6:24**
- Special bids, **6:37**
- State laws, **6:14**
- Ten day pro rata takeover
  - Generally, **6:85, 6:85 et seq.**
  - Exemptions, **6:88**
  - Procedures, **6:87**
  - Purpose, **6:86**
- Terms
  - Generally, **6:75 et seq.**
  - Applicability, **6:78**
  - Duration of offer, **6:89**
  - Freedom of offerer, degrees of, **6:75**
  - Relation to other provisions, **6:77**
  - Scope of requirements, **6:76**
  - Time factors, importance of, **6:79**
  - Voluntary withdrawal rights, **6:84**
  - Withdrawal rights
    - Generally, **6:80 et seq.**
    - Exemptions, **6:83**
    - Procedure, **6:82**
    - Purpose, **6:81**
    - Requirement, **6:80**
    - Voluntary, **6:84**
  - Two percent offers
    - Generally, **6:32**
    - Base for percentages, **6:34**

**DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Tender offers—Cont'd
- Regulated offers—Cont'd
- Voluntary withdrawal rights, **6:84**
- Williams Bill, **6:13**
- Withdrawal rights
  - Generally, **6:80 et seq.**
  - Exemptions, **6:83**
  - Procedure, **6:82**
  - Purpose, **6:81**
  - Voluntary, **6:84**
- Special bids, **6:37**
- Standing to challenge
  - Generally, **6:124**
  - Implied rights, **6:124**
- Issuer offers, **6:143**
- Nontendering offerees, **6:126**
- Offerees, tendering, **6:125**
- Offerors, **6:129**
- Target companies, **6:128**
- Tenderees
  - Nontendering, **6:126**
  - Undecided, **6:127**
- Tendering offerees, **6:125**
- Third parties, **6:130**
- State laws, **6:14**
- Target company disclosures, **6:121**
- Third party offers, **6:13 et seq.**
- Third persons disclosures, **6:122**
- Two percent offers
  - Generally, **6:32**
  - Base for percentages, **6:34**
- Unregulated offers
  - Generally, **6:110**
  - Disclosure requirements
    - Generally, **6:113**
  - Insiders, **6:114**
  - Outsiders
    - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
    - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
    - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
    - Other information, **6:118**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
    - Policy factors, **6:120**
    - Target company, **6:121**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Tender offers—Cont'd
  - Unregulated offers—Cont'd
    - Disclosure requirements—Cont'd
      - Third persons, **6:122**
  - Insiders
    - Generally, **6:111**
    - Disclosure requirements, **6:114**
  - Outsiders
    - Generally, **6:112**
  - Disclosures
    - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
    - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
    - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
    - Other information, **6:118**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
    - Policy factors, **6:120**
  - Target company, disclosures, **6:121**
  - Third persons, disclosures, **6:122**
  - Williams Bill, **6:13**
  - Transaction Planning (this index)
  - Types of direct-impersonal dealings, **6:1**
  - What is a Security (this index)

### DIRECTORS, CORPORATE

- Generally, **8:413**
- Actions in concert, **8:294**
- Audit committees
  - Generally, **8:449 et seq.**
  - Auditor, oversight of, **8:453**
  - Backdating of stock options, resignations, **18:7**
  - Background, **8:449**
  - Definitions, **8:449**
  - Financial experts, **8:459**
  - Legislative standards, **8:450**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act standards
    - Generally, **8:450 et seq.**
    - Administrative implementation, **8:451**
  - Advisers, **8:455**
  - Auditor, oversight of, **8:453**

### DIRECTORS, CORPORATE

#### —Cont'd

- Audit committees—Cont'd
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act standards—Cont'd
    - Complaint procedures, **8:454**
    - Enforcement, **8:458**
    - Exemptions, **8:457**
    - Financial experts, **8:459**
    - Funding, **8:456**
    - Independence requirements, **8:452**
- Auditor, oversight of, **8:453**
- Backdating of stock options, resignations, **18:3, 18:7**
- Bar orders against individuals, **13:87**
- Blackout period trading prohibitions, **8:472, 8:475**
- Collateral bar orders against individuals, **13:87, 13:88**
- Conflict of interest, **8:417**
- Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**
- Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**
- Corporate governance, **8:414**
- Correction of violations, responsibility for, **8:418**
- Ethics codes, **8:483**
- Financial experts, **8:459**
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Injunctions against, **13:117**
- Insider trading liability, **7:649**
- Inside trading reports, **8:471**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Internal controls, **8:466**
- Loan prohibitions, **8:481**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, director of operations, **20:8**
- Market, responsibilities to inform
  - Business changes, **8:422**
  - Grace case, **8:423**
  - National Telephone case, **8:422**
  - Second-guessing disclosure counsel, **8:423**
- Mutual fund violations, **17:20**
- Parties and privity
  - Generally, **8:413 et seq.**
  - See also Parties (this index)

**DIRECTORS, CORPORATE**

—Cont'd

- Prevention of violations, responsibility for, **8:418**
- Responsibilities, **8:413**
- Rule 10b-5 liabilities
  - Generally, **8:413 et seq.**
  - Actions in concert, **8:294**
  - Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**
  - Backdating of stock options, violations of federal securities laws, **18:3, 18:10**
  - Concerted action, **8:294**
  - Conflict of interest, **8:417**
  - Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**
  - Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**
  - Cooper case, **8:419**
  - Corporate governance, **8:414**
  - Correction of violations, responsibility for, **8:418**
  - Court cases, **8:415 et seq.**
  - Gould case, **8:417**
  - Gutfreund case, **8:420**
  - Inducement, **8:295**
  - Informed, responsibility to be, **8:415 et seq.**
  - Injunction suits, **8:303**
  - Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**
  - Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**
  - Market, responsibilities to inform
    - Business changes, **8:422**
    - Grace case, **8:423**
    - National Telephone case, **8:422**
    - Second-guessing disclosure counsel, **8:423**
  - Participants generally, **8:292**
  - Participants in violations generally, **8:294**
  - Pleading
    - Generally, **8:319 et seq.**
    - Affirmative conduct, **8:321**
    - Aiding-abetting, **8:324**
    - Choice of parties, **8:320**
    - Conspiracy, **8:325**
    - No affirmative conduct, **8:322**
    - Participation, **8:323**

**DIRECTORS, CORPORATE**

—Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5 liabilities—Cont'd
- Pleading—Cont'd
  - Special elements, **8:326**
- Prevention of violations, responsibility for, **8:418**
- Stirling Homex case, **8:416**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act liabilities
  - Auditor, oversight of, **8:453**
  - Blackout periods, **8:472, 8:475**
  - Certification, **8:462**
  - Ethics codes, **8:483**
  - Financial experts, **8:459**
  - Inside trading reports, **8:471**
  - Loan prohibitions, **8:481**
  - Regulation
    - Generally, **8:461 et seq.**
    - Acquisition method, **8:474**
    - Bar from office, **8:482**
    - Blackout periods, **8:475**
    - Blackout trading prohibitions, **8:472**
    - Certification, **8:462**
    - Disclosure controls, **8:466**
    - Enforcement, **8:476**
    - Ethics codes, **8:483**
    - Evaluations, **8:468**
    - Exemptions, **8:479**
    - Fair presentation, **8:465**
    - Forfeiture on accounting restatement, **8:480**
    - Inside trading reports, **8:471**
    - Internal controls, **8:466**
    - Liability, **8:476**
    - Loan prohibitions, **8:481**
    - Non-financial information, **8:467**
    - Notice, **8:478**
    - Profit measure, **8:477**
    - Regulation BTR, **8:473**
    - Response to evidence of violations, **8:470**
    - SEC implementation, **8:464, 8:473**
    - Section 302 legislation, **8:463**
    - Section 906, **8:469**
- Regulation BTR, **8:473**

INDEX

**DIRECTORS, CORPORATE**

—Cont'd

Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:9**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

Generally, **5:1 et seq., 5:53 et seq., 5:141 et seq.**

Abuse of trading process, **5:76**

Actual knowledge and scienter, **8:170**

Arms length transactions

Generally, **5:144**

Reasons and policies, **5:149**

Birmbaun canon, **5:70 et seq.**

Broker-dealers, actions against

Generally, **14:2 et seq.**

See also Broker-Dealer Liability (this index)

Attorneys' fees, **14:53**

Broker's knowledge, **14:41**

Burden of proof, **14:42**

Causation, **14:91 et seq.**

Churning (this index)

Class actions

SA § 11, **14:18**

SA § 12, **14:57**

Costs, **14:53**

Damages

Express actions, **14:46, 14:51**

Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**

Debt securities markups, **14:163**

Due diligence defense

Generally, **14:5**

SEC view, **14:9**

Express actions

Generally, **14:2 et seq.**

Attorneys' fees, **14:53**

Broker as defendant

SA § 12(a)(1), **14:20**

SA § 12(a)(2), **14:28**

Broker's knowledge, **14:41**

Burden of proof, **14:42**

Class actions

SA § 11, **14:18**

SA § 12, **14:57**

Costs, **14:53**

Damages, **14:46, 14:51**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

Broker-dealers, actions against

—Cont'd

Express actions—Cont'd

Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**

Interest, **14:48**

Limitation of actions, **14:17**

SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**

SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**

Misrepresentations, **14:39**

Offerors, brokers as

SA § 12(a)(1), **14:22**

SA § 12(a)(2), **14:29 et seq.**

Omissions, **14:39**

In pari delicto defense, **14:21**

Privity, **14:34**

Proximate cause, **14:35**

Punitive damages, **14:54**

Purchaser, plaintiff as

SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**

SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**

Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**

Reasonable investigation defense

Generally, **14:5**

Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**

SEC Rule 176, **14:8**

Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**

Rescission, **14:46, 14:50**

SA § 11

Generally, **14:2 et seq., 14:3 et seq.**

Court cases, **14:6**

Damages, **14:15**

Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**

Later filings, effect of, **14:10**

Non-managing underwriters, **14:13**

Participating underwriters, **14:13**

Policy considerations, **14:12**

Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:11**

SEC Rule 176, **14:7**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
  - Express actions—Cont'd
    - SA § 11—Cont'd
      - SEC Rule 412, **14:7**
      - SEC view of due diligence techniques, **14:9**
    - SA § 12(a)(1)
      - Generally, **14:19 et seq.**
      - Broker as defendant, **14:20**
      - Class actions, **14:57**
      - Exemptions from SA § 5, **14:24**
      - Limitation of actions, **14:25**
      - Offerors, brokers as, **14:22**
      - In pari delicto defense, **14:21**
      - Purchaser, plaintiff as, **14:23**
      - Sellers, brokers as, **14:22**
      - Violations of SA § 5, **14:26**
    - SA § 12(a)(2)
      - Generally, **14:27 et seq.**
      - Attorneys' fees, **14:53**
      - Broker as defendant, **14:28**
      - Broker's knowledge, **14:41**
      - Burden of proof, **14:42**
      - Class actions, **14:57**
      - Costs, **14:53**
      - Damages, **14:46, 14:51**
      - Interest, **14:48**
      - Limitation of actions, **14:56**
      - Misrepresentations, **14:39**
      - Offerors, brokers as, **14:29 et seq.**
      - Omissions, **14:39**
      - Pinter case, **14:30, 14:38**
      - Privity, **14:34**
      - Proximate cause, **14:35**
      - Punitive damages, **14:54**
      - Purchaser, plaintiff as, **14:44**
      - Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**
      - Reasonable care, **14:43**
      - Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:43**
      - Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**
      - Rescission, **14:46, 14:50**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
  - Express actions—Cont'd
    - SA § 12(a)(2)—Cont'd
      - SEA § 10(b) and, overlap between, **14:55**
      - Sellers, brokers as, **14:29 et seq.**
      - Substantial factor in sale, broker as, **14:35**
      - Tax considerations, **14:48**
      - Tender, **14:49**
      - Transactional coverage, **14:58**
    - Sellers, brokers as
      - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:22**
      - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:29 et seq.**
    - Substantial factor in sale, broker as, **14:35**
    - Tax considerations, **14:48**
    - Violations of SA § 5, **14:26**
  - Express actions, SA § 11
    - Due diligence defense
      - Generally, **14:5**
      - SEC view, **14:9**
    - Reasonable investigation defense
      - Generally, **14:5**
      - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
      - SEC Rule 176, **14:8**
  - Underwriters
    - Generally, **14:4**
    - Due diligence, **14:14**
  - Implied actions
    - Margin rules
      - Generally, **14:59**
      - Arbitration, use in, **14:61**
      - Court cases, **14:60**
      - SEA § 7, **14:59**
    - Rule 10b-5
      - Generally, **14:73 et seq.**
      - Connection requirement, **14:94**
      - Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**
      - Damages, **14:95 et seq.**

INDEX

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
  - Implied actions—Cont'd
  - Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
    - Elements of action, **14:74**
    - Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**
    - Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**
    - Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
    - Market misrepresentations, **14:78**
    - Market nondisclosures, **14:79**
    - Materiality, **14:82**
    - Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**
    - Mitigation of damages, **14:102**
    - Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**
    - Opinions, **14:81**
    - Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
    - Predictions, **14:81**
    - Proximate cause, **14:92**
    - Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**
    - Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
    - Recommendations, **14:81**
    - Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
    - Restitution, **14:104**
    - Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
  - SRO rules
    - Generally, **14:62 et seq.**
    - Arbitration, **14:72**
    - Buttrey doctrine, **14:65**
    - Colonial Realty doctrine, **14:64**
    - Contraction era, **14:71**
    - Court cases, **14:64 et seq.**
    - Expansion era, **14:63 et seq.**
  - Implied actions, Rule 10b-5, rescission
    - Chasins measure, **14:97**
    - Lost profits, **14:101**
    - Nye measure, **14:101**
    - Rolf measure, **14:100**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
  - Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**
  - Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
  - Limitation of actions, express actions
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**
  - Lost profits, rescission and, **14:101**
  - Markup and markdown practices
    - Generally, **14:148 et seq.**
    - Basis
      - Generally, **14:150 et seq.**
      - Customers, comparative frequency of purchases from, **14:158**
      - Dominating market makers, **14:154**
      - Inter-dealer prices, availability of, **14:155**
      - Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**
      - Market-makers, retail, **14:153**
      - Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
      - NASD criteria, **14:157 et seq.**
      - Non dominating market makers, **14:160**
      - Retailer market makers, **14:153**
      - SEC criteria, **14:150 et seq.**
    - Debt securities markups, **14:163**
    - Disclosure, **14:149**
    - Five percent policy, **14:162**
    - Inter-dealer prices, availability of, **14:155**
    - Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**
    - Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
  - Markup and markdown practices, basis
    - Contemporaneous defined
      - NASD criteria, **14:161**
      - SEC criteria, **14:156**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING****—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
  - Markup and markdown practices, basis—Cont'd
    - Non market makers
      - NASD criteria, **14:159**
      - SEC criteria, **14:152**
  - Materiality, **14:82**
  - Misrepresentations, **14:39**
  - Offerors, brokers as, **14:22, 14:29 et seq.**
  - Omissions, **14:39**
  - Opinions, **14:81**
  - Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
  - In pari delicto defense, express actions, **14:21**
  - Penny Stock Sales (this index)
  - Predictions, **14:81**
  - Privity, **14:34**
  - Proximate cause
    - Generally, **14:92**
    - Express actions, **14:35**
  - Punitive damages
    - Generally, **14:106 et seq.**
    - Express actions, **14:54**
  - Purchaser, plaintiff as
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**
  - Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**
  - Reasonable investigation defense
    - Generally, **14:5**
    - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
    - SEC Rule 176, **14:8**
  - Reasonable investigation requirement
    - SA § 11, **14:11**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:43**
  - Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
  - Recommendations, **14:81**
  - Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**
  - Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
  - Rescission
    - Chasins measure, **14:97**
    - Express actions, **14:46, 14:50**
    - Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING****—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
  - Rescission—Cont'd
    - Lost profits, **14:101**
    - Nye measure, **14:101**
    - Rolf measure, **14:100**
  - Restitution, **14:104**
  - Rule 10b-5
    - Generally, **14:73 et seq.**
    - Causation, **14:91 et seq.**
    - Connection requirement, **14:94**
    - Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**
    - Damages, **14:95 et seq.**
    - Elements of action, **14:74**
    - Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**
    - Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**
    - Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
    - Market misrepresentations, **14:78**
    - Market nondisclosures, **14:79**
    - Materiality, **14:82**
    - Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**
    - Mitigation of damages, **14:102**
    - Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**
    - Opinions, **14:81**
    - Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
    - Predictions, **14:81**
    - Proximate cause, **14:92**
    - Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**
    - Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
    - Recommendations, **14:81**
    - Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
    - Rescission
      - Chasins measure, **14:97**
      - Lost profits, **14:101**
      - Nye measure, **14:101**
      - Rolf measure, **14:100**
    - Restitution, **14:104**
    - Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
  - SA § 11
    - Damages, **14:15**
    - Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:11**
  - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:43**

INDEX

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
  - Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**
  - Sellers, brokers as, **14:22, 14:29 et seq.**
  - Substantial factor in sale, broker as, **14:35**
- Suitability (this index)
- Supervision liabilities
  - Generally, **14:164 et seq.**
  - Amex requirements, **14:174**
  - Branch office managers, **14:178**
  - Chief executive officers, **14:180**
  - Compliance officers, **14:181**
  - Court cases, **14:176**
  - Deficiencies, **14:175**
  - General counsel, **14:182**
  - Heads of functional areas, **14:179**
  - Individual responsibilities, **14:177 et seq.**
  - Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**
  - NASD requirements, **14:172**
  - NYSE requirements, **14:173**
  - Rule 14e-3(b), **14:169**
  - Safe harbor programs, **14:175**
  - Sanctions, **14:175**
  - SEA § 15(b)(4)(D), **14:166**
  - SEA § 15(b)(4)(E), **14:165**
  - SEA § 15(b)(6), **14:165**
  - SEA § 19, **14:170**
  - SEA § 20(a), **14:167**
  - SRO requirements, **14:171 et seq.**
- Burden of proof
  - Broker-dealers, actions against, **14:42**
  - Causation requirements, **5:98**
  - Unfair terms, **5:153**
- Buyer-seller requirements
  - Generally, **5:110 et seq.**
  - Broad interpretation, **5:117**
  - Company as buyer-seller, **5:124**
  - Control, sales of, **5:113**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Buyer-seller requirements—Cont'd
  - Definition, **5:111**
  - Forced sales, **5:120**
  - Injunction suits, **5:122**
  - Interpretation of requirement, **5:117**
  - Issuances, **5:121**
  - Liquidations, **5:119**
  - Loss causation as substitute, **5:123**
  - Mergers, **5:118**
  - Modified view, **5:117**
  - Pleading, **5:126**
  - Strict view, **5:112 et seq.**
- Causation requirements
  - Generally, **5:89 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **5:98**
  - Loss causation, **5:91, 5:123**
  - Meaning, **5:90**
  - Minority vote requirements, **5:93 et seq.**
  - Modified view, **5:95**
- Pleading
  - Materiality, **5:107**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
- Policies, **5:97**
- Proof
  - Materiality, **5:107**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
- Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
- Reasons, **5:97**
- Strict view, **5:93, 5:94**
- Transaction causation, **5:92**
- Voting
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Strict causation, **5:100 et seq.**
- Churning (this index)

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Common law theories and sources, **5:54**
- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Generally, **5:53 et seq., 5:141 et seq.**
  - Alternative forums, efficiency of, **5:65**
  - Arms length transactions
    - Generally, **5:144**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:149**
  - Birmbaun Canon, **5:70 et seq., 5:71**
  - Burden of proof
    - Causation requirements, **5:98**
    - Unfair terms, **5:153**
  - Buyer-seller requirements
    - Generally, **5:110 et seq.**
    - Broad interpretation, **5:117**
    - Company as buyer-seller, **5:124**
    - Control, sales of, **5:113**
    - Definition, **5:111**
    - Forced sales, **5:120**
    - Injunction suits, **5:122**
    - Interpretation of requirement, **5:117**
    - Issuances, **5:121**
    - Liquidations, **5:119**
    - Loss causation as substitute, **5:123**
    - Mergers, **5:118**
    - Modified view, **5:117**
    - Strict view, **5:112 et seq.**
  - Causation requirements
    - Generally, **5:89 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **5:98**
    - Loss causation, **5:91, 5:123**
    - Meaning, **5:90**
    - Minority vote requirements, **5:93 et seq.**
    - Modified view, **5:95**
  - Pleading
    - Materiality, **5:107**
    - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
    - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
- Causation requirements—Cont'd
- Pleading—Cont'd
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
- Policies, **5:97**
- Proof
  - Materiality, **5:107**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
- Reasons, **5:97**
- Strict view, **5:93, 5:94**
- Transaction causation, **5:92**
- Voting
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Strict causation, **5:100 et seq.**
- Common law theories and sources, **5:54**
- Connection requirement
  - Generally, **5:127 et seq.**
  - Another's sale, misconduct in connection with, **5:132**
  - Commissions, **5:133**
  - Court cases, **5:135**
  - Definition, **5:128**
  - Injunction suits, **5:138**
  - Kickbacks, **5:133**
  - Market transactions, misconduct affecting, **5:134**
  - Mechanical interpretation of, **5:130**
  - Modified view, **5:130 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **5:140**
  - Policies, **5:139**
  - Post-sale misconduct, **5:131**
  - Reasons, **5:139**
  - Strict view, **5:129**
  - Third party misconduct, **5:132**
- Continuity of investor protection, **5:67**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
  - Control, sales of, **5:113**
- Court cases
  - Birmbaun Canon, **5:70 et seq.**
  - Connection requirement, **5:135 et seq.**
  - Unfairness
    - Generally, **5:183 et seq.**
    - Fair terms, **5:185**
    - SEC decisions, **5:186**
    - Unfair terms, **5:184**
- Deception requirement
  - Generally, **5:79 et seq.**
  - Company, deception of, **5:84 et seq.**
  - Creditors, deception of, **5:86**
  - Decisional impairment, **5:84**
  - Directors, deception of, **5:82**
  - Economic effect of deception, **5:84**
  - Knowledge, imputation of, **5:85**
  - Meaning, **5:80**
  - Modified views, **5:82 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **5:88**
  - Policies, **5:87**
  - Reasons, **5:87**
  - Shareholders, deception of, **5:83**
  - Strict view, **5:81**
- Disclosure
  - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
  - Full disclosure, **5:187 et seq.**
  - Information disclosed, **5:189**
  - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
- Fairness. Unfair terms, below
- Fraud vs fiduciary breach, **5:60**
- Full disclosure, **5:187 et seq.**
- Injunction suits
  - Buyer-seller requirements, **5:122**
  - Connection requirements, **5:138**
- Intrusion argument, **5:61 et seq.**
- Investor protection, continuity of, **5:67**
- Mismanagement exception
  - Generally, **5:72 et seq.**

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
  - Mismanagement exception
    - Cont'd
    - Abuse of trading process, **5:76**
    - Fraud as part of, **5:75**
    - Meaning, **5:73**
    - Pleading, **5:78**
    - Policies, **5:77**
    - Public, effect of trading abuse on, **5:76**
    - Reasons, **5:77**
    - Strict view, **5:74**
- Obstacles
  - Generally, **5:56 et seq.**
  - Alternative forums, efficiency of, **5:65**
  - Application to other provisions, **5:69**
  - Birmbaun Canon, **5:70 et seq.**
  - Buyer-seller requirements
    - Generally, **5:110 et seq.**
    - Broad interpretation, **5:117**
    - Company as buyer-seller, **5:124**
    - Control, sales of, **5:113**
    - Definition, **5:111**
    - Forced sales, **5:120**
    - Injunction suits, **5:122**
    - Interpretation of requirement, **5:117**
    - Issuances, **5:121**
    - Liquidations, **5:119**
    - Loss causation as substitute, **5:123**
    - Mergers, **5:118**
    - Modified view, **5:117**
    - Strict view, **5:112 et seq.**
  - Causation requirements
    - Burden of proof, **5:98**
    - Loss causation, **5:91**
    - Loss causation as substitute for buyer-seller requirement, **5:123**
    - Meaning, **5:90**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
- Obstacles—Cont'd
- Causation requirements
  - Cont'd
  - Minority vote requirements, **5:93 et seq.**
  - Modified view, **5:95**
  - Pleading
    - Generally, **5:99 et seq.**
    - Materiality, **5:107**
    - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Policies, **5:97**
  - Proof
    - Generally, **5:99 et seq.**
    - Materiality, **5:107**
    - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
  - Reasons, **5:97**
  - Strict view, **5:93, 5:94**
  - Transaction causation, **5:92**
  - Voting
    - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
    - Strict causation, **5:100 et seq.**
  - Connection requirement
    - Generally, **5:127 et seq.**
    - Another's sale, misconduct in connection with, **5:132**
    - Commissions, **5:133**
    - Court cases, **5:135**
    - Definition, **5:128**
    - Injunction suits, **5:138**
    - Kickbacks, **5:133**
    - Market transactions, misconduct affecting, **5:134**
    - Mechanical interpretation of, **5:130**
    - Modified view, **5:130 et seq.**
    - Pleading, **5:140**
    - Policies, **5:139**
    - Post-sale misconduct, **5:131**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
- Obstacles—Cont'd
- Connection requirement
  - Cont'd
  - Reasons, **5:139**
  - Strict view, **5:129**
  - Third party misconduct, **5:132**
- Continuity of investor protection, **5:67**
- Control, sales of, **5:113**
- Deception requirement
  - Generally, **5:79 et seq.**
  - Company, deception of, **5:84 et seq.**
  - Creditors, deception of, **5:86**
  - Decisional impairment, **5:84**
  - Directors, deception of, **5:82**
  - Economic effect of deception, **5:84**
  - Knowledge, imputation of, **5:85**
  - Meaning, **5:80**
  - Modified views, **5:82 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **5:88**
  - Policies, **5:87**
  - Reasons, **5:87**
  - Shareholders, deception of, **5:83**
  - Strict view, **5:81**
- Decline of, **5:58**
- Federal comparison, **5:55**
- Fraud vs fiduciary breach, **5:60**
- Interrelation of, **5:59**
- Intrusion argument, **5:61 et seq.**
- Investor protection, continuity of, **5:67**
- Mismanagement exception
  - Generally, **5:72 et seq.**
  - Abuse of trading process, **5:76**
  - Fraud as part of, **5:75**
  - Meaning, **5:73**
  - Pleading, **5:78**
  - Policies, **5:77**

INDEX

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
- Obstacles—Cont'd
  - Mismanagement exception
    - Cont'd
    - Public, effect of trading abuse on, **5:76**
    - Reasons, **5:77**
    - Strict view, **5:74**
  - Operation of, **5:57 et seq.**
  - Policies, **5:60**
  - Reasons for, **5:60**
  - Rise of, **5:58**
  - Standards, uniformity of, **5:66**
  - Uniformity of standards, **5:66**
- Pleading
  - Buyer-seller requirements, **5:126**
  - Causation requirements, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Company as buyer seller, **5:126**
  - Connection requirement, **5:140**
  - Deception requirement, **5:88**
  - Materiality, **5:107**
  - Mismanagement exception, **5:78**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Unfair terms, **5:152**
- Sources, common law, **5:54**
- Standards, uniformity of, **5:66**
- Theories, common law, **5:54**
- Unfair terms
  - Generally, **5:142 et seq.**
  - Actual control, **5:156**
  - Arms length transactions
    - Generally, **5:144**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:149**
  - Book value, **5:162**
  - Burden of proof, **5:153**
  - Business decisions as value determiners, **5:171**
  - Capitalization of earnings as test of value, **5:161**
  - Conflict transactions
    - Generally, **5:145**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
- Unfair terms—Cont'd
  - Conflict transactions—Cont'd
    - Reasons and policies, **5:150**
  - Control, proof of, **5:155**
  - Control premiums and discounts, **5:166**
  - Control sales, **5:191**
  - Court cases, **5:183 et seq.**
  - Definition, **5:143**
  - Disclosure
    - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
    - Full disclosure, **5:187 et seq.**
    - Information disclosed, **5:189**
    - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
    - Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**
  - Discounts, control, **5:166**
  - Earnings tests of value, **5:161**
  - Fair terms, effect of, **5:147**
  - Full disclosure, effect of
    - Generally, **5:146**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
  - Influence, proof of, **5:155**
  - Investment bankers
    - Generally, **5:172 et seq.**
    - Controlled company bankers, **5:175**
    - Controlling company bankers, **5:177**
    - Dual representation bankers, **5:176**
    - No banker transactions, **5:178**
    - Opinions of, challenging, **5:181**
    - Prior relations of, **5:182**
    - Qualities of bankers, **5:173**
    - Roles of bankers, **5:174**
    - Successive bankers, **5:179**
    - Trials, bankers for, **5:180**
  - Legal decisions as value determiners, **5:170**
  - Liquidation value, **5:163**
  - Market prices as value indicators, **5:160**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Conflict of interest transactions
  - Cont'd
  - Unfair terms—Cont'd
    - Pleading, **5:152**
    - Policies, **5:148 et seq.**
    - Potential control, **5:156**
    - Premiums, control, **5:166**
    - Proof of elements, **5:154**
    - Range of fairness, **5:143**
    - Reasons, **5:148 et seq.**
    - Shareholder votes, effect of
      - Generally, **5:146**
      - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
    - Tax factors in value determination, **5:164**
    - Time factors in value determination, **5:165**
    - Value determiners, **5:169 et seq.**
    - Value indicators, **5:158 et seq.**
  - Uniformity of standards, **5:66**
- Connection requirement
  - Generally, **5:127 et seq.**
  - Another's sale, misconduct in connection with, **5:132**
  - Commissions, **5:133**
  - Court cases, **5:135**
  - Definition, **5:128**
  - Injunction suits, **5:138**
  - Kickbacks, **5:133**
  - Market transactions, misconduct affecting, **5:134**
  - Mechanical interpretation of, **5:130**
  - Modified view, **5:130 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **5:140**
  - Policies, **5:139**
  - Post-sale misconduct, **5:131**
  - Reasons, **5:139**
  - Strict view, **5:129**
  - Third party misconduct, **5:132**
- Context, **5:1**
- Control, sales of, **5:113**
- Court cases
  - Birmaun Canon, **5:70 et seq.**
  - Connection requirement, **5:135, 5:135 et seq.**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Court cases—Cont'd
  - Unfairness
    - Generally, **5:183 et seq.**
    - Fair terms, **5:185**
    - SEC decisions, **5:186**
    - Unfair terms, **5:184**
- Deception
  - Generally, **5:79 et seq.**
  - Company, deception of, **5:84 et seq.**
  - Decisional impairment, **5:84**
  - Directors, deception of, **5:82**
  - Economic effect of deception, **5:84**
  - Knowledge, imputation of, **5:85**
  - Meaning, **5:80**
  - Modified views, **5:82 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **5:88**
  - Policies, **5:87**
  - Reasons, **5:87**
  - Shareholders, deception of, **5:83**
  - Strict view, **5:81**
- Definition, **1:2**
- Direct and indirect dealings, **4:1**
- Disclosure
  - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
- Corrections
  - How long is correction necessary, **6:324**
  - What makes correction necessary, **6:320**
- Information disclosed, **5:189**
- Method of disclosure, **5:188**
- Fairness. Unfair terms, below
- Fraud on the market
  - Generally, **8:520 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
- Injunction suits
  - Buyer-seller requirements, **5:122**
  - Connection requirements, **5:138**
- Issuer liabilities
  - Privately held securities, **5:6**
  - Publicly held securities, **5:7**
- Legal factors in party relationships, **5:5**
- Market-informing responsibilities, **12:7**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Mediation, **15:69**
- Mismanagement
  - Generally, **5:72 et seq.**
  - Abuse of trading process, **5:76**
  - Fraud as part of, **5:75**
  - Meaning, **5:73**
  - Pleading, **5:78**
  - Policies, **5:77**
  - Public, effect of trading abuse on, **5:76**
  - Reasons, **5:77**
  - Strict view, **5:74**
- Misrepresentations, **5:2**
- Nondisclosures, **5:2**
- Obstacles
  - Generally, **5:56 et seq.**
  - Alternative forums, efficiency of, **5:65**
  - Application to other provisions, **5:69**
  - Continuity of investor protection, **5:67**
  - Decline of, **5:58**
  - Federal comparison, **5:55**
  - Interrelation of, **5:59**
  - Intrusion argument, **5:61 et seq.**
  - Mismanagement exception, fraud as part of, **5:75**
  - Operation of, **5:57 et seq.**
  - Reasons for, **5:60**
  - Rise of, **5:58**
  - Uniformity of standards, **5:66**
- Organization of treatise, **4:1**
- OTC market distinguished, **1:2**
- Other deceptions, **5:3**
- Penny Stock Sales (this index)
- Personal and impersonal dealings, **4:1**
- Pleading
  - Buyer-seller requirements, **5:126**
  - Causation requirements, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Company as buyer seller, **5:126**
  - Connection requirement, **5:140**
  - Deception requirement, **5:88**
  - Materiality, **5:107**

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Pleading—Cont'd
  - Mismanagement exception, **5:78**
  - Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**
  - Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
  - Unfair terms, **5:152**
- Practical factors in party relationships, **5:4**
- Privately held securities, issuer liabilities as to, **5:6**
- Private transactions, **5:8**
- Proxy solicitation as element, **5:108**
- Publicly held securities, issuer liabilities as to, **5:7**
- Relations of parties
  - Legal factors, **5:5**
  - Practical factors, **5:4**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:484 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
- Rule 10b-5
  - Application to
    - Generally, **3:26**
    - Broker-dealer transactions, **3:27**
  - Responsibilities generally, **12:7**
- Scienter and actual knowledge, **8:170**
- Securities types
  - Generally, **5:9 et seq.**
  - Alternative government regulation, **5:35**
  - Certificates of deposit, **5:28**
  - Characteristics of instrument in commerce, **5:39**
  - Common elements in defining a security, **5:32 et seq.**
  - Context clause, **5:18**
  - Cooperative apartment corporation shares, **5:26**
  - Court cases, **5:20 et seq.**
- Employee benefit plans
  - Generally, **5:42 et seq.**
  - Contributory plans
    - Involuntary, **5:46**
    - Voluntary, **5:48**
  - Defined plans, **5:49**
  - Distinguishing contributory from noncontributory, **5:52**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Securities types—Cont'd
  - Employee benefit plans—Cont'd
    - Distinguishing voluntary from involuntary plans, **5:51**
    - ERISA, preemptive effect of, **5:43**
    - ESOPs, **5:48**
    - Involuntary contributory plans, **5:46**
    - Involuntary noncontributory plans, **5:45**
    - Noncontributory plans
      - Involuntary, **5:45**
      - Voluntary, **5:47**
    - Pension plans, **5:49**
    - Sales, **5:44**
    - Voluntary contributory plans, **5:48**
    - Voluntary noncontributory plans, **5:47**
  - Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**
  - Expectations of public, **5:40**
  - Flexible fund annuities, **5:24, 5:25**
  - Fractional interests in mineral rights, **5:21**
  - Guarantees, **5:15**
  - Howey test, **5:22**
  - Interest, **5:14**
  - International Brotherhood of Teamsters case, **5:27**
  - Investment risk as factor, **5:34**
  - Joiner Leasing Corp case, **5:21**
  - Judicial decisions, **5:20 et seq.**
  - Landreth Timber Co case, **5:29**
  - Marine Bank case, **5:28**
  - Marketing as factor, **5:33**
  - Motivations of purchasers, **5:37**
  - Motivations of sellers, **5:38**
  - 9 month notes, **5:17**
  - Notes, **5:30**
  - Oil and gas interests
    - Generally, **5:16**
    - Fractional interests, **5:21**
  - Passive or active purchasers, **5:36**
  - Pension plans, employee interests in, **5:27**

**DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING**

—Cont'd

- Securities types—Cont'd
  - Perceptions of public, **5:40**
  - Reeves v. Ernst & Young case, **5:30**
  - Relative importance of elements, **5:41**
  - SA § 2(1)(a) definition
    - Generally, **5:10**
    - Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**
    - Guarantees, **5:15**
    - Interest, **5:14**
    - 9 month notes, **5:17**
    - Oil and gas interests, **5:16**
    - SEA § 3(a)(10) differences, **5:12 et seq.**
    - SEA § 3(a)(10) similarities, **5:11**
  - SEA § 3(A)(10)
    - Generally, **5:10**
    - Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**
    - Guarantees, **5:15**
    - Interest, **5:14**
    - 9 month notes, **5:17**
    - Oil and gas interests, **5:16**
    - SA § 2(1)(a) differences, **5:12 et seq.**
    - SA § 2(1)(a) similarities, **5:11**
  - State law definitions, **5:19**
  - Statutory definitions, **5:10 et seq.**
  - United Benefit Life Ins Co case, **5:24**
  - United Housing Foundation, Inc case, **5:26**
  - Variable annuities, **5:23**
- Suitability (this index)
- Transaction Planning (this index)
- Unfair terms
  - Generally, **5:142 et seq.**
  - Actual control, **5:156**
  - Arms length transactions
    - Generally, **5:144**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:149**
  - Book value, **5:162**
  - Burden of proof, **5:153**
  - Business decisions as value determiners, **5:171**

## INDEX

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Unfair terms—Cont'd
  - Capitalization of earnings as test of value, **5:161**
  - Conflict transactions
    - Generally, **5:145**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:150**
  - Control, proof of, **5:155**
  - Control premiums and discounts, **5:166**
  - Control sales, **5:191**
  - Court cases, **5:183 et seq.**
  - Definition, **5:143**
  - Disclosure
    - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
    - Information disclosed, **5:189**
    - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
    - Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**
  - Discounts, control, **5:166**
  - Earnings tests of value, **5:161**
  - Fair terms, effect of, **5:147**
  - Full disclosure, effect of
    - Generally, **5:146**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
  - Influence, proof of, **5:155**
  - Investment bankers
    - Generally, **5:172 et seq.**
    - Controlled company bankers, **5:175**
    - Controlling company bankers, **5:177**
    - Dual representation bankers, **5:176**
    - No banker transactions, **5:178**
    - Opinions of, challenging, **5:181**
    - Prior relations of, **5:182**
    - Qualities of bankers, **5:173**
    - Roles of bankers, **5:174**
    - Successive bankers, **5:179**
    - Trials, bankers for, **5:180**
  - Legal decisions as value determiners, **5:170**
  - Liquidation value, **5:163**
  - Market prices as value indicators, **5:160**
  - Pleading, **5:152**

### DIRECT-PERSONAL DEALING

#### —Cont'd

- Unfair terms—Cont'd
  - Policies, **5:148 et seq.**
  - Potential control, **5:156**
  - Premiums, control, **5:166**
  - Proof of elements, **5:154**
  - Range of fairness, **5:143**
  - Reasons, **5:148 et seq.**
  - Shareholder votes, effect of
    - Generally, **5:146**
    - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
  - Tax factors in value determination, **5:164**
  - Time factors in value determination, **5:165**
  - Value determiners, **5:169 et seq.**
  - Value indicators, **5:158 et seq.**
  - What is a Security (this index)

### DIRKS CASE

- Insider trading, gifts to relatives, **7:396**
- Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:563**

### DISCIPLINARY PROCEEDINGS

- Injunctions, collateral effects, **13:106**

### DISCLOSURES

- Generally, **5:187 et seq., 6:267**
- Acquisition information
  - Required disclosures, **7:259**
- Timely disclosure
  - Generally, **7:248 et seq.**
- Agreements
  - Disclosure not required, **7:261**
  - Disclosure required, **7:260**
- Company, trading by, **7:256**
- Definitions, **7:250**
- Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**
- Leaks, **7:255**
- Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**
- Preliminary negotiations
  - Misleading statements, **7:253**
  - No statement made, **7:252**
  - Other situations, **7:254**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Acquisition information—Cont'd
  - Timely disclosure—Cont'd
    - Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**
    - Rumors, **7:255**
    - Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**
    - Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
    - When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq., 7:260**
- Advance letters
  - Proxy rules, **6:240**
  - Registration under SA, **6:241**
- Aggregate materiality, **6:253**
- Analysts' roles in full disclosure regulations, **7:528**
- Annual reports, **6:242**
- Antifraud provisions and Regulation FD, **7:546**
- Application of funds, **6:260**
- Assets
  - Generally, **6:261 et seq.**
  - Existence of, **6:262**
  - Reasons, **6:273**
  - Value of assets, below
- Awareness of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316, 7:349 et seq.**
  - Possession distinguished, **7:349**
- Backdating of stock options, executive compensation, **18:1 et seq.**
- Balance, **6:229**
- Burden of proof, nonpublic nature of information, **7:312**
- Buried facts, **6:232**
- Cash flow, **6:260**
- Clarity, **6:225**
- Compulsory disclosure. Regulation FD, below
- Consistency, **6:228**
- Conspicuity. Prominence, below
- Conspirators' nondisclosures, **8:306**
- Context
  - Generally, **6:235**
  - Risk disclosures, **6:275**
- Control, merger offers leading to board control changes, **6:61**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Corrections
  - Generally, **6:290 et seq.**
  - See also Supplementary communications, below
  - Another's statements, correction of, **6:319**
  - Blue sky laws, **6:292**
  - Broker-dealer fraud, **6:312**
  - Common law, **6:291**
  - False reports to SEC, **6:313**
  - Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**
  - How long correction is necessary
    - Generally, **6:323**
    - Direct-impersonal transactions, **6:325**
    - Direct-personal transactions, **6:324**
    - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:326**
    - Rule 14a-9, **6:304**
    - Rule 14c-6, **6:308**
    - SA § 11, **6:296**
  - How must correction be made
    - Rule 10b-5, **6:328**
    - Rule 14a-9, **6:306**
    - Rule 14c-6, **6:310**
    - SA § 11, **6:298**
  - Market manipulation, **6:300**
  - Proxy fraud, **6:302**
  - Registration fraud, **6:294 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5 requirements
    - Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**
    - How long is correction necessary, **6:323 et seq.**
    - How must correction be made, **6:328**
    - What makes correction necessary, **6:319 et seq.**
    - What must be corrected, **6:327**
    - Who entitled to correction, **6:328**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:303 et seq.**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:307 et seq.**
  - SA § 11, **6:294 et seq.**
  - SA § 12(2), **6:293**
  - SA § 17(a), **6:299**

## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Corrections—Cont'd
  - Safe harbor for predictions and projections
    - Later disclosures, **7:30**
    - Update duties, **7:45**
  - Sales fraud
    - Express liability, **6:293**
    - Implied liability, **6:299**
  - SEA § 9(a), **6:300**
  - SEA § 10, **6:301**
  - SEA § 14, **6:302**
  - SEC, false reports to, **6:313**
  - State law, **6:292**
  - Tender offer fraud, **6:311**
  - What makes correction necessary
    - Generally, **6:319**
    - Direct-impersonal transactions, **6:321**
    - Direct-personal transactions, **6:320**
    - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:322**
    - Rule 14a-9, **6:303**
    - Rule 14c-6, **6:307**
    - SA § 11, **6:295**
  - What must be corrected
    - Rule 10b-5, **6:327**
    - Rule 14a-9, **6:305**
    - Rule 14c-6, **6:309**
    - SA § 11, **6:297**
  - Who entitled to correction
    - Rule 10b-5, **6:328**
    - Rule 14a-9, **6:306**
    - Rule 14c-6, **6:310**
    - SA § 11, **6:298**
  - Cover letters, **6:243**
  - Covid-19 pandemic, misleading disclosures re: class actions, **27:3, 27:5 to 27:7**
  - Cross references, **6:233**
  - Crowdfunding, **14:216**
    - JOBS Act, current status, **14:219**
  - Cybersecurity, failure to, **26:1**
  - Detail, **6:234**
  - Direct-impersonal dealing
    - Generally, **6:212 et seq.**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Advance letters
    - Proxy rules, **6:240**
    - Registration under SA, **6:241**
  - Aggregate materiality, **6:253**
  - Annual reports, **6:242**
  - Application of funds, **6:260**
  - Assets
    - Generally, **6:261 et seq.**
    - Existence of, **6:262**
    - Reasons, **6:273**
    - Value of assets, below
  - Balance, **6:229**
  - Buried facts, **6:232**
  - Cash flow, **6:260**
  - Clarity, **6:225**
  - Comparative tables, **6:219**
  - Consistency, **6:228**
  - Conspicuity. Prominence, below
  - Context, **6:235**
  - Control, merger offers leading to board control changes, **6:61**
  - Corrections
    - Generally, **6:290 et seq.**
    - See also Supplementary communications, below
    - Another's statements, correction of, **6:319**
    - Blue sky laws, **6:292**
    - Broker-dealer fraud, **6:312**
    - Common law, **6:291**
    - False reports to SEC, **6:313**
    - Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**
    - How long correction is necessary
      - Generally, **6:323**
    - Direct-impersonal transactions, **6:325**
    - Direct-personal transactions, **6:324**
    - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:326**
      - Rule 14a-9, **6:304**
      - Rule 14c-6, **6:308**
      - SA § 11, **6:296**
    - How must correction be made
      - Rule 10b-5, **6:328**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Corrections—Cont'd  
     How must correction be made  
         —Cont'd  
         Rule 14a-9, **6:306**  
         Rule 14c-6, **6:310**  
         SA § 11, **6:298**  
 Market manipulation, **6:300**  
 Proxy fraud, **6:302**  
 Registration fraud, **6:294 et seq.**  
 Rule 10b-5 requirements  
     Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**  
     How long is correction necessary, **6:323 et seq.**  
     How must correction be made, **6:328**  
     What makes correction necessary, **6:319 et seq.**  
     What must be corrected, **6:327**  
     Who entitled to correction, **6:328**  
 Rule 14a-9, **6:303 et seq.**  
 Rule 14c-6, **6:307 et seq.**  
 SA § 11, **6:294 et seq.**  
 SA § 12(2), **6:293**  
 SA § 17(a), **6:299**  
 Sales fraud  
     Express liability, **6:293**  
     Implied liability, **6:299**  
 SEA § 9(a), **6:300**  
 SEA § 10, **6:301**  
 SEA § 14, **6:302**  
 SEC, false reports to, **6:313**  
 State law, **6:292**  
 Tender offer fraud, **6:311**  
 What makes correction necessary  
     Generally, **6:319**  
     Direct-impersonal transactions, **6:321**  
     Direct-personal transactions, **6:320**  
     Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:322**  
     Rule 14a-9, **6:303**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Corrections—Cont'd  
     What makes correction necessary—Cont'd  
         Rule 14c-6, **6:307**  
         SA § 11, **6:295**  
     What must be corrected  
         Rule 10b-5, **6:327**  
         Rule 14a-9, **6:305**  
         Rule 14c-6, **6:309**  
         SA § 11, **6:297**  
     Who entitled to correction  
         Rule 10b-5, **6:328**  
         Rule 14a-9, **6:306**  
         Rule 14c-6, **6:310**  
         SA § 11, **6:298**  
 Cross references, **6:233**  
 Detail, **6:234**  
 Distribution, **6:214 et seq.**  
 Earnings  
     Generally, **6:254**  
     Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**  
     Interim, **6:259**  
     Misrepresentations, **6:255**  
     Nondisclosure of, **6:257**  
     Predictions, **6:255**  
 Exchange offers, **6:12**  
 Form and substance, **6:235**  
 Interim earnings, **6:259**  
 Interpretation, **6:236**  
 Level, **6:227**  
 Locus, **6:214 et seq.**  
 Materiality  
     Generally, **6:248 et seq.**  
     Aggregate, **6:253**  
     Might, use of term, **6:249**  
     Practical problems, **6:251**  
     Probably would, use of term, **6:250**  
     Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**  
     Would, use of term, **6:249**  
 Merger information statement  
     rules, Congressional intent, **6:156**

## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Misrepresentations
    - Earnings, **6:255**
    - Value of assets
      - Generally, **6:270**
      - Defenses, **6:271**
      - Precautions, **6:272**
  - Numerical information, **6:237**
  - Opposition communications, **6:247**
  - Organization, **6:226**
  - Overall effect, **6:238**
  - Predictions, earnings, **6:255**
  - Presentation, **6:224 et seq.**
  - Prominence
    - Generally, **6:230 et seq.**
    - Buried and scattered facts, **6:232**
    - Similar emphasis, **6:231**
  - Publicity, prefilling, **6:10**
  - Public sales, **6:12**
  - Repetition, **6:233**
  - Risk
    - Generally, **6:275 et seq.**
    - CFTC requirements, **6:289**
    - Context, **6:275**
    - Court cases, **6:281**
    - Day trading, **6:284**
    - Extended hour trading, **6:285**
    - Margin trading, **6:286**
    - NASD requirements, **6:283 et seq.**
    - Plain English requirements, **6:278**
    - Safe harbor, **6:282**
    - SA filings, **6:279**
    - SEA filings, **6:280**
    - Short selling, **6:287**
    - Specific requirements, **6:277**
    - Uninsured products, **6:288**
  - Rule 10b-5 requirements, **6:218**
  - SA § 5 requirements, **6:217**
  - Scattered facts, **6:232**
  - SEA § 14(a) requirements, **6:215**
  - SEA § 14(c) requirements, **6:216**
  - Sources of funds, **6:260**
  - Sources of requirements
    - Generally, **6:220 et seq.**
    - Antifraud provisions, **6:222**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Sources of requirements—Cont'd
    - Specific items, **6:221**
    - Timing, **6:223**
  - Specific information requirements, **6:2**
  - Style, **6:224 et seq.**
  - Supplementary communications
    - Generally, **6:239 et seq.**
    - See also Corrections, above
    - Advance letters
      - Proxy rules, **6:240**
      - Registration under SA, **6:241**
    - Annual reports, **6:242**
    - Cover letters, **6:243**
    - Followup solicitations, **6:244**
    - Generally available information, **6:246**
    - Other communications, **6:245**
    - Transmittal letters, **6:243**
- Tender offers
  - Congressional intent, **6:17**
- Regulated offers
  - Generally, **6:41**
  - Arrangements, **6:47**
  - Changes, effects of
    - Generally, **6:49**
    - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
- Control change information, **6:61**
- Control purposes, **6:64**
- Date of information
  - Generally, **6:49**
  - SEC filings, **6:52**
  - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
- Deviation from stated plans, **6:70**
- Funds, source of, **6:44**
- Fund source data, **6:44**
- Groups, data on, **6:48**
- Ideas vs plans, **6:68**
- Issuer offers, **6:144**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Tender offers—Cont'd
    - Regulated offers—Cont'd
      - Noncompliance, effects of, **6:74**
      - Offer data, **6:43**
      - Offeror data, **6:42**
      - Ownership, **6:55**
      - Plans, **6:45**
      - Plans and proposals, **6:66 et seq.**
    - Publicity
      - Offeror, **6:94**
      - Target company, **6:98**
      - Third persons, **6:108**
    - Purposes, **6:45, 6:62 et seq.**
    - Sanctions for noncompliance, **6:74**
    - SEC filings
      - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**
      - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
      - Date of information, **6:52**
      - Other disseminations, **6:54**
      - Processing, **6:53**
      - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
      - Time of filing, **6:50**
    - Securities, data on, **6:46**
    - Ten percent threshold
      - Generally, **6:55 et seq.**
      - Changes, effect of, **6:57**
      - Date of information, **6:57**
      - Exemptions, **6:60**
      - Other disseminations, **6:59**
      - Ownership, **6:55**
      - Scope of disclosure, **6:56**
      - SEC processing, **6:58**
    - Understandings, **6:47**
  - Unregulated offers
    - Generally, **6:113**
  - Insiders, **6:114**
  - Outsiders
    - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
    - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
    - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
    - Other information, **6:118**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Direct-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Tender offers—Cont'd
    - Unregulated offers—Cont'd
      - Outsiders—Cont'd
        - Policy factors, **6:120**
        - Target company, **6:121**
    - Timing requirements, **6:223**
    - Value of assets
      - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
      - Firm offers, **6:265**
      - Hard data, **6:264**
    - Misrepresentations
      - Generally, **6:270**
      - Defenses, **6:271**
      - Precautions, **6:272**
    - Modified view
      - Disposition plans, **6:266**
      - Hard data, **6:264**
      - Other situations, **6:268**
    - Policies, **6:269**
    - Reasons, **6:269**
    - Replacement costs, **6:267**
    - Traditional view, **6:263**
  - Direct-personal dealing
    - Generally, **5:146, 5:187 et seq.**
    - Information disclosed, **5:189**
    - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
    - Nondisclosures generally, **5:2**
    - Unfair terms
      - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
      - Information disclosed, **5:189**
      - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
      - Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**
      - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
  - Dividend actions
    - Materiality, **7:247**
    - When disclosure required, **7:246**
  - Earnings
    - Generally, **6:254**
    - Executive compensation, backdating of stock options, **18:1 et seq.**
    - Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**
    - Interim, **6:259**
    - Misrepresentations, **6:255**

## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Earnings—Cont'd
  - Nondisclosure of, **6:257**
  - Predictions, **6:255**
- Exchange offers, **6:12**
- Exemption provisions and Regulation FD, **7:548**
- Final rule on incident disclosure, cybersecurity, **26:9**
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA) (this index)
- Form and substance, **6:235**
- Forward Looking Information (this index)
- Fraud on the market
  - Generally, **8:520 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
  - Theory and disclosure policy, **8:533**
- Full disclosure duty
  - Regulation FD, below
  - Trigger, **7:536**
- Grace case, **8:423**
- Information disclosed, **5:189**
- Information types, **7:2**
- Inside information
  - Dividend actions, materiality, **7:247**
  - Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**
  - Timely disclosure
    - Generally, **7:238 et seq.**
    - Acquisition information
      - Generally, **7:248 et seq.**
      - Agreements
        - Disclosure not required, **7:261**
        - Disclosure required, **7:260**
      - Company, trading by, **7:256**
      - Definitions, **7:250**
      - Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**
      - Leaks, **7:255**
      - Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**
      - Preliminary negotiations
        - Misleading statements, **7:253**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Inside information—Cont'd
- Timely disclosure—Cont'd
  - Acquisition information
    - Cont'd
    - Preliminary negotiations
      - Cont'd
      - No statement made, **7:252**
      - Other situations, **7:254**
    - Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**
    - Rumors, **7:255**
    - Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**
    - Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
    - When disclosure of agreement required, **7:260**
    - When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq.**
  - Business judgment considerations, **7:241**
  - Corporate purpose considerations, **7:242**
  - Delays, justifications for, **7:240**
  - Dividend actions
    - Evolving information, **7:245**
    - Materiality, **7:247**
    - When disclosure required, **7:246**
  - Justification for delay, **7:240**
  - Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**
  - Ripeness and timing, **7:243**
  - Tender offers
    - Generally, **7:267**
    - Materiality, **7:270**
    - Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**
    - When disclosure required, **7:269**
- Insiders
  - Generally, **7:152 et seq.**
  - See also Insiders and Insider Trading (this index)
  - Disclose or abstain duties
    - Generally, **7:197 et seq.**
    - Duration of duty, **7:200**
    - Nature of duty, **7:198**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Insiders—Cont'd
  - Disclose or abstain duties—Cont'd
    - Who is entitled to disclosure, **7:199**
    - Regulation FD, below
  - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
  - Interim earnings, **6:259**
  - Interpretation, **6:236**
  - Investment community disclosure, **7:300**
- Issuer disclosures
  - Generally, **7:282 et seq.**
  - Awareness of MNPI
    - Generally, **7:316, 7:349 et seq.**
    - Possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, nonpublic nature of information, **7:312**
  - Full disclosure duty triggered by partial disclosure, **7:536**
  - Law and fact questions, nonpublic character of information, **7:314**
  - Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**
  - Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
  - Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
  - Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- MNPI
  - Materiality, above
  - Nonpublic information, below
- Nonpublic information
  - Generally, **7:271 et seq.**
  - Absorption requirement, **7:306 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **7:312**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, Regulation FD, **7:552**
  - Full disclosure duty triggered by partial disclosure of, **7:536**
  - Law and fact questions, **7:314**
  - Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Issuer disclosures—Cont'd
  - Nonpublic information—Cont'd
    - Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
    - Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
  - Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Motion practice, **7:311**
  - Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **7:310**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:309 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:313**
  - Public as affecting insider trading, **7:272 et seq.**
  - Quantum of proof, **7:312**
  - Rumors, **7:301**
  - Time in becoming public, **7:304 et seq.**
  - Tipping of, **7:272 et seq.**
- Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- Periodic reports, **7:289**
- Pleading nonpublic nature of information, **7:310**
- Possession of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316**
  - Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, **7:321, 7:341**
  - Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:342**
  - Knowing possession, **7:320**
  - Mere possession, **7:319**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Precautions against trading, **7:346**
  - Proof, **7:322 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5
    - Generally, **7:318 et seq.**
    - Access, proof of, **7:323**

## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

Issuer disclosures—Cont'd  
Possession of MNPI—Cont'd  
Rule 10b-5—Cont'd  
Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**  
Burden of proof, **7:321**  
Contact, proof of, **7:324**  
Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**  
Knowing possession, **7:320**  
Mere possession, **7:319**  
Organizations, proof for, **7:326**  
Proof, **7:322 et seq.**  
Trading, proof of, **7:325**  
Use inferred from possession, **7:328**  
Rule 14e-3  
Generally, **7:340 et seq.**  
Burden of proof, **7:341**  
Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**  
Individuals, proof for, **7:342**  
Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**  
Precautions against trading, **7:346**  
Standard of proof, **7:341**  
Standard of proof, **7:341**  
Use compared, **7:317**  
Press releases, **7:283**  
Proof of nonpublic character of information, **7:313**  
Prospectuses, **7:286**  
Proxy statements, **7:287**  
Reports, **7:289**  
Rumors, **7:301**  
SEC filings, **7:285**  
Shareholder communications, **7:284**  
Tender offer statements, **7:288**  
Use of MNPI  
Generally, **7:316**  
Burden of proof, **7:331**  
Connection with transaction, **7:681**  
Individuals, proof for, **7:332**  
Organizations, proof for, **7:339**  
Possession compared, **7:317**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

Issuer disclosures—Cont'd  
Use of MNPI—Cont'd  
Rule 10b-5  
Generally, **7:327 et seq.**  
Burden of proof, **7:331**  
Individuals, proof for, **7:332**  
Inferences, **7:328**  
Organizations, proof for, **7:339**  
Possession, use inferred from, **7:328**  
Rebuttal evidence, **7:337**, **7:338**  
Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**  
Standard of proof, **7:331**  
Timing, proof of, **7:333**  
Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**  
Rule 14e-3, **7:347**  
Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**  
Standard of proof, **7:331**  
Timing, proof of, **7:333**  
Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**  
Law and fact questions, **7:314**  
Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**  
Level, **6:227**  
Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**  
Market, management responsibilities to inform  
Generally, **8:421**  
Business changes, **8:422**  
Grace case, **8:423**  
National Telephone case, **8:422**  
Second-guessing disclosure counsel, **8:423**  
Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**  
Markup and markdown practices, **14:149**  
Materiality  
Generally, **6:248 et seq.**  
Aggregate, **6:253**  
Might, use of term, **6:249**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Materiality—Cont'd
  - Practical problems, **6:251**
  - Probably would, use of term, **6:250**
  - Safe harbor for predictions and projections, **7:35, 7:38**
  - Selective disclosures, materiality of, **7:535**
  - Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**
  - Would, use of term, **6:249**
- Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
- Material nonpublic information (MNPI)
  - Generally, **7:152**
  - Awareness of MNPI, above
  - Possession of MNPI, below
  - Use of MNPI, below
- Merger information statement rules, Congressional intent, **6:156**
- Method of disclosure
  - Generally, **5:188**
  - Regulation FD, **7:544**
- Misrepresentation
  - Backdating of stock options, **18:1 et seq.**
  - Earnings, **6:255**
  - Public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Value of assets
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
- MNPI. Material nonpublic information, above
- Mutual fund violations, misleading prospectuses, **17:7**
- Nondisclosure liability (this index)
- Nonpublic information
  - Generally, **7:271 et seq.**
  - Absorption requirement, **7:306 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **7:312**
  - Duty to disclose generally, **7:275**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, Regulation FD, **7:552**
  - Full disclosure duty triggered by partial disclosure of, **7:536**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Nonpublic information—Cont'd
  - Investment community disclosure, **7:300**
- Issuer disclosures
  - Generally, **7:282 et seq.**
  - Periodic reports, **7:289**
  - Press releases, **7:283**
  - Prospectuses, **7:286**
  - Proxy statements, **7:287**
  - Reports, **7:289**
  - SEC filings, **7:285**
  - Shareholder communications, **7:284**
  - Tender offer statements, **7:288**
- Law and fact questions, **7:314**
- Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**
- Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
- Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
- Media disclosures
  - Generally, **7:292 et seq.**
  - Particular media, **7:299**
  - Timing, **7:297**
- Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- Motion practice, **7:311**
- Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- Pleading, **7:310**
- Procedural aspects, **7:309 et seq.**
- Proof, **7:313**
- Public as affecting insider trading, **7:272 et seq.**
- Quantum of proof, **7:312**
- Rumors, **7:301**
- Time in becoming public, **7:304 et seq.**
- Tipping of, **7:272 et seq.**
- Numerical information, **6:237**
- NYSE rules, **App F**
- Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
- Opposition communications, **6:247**
- Organization, **6:226**

## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Overall effect, **6:238**
- Payments to foreign government officials. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA) (this index)
- Periodic reports, **7:289**
- Plain English requirements, **6:278**
- Possession of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316**
  - Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, **7:321, 7:341**
  - Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:342**
  - Knowing possession, **7:320**
  - Mere possession, **7:319**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**
- Precautions against trading, **7:346**
- Proof, **7:322 et seq.**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **7:318 et seq.**
  - Access, proof of, **7:323**
  - Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - Burden of proof, **7:321**
  - Contact, proof of, **7:324**
  - Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**
  - Knowing possession, **7:320**
  - Mere possession, **7:319**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:326**
  - Proof, **7:322 et seq.**
  - Trading, proof of, **7:325**
  - Use inferred from possession, **7:328**
- Rule 14e-3
  - Generally, **7:340 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **7:341**
  - Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:342**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Precautions against trading, **7:346**
  - Standard of proof, **7:341**
- Standard of proof, **7:341**
- Use compared, **7:317**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Predictions and projection disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:10 et seq.**
- Capital resources, **7:15**
- Earnings, **6:255**
- Liquidity, **7:14**
- With MD&A requirement
  - Administrative enforcement, **7:13**
  - Private actions, **7:17**
- Nondisclosure liability, **8:2**
- Operation results, **7:16**
- Private actions on MD&A requirements, **7:17**
- Restrictions on disclosures, **7:18**
- Safe harbor
  - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
  - Background, **7:20**
  - Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
- PSLRA
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Corrections, **7:45**
  - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Eligible makers, **7:37**
  - Exclusions, **7:40**
  - Expandability, **7:41**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
  - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
  - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
  - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
  - Scope of Act, **7:24**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

Predictions and projection disclosure obligations—Cont'd  
 Safe harbor—Cont'd  
 PSLRA—Cont'd  
   Statements with cautions, **7:27**  
   Update duty, **7:45**  
 Readily available cautionary statements  
   Generally disseminated, **7:34**  
   SEC filings, **7:33**  
   Timing, **7:32**  
 SA Rule 175, **7:21**  
 SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**  
 SEC, traditional position, **7:18**  
 With SEC encouragement, **7:12**  
 Without SEC rule, **7:11**  
 Presentation, **6:224 et seq.**  
 Prominence  
   Generally, **6:230 et seq.**  
   Buried and scattered facts, **6:232**  
   Similar emphasis, **6:231**  
 Prompt disclosure requirement, Regulation FD, **7:543**  
 Public or nonpublic character of information. Nonpublic information, above  
 Public sales, **6:12**  
 Registration provisions and Regulation FD, **7:547**  
 Regulation FD  
   Generally, **7:526 et seq.**  
   Analysts' roles, **7:528**  
   Antifraud provisions and, **7:546**  
   Avoiding selective disclosure, **7:553**  
   Companies covered, **7:545**  
   Compliance, **7:551 et seq.**  
   Curing violations, **7:554**  
   Eliminating nonpublic information, **7:552**  
   Enforcement, **7:549**  
   Exemption provisions and, **7:548**  
   Information, triggering, **7:534**  
   Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

Regulation FD—Cont'd  
 Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**  
 Method of disclosure, **7:544**  
 Persons triggering duty, **7:537**  
 Policy basis, **7:527**  
 Prompt disclosure requirement, **7:543**  
 Registration provisions and, **7:547**  
 Regulatory gap, **7:530**  
 Scope of regulation, **7:545**  
 SEC filing, compliance by, **7:555**  
 Selective disclosure  
   Generally, **7:529**  
   Avoiding, **7:553**  
   Curing violations, **7:554**  
   Materiality, **7:535**  
   Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**  
   Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**  
   Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**  
 Simultaneous disclosure requirements, **7:542**  
 Timing requirements, **7:541 et seq.**  
 Triggering events  
   Generally, **7:531 et seq.**  
   Information, triggering, **7:534**  
   Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**  
   Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**  
   Nonintentional disclosures, **7:540**  
   Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**  
   Nontriggering disclosures, **7:533**  
   Persons triggering duty, **7:537**  
   Selective disclosures, **7:532**  
   Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**  
 Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**  
 Validity, **7:550**  
 Violations, curing, **7:554**  
 Release of Information (this index)  
 Reliance  
   Generally, **8:484 et seq.**

## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Reliance—Cont'd
  - See also Reliance (this index)
- Repetition, **6:233**
- Ripeness and timely disclosure of inside information, **7:243**
- Risk disclosures
  - Generally, **6:275 et seq.**
  - CFTC requirements, **6:289**
  - Context, **6:275**
  - Court cases, **6:281**
  - Day trading, **6:284**
  - Extended hour trading, **6:285**
  - Margin trading, **6:286**
  - NASD requirements, **6:283 et seq.**
  - Plain English requirements, **6:278**
  - Safe harbor, **6:282**
  - SA filings, **6:279**
  - SEA filings, **6:280**
  - Short selling, **6:287**
  - Specific requirements, **6:277**
  - Uninsured products, **6:288**
- Rule 10b-5 as disclosure rule, **12:3**
- Rumors, **7:301**
- Safe harbor for predictions and projections
  - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
  - Background, **7:20**
  - Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
  - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
- PSLRA
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Corrections, **7:45**
  - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Eligible makers, **7:37**
  - Exclusions, **7:40**
  - Expandability, **7:41**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Safe harbor for predictions and projections—Cont'd
- PSLRA—Cont'd
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
  - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
  - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
  - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
  - Scope of Act, **7:24**
  - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
  - Update duty, **7:45**
- Readily available cautionary statements
  - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
  - SEC filings, **7:33**
  - Timing, **7:32**
- SA Rule 175, **7:21**
- SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act controls, **8:466**
- Scattered facts, **6:232**
- SEC filings of issuer disclosures, **7:285**
- Second-guessing disclosure counsel, **8:423**
- Selective disclosure and full disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:529**
  - Avoiding, **7:553**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Materiality, **7:535**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Simultaneous FD disclosure requirements, **7:542**
- Sources of funds, **6:260**
- Style, **6:224 et seq.**
- Supplementary communications
  - Generally, **6:239 et seq.**
  - See also Corrections, above
  - Advance letters
    - Proxy rules, **6:240**
    - Registration under SA, **6:241**
  - Annual reports, **6:242**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Supplementary communications
  - Cont'd
  - Cover letters, **6:243**
  - Followup solicitations, **6:244**
  - Generally available information, **6:246**
  - Other communications, **6:245**
  - Transmittal letters, **6:243**
- Tender offers
  - Generally, **7:288**
  - Congressional intent, **6:17**
- Regulated offers
  - Generally, **6:41**
  - Arrangements, **6:47**
  - Changes, effects of
    - Generally, **6:49**
    - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Control change information, **6:61**
  - Control purposes, **6:64**
  - Date of information
    - Generally, **6:49**
    - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Deviation from stated plans, **6:70**
  - Funds, source of, **6:44**
  - Groups, data on, **6:48**
  - Ideas vs plans, **6:68**
  - Issuer offers, **6:144**
  - Noncompliance, effects of, **6:74**
  - Offer data, **6:43**
  - Offeror data, **6:42**
  - Ownership, **6:55**
  - Plans and proposals, **6:45, 6:66 et seq.**
  - Publicity
    - Offeror, **6:94**
    - Target company, **6:98**
    - Third persons, **6:108**
  - Purposes, **6:45, 6:62 et seq.**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Tender offers—Cont'd
- Regulated offers—Cont'd
  - Sanctions for noncompliance, **6:74**
  - SEC filings
    - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**
    - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
    - Date of information, **6:52**
    - Other disseminations, **6:54**
    - Processing, **6:53**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
    - Time of filing, **6:50**
  - Securities, data on, **6:46**
  - Ten percent threshold
    - Generally, **6:55 et seq.**
    - Changes, effect of, **6:57**
    - Date of information, **6:57**
    - Exemptions, **6:60**
    - Other disseminations, **6:59**
    - Ownership, **6:55**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:56**
    - SEC processing, **6:58**
  - Understandings, **6:47**
- Unregulated offers
  - Generally, **6:113**
  - Insiders, **6:114**
  - Outsiders
    - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
    - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
    - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
    - Other information, **6:118**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
    - Policy factors, **6:120**
    - Target company, **6:121**
    - Third persons, **6:122**
  - Time in becoming public, **7:304 et seq.**
- Timely disclosure of inside information
  - Generally, **7:238 et seq.**
- Acquisition information
  - Generally, **7:248 et seq.**
- Agreements
  - Disclosure not required, **7:261**
  - Disclosure required, **7:260**

## INDEX

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Timely disclosure of inside information—Cont'd
- Acquisition information—Cont'd
  - Company, trading by, **7:256**
  - Definitions, **7:250**
  - Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**
  - Leaks, **7:255**
  - Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**
  - Preliminary negotiations
    - Misleading statements, **7:253**
    - No statement made, **7:252**
    - Other situations, **7:254**
  - Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**
  - Rumors, **7:255**
  - Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**
  - Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
  - When disclosure of agreement required, **7:260**
  - When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq.**
- Business judgment considerations, **7:241**
- Corporate purpose considerations, **7:242**
- Delays, justifications for, **7:240**
- Dividend actions
  - Evolving information, **7:245**
  - Materiality, **7:247**
  - When disclosure required, **7:246**
- Evolving information. Dividend actions, above
- Justification for delay, **7:240**
- Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**
- Ripeness and timing, **7:243**
- Tender offers
  - Generally, **7:267**
  - Materiality, **7:270**
  - Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**
  - When disclosure required, **7:269**
- Timing of FD requirements, **7:541 et seq.**

### DISCLOSURES—Cont'd

- Touting, class actions, **8:90**
  - Transmittal letters, **6:243**
  - Types of information, **7:2**
  - Unfair terms
    - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
    - Full disclosure of
      - Generally, **5:146**
      - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
    - Information disclosed, **5:189**
    - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
    - Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**
  - Unintentional disclosures and Regulation FD, **7:540**
  - Use of MNPI
    - Generally, **7:316**
    - Burden of proof, **7:331**
    - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
    - Possession compared, **7:317**
  - Rule 10b-5
    - Generally, **7:327 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **7:331**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
    - Inferences, **7:328**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
    - Possession, use inferred from, **7:328**
    - Rebuttal evidence, **7:337, 7:338**
    - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
    - Standard of proof, **7:331**
    - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
    - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
  - Rule 14e-3, generally, **7:347**
  - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
  - Standard of proof, **7:331**
  - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
  - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
- Value of assets
- Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
  - Firm offers, **6:265**
  - Hard data, **6:264**

**DISCLOSURES—Cont'd**

- Value of assets—Cont'd
  - Misrepresentations
    - Generally, **6:270**
    - Defenses, **6:271**
    - Precautions, **6:272**
  - Modified view
    - Disposition plans, **6:266**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
    - Other situations, **6:268**
  - Policies, **6:269**
  - Reasons, **6:269**
  - Replacement costs, **6:267**
  - Traditional view, **6:263**

**DISCOVERY**

- Generally, **13:66 et seq.**
- Administrative enforcement by SEC, limitation of actions, **13:90**
- Arbitration, **15:15, 15:63**
- Criminal enforcement
  - Civil-criminal flow of information, **13:139**
  - Criminal-civil flow of information, **13:141**
  - Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**
- Document subpoenas, **13:67, 13:225**
- FOIA requests, **13:68, 13:226**
- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings
  - Civil-criminal flow of information, **13:139**
  - Criminal-civil flow of information, **13:141, 13:143**
  - Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**
- Pleading particularity requirements and discovery stays, **11:120 et seq.**
- Production requests, **13:69, 13:227**
- PSLRA stays, **7:44**
- SEC administrative enforcement, limitation of actions, **13:90**
- Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act limitations, **3:203**

**DISGORGEMENT**

- Administrative enforcement, SEC, **13:84**
- Amount, **7:426 et seq.**
- Court cases, **9:7**
- Criminal proceedings, **7:465**
- Disposition of disgorgement
  - Generally, **7:433 et seq.**
  - Actual beneficiaries, **7:436**
  - Administration, **7:435**
  - Intended beneficiaries, **7:434**
  - Procedure, **7:435**
- Enforcement, limitations on, Liu v. SEC, **13:189**
- Insider trading charges
  - Generally, **7:418, 7:425 et seq., 7:465**
  - Amount, **7:426 et seq.**
  - Criminal proceedings, **7:465**
  - Disposition of disgorgement, **7:433 et seq.**
  - Market measure, **7:428**
  - Measurement methods, **7:426 et seq.**
  - Pocket measure, **7:427**
  - Prejudgment interest, **7:432**
  - Price changes and measurement, **7:430**
  - Reasonable time for measuring, **7:429**
  - Time for measuring, **7:429**
  - Vicarious liability, **7:431**
- Joint and several liability
  - Generally, **9:26, 9:35**
  - Rule 10b-5, **9:39 et seq.**
- Liu v. SEC, **13:189**
- Market measure, **7:428**
- Measurement methods, **7:426 et seq.**
- Pocket measure, **7:427**
- Prejudgment interest, **7:432**
- Price changes and measurement, **7:430**
- Reasonable time for measuring, **7:429**
- Time for measuring, **7:429**
- Vicarious liability, **7:431**

## INDEX

### **DISTRIBUTION**

Madoff feeder funds losses to investors, **20:23**

### **DIVIDENDS**

Inside information re  
Generally, **7:207, 7:245**  
Materiality, **7:247**  
When information required, **7:246**

### **DODD-FRANK**

#### **WHISTLEBLOWER BOUNTY PROGRAM**

Generally, **22:1 et seq.**

### **DOJ INVESTIGATIONS**

Backdating of stock options, wider ramifications, **18:6, 18:8**  
Standard and Poor's ratings, subprime mortgage crisis, **13:338**

### **DONATION MODEL**

Crowdfunding, **14:210**

### **DOORSTEP SALES**

See Over The Counter Market (this index)

### **DRAFTING AGREEMENTS**

See Transaction Planning (this index)

### **DUAL ROLES**

Madoff feeder funds investment manager, **20:19**

### **DUE DILIGENCE**

Generally, **14:5**  
See also Diligence, Lack of (this index)  
Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:15**  
Madoff feeder funds, failure as to due diligence, **20:17, 20:18**  
Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:52**  
Reliance, **8:506**  
SA § 11, **14:5**  
SEC view, **14:9**  
Underwriters', **14:14**

### **DURA PHARMACEUTICALS**

Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:569**

### **EARNINGS**

Capitalization, value indicators generally, **5:161**  
Insider use of information re  
Generally, **7:205**  
Predictions, **7:204**  
Misrepresentations, **7:47**  
Predictions, **7:204**

### **EGALITARIAN THEORY**

Rule 10b-5 and, **12:2**

### **ELDER ABUSE**

See Senior Investor Financial Abuse (this index)

### **EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS**

ERISA preemption, **5:43**  
Securities, treatment as  
Generally, **5:42 et seq.**  
Contributory plans  
Involuntary, **5:46**  
Voluntary, **5:48**  
Defined plans, **5:49**  
Distinguishing contributory from noncontributory, **5:52**  
Distinguishing voluntary from involuntary plans, **5:51**  
ERISA, preemptive effect of, **5:43**  
ESOPs, **5:48**  
Involuntary contributory plans, **5:46**  
Involuntary noncontributory plans, **5:45**  
Noncontributory plans  
Involuntary, **5:45**  
Voluntary, **5:47**  
Pension plans, **5:49**  
Sales, **5:44**  
Voluntary contributory plans, **5:48**  
Voluntary noncontributory plans, **5:47**

### **EMPLOYEES OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:10**

**ENRON**

Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:87**  
Private actions, materiality, **8:40**

**ENVIRONMENTAL, SOCIAL AND GOVERNANCE (ESG)**

Business priority, **29:1**  
Private class actions, **29:3**  
SEC enforcement focus, **29:1**  
SEC's ESG-related enforcement actions  
Climate, **29:2**  
Task Force, **29:2**  
SEC's proposed, regulations, **29:4**

**EQUITABLE FRAUD**

Generally, **8:242**

**EQUITY CROWDFUNDING**

See Crowdfunding (this index)

**EQUITYNET**

Crowdfunding, portals, description, **14:223**

**ETHICS CODES**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **8:483**

**EVASION OF FEDERAL INCOME TAXES**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

**EXCEPTIONS AND EXCLUSIONS**

Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:11, 22:13**

**EXCHANGES**

American Stock Exchange (this index)  
Arbitration (this index)  
Auction rate security (ARS), securities and market, **13:325**  
Delisting, backdating of stock options, **11:9**  
Direct-Impersonal Dealing (this index)  
Implied liabilities under SRO rules  
Generally, **14:62 et seq.**  
See also Self Regulatory Organizations (this index)  
Indirect-Impersonal Dealing (this index)

**EXCHANGES—Cont'd**

Interstate commerce, **11:7**  
National Association of Securities Dealers (this index)  
New York Stock Exchange (this index)  
Over The Counter Market (this index)

**EXCLUSIVITY OF FUNDS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**EXPANSION ERA**

See also Contraction Era (this index)  
Implied liability  
See also Implied Liability (this index)  
Rule 10b-5, **3:54 et seq.**  
SRO rules, **14:63 et seq.**  
Insider trading  
Issuers, **7:645**  
Regulation, **7:560**  
Tippee violations, **7:665**  
Tipping violations, **7:656**  
Issuers' insider trading, **7:645**  
New expansion era  
Generally, **3:32**  
Current status of IPA, **3:146**  
Overlapping remedies  
Generally, **3:69 et seq.**  
SA § 11, **3:70**  
SA § 12(2), **3:71**  
SEA § 9, **3:72**  
SEA § 18, **3:73**  
Rule 10b-5 history generally, **3:30**  
SRO rules, implied liabilities, **14:63 et seq.**  
State law, **3:184**

**EXPERT WITNESSES**

Arbitrations  
Claimants' experts, **15:34**  
Cross examination, **15:42**  
Respondents' experts, **15:45**  
Investment bankers  
Generally, **5:180**  
Challenging opinions of, **5:181**

**EXPUNGEMENT**

Arbitration, **15:70**

## INDEX

### **EXTENDED HOUR TRADING**

NASD risk disclosure requirements,  
**6:285**

### **EXTRATERRITORIALITY**

Jurisdiction, foreign cubed cases,  
**11:17 et seq.**  
Whistleblowers, protection, applica-  
tion of law, **22:31**

### **FACE-TO-FACE TRANSACTIONS**

See Direct-Personal Dealing (this  
index)

### **FAIRFIELD GREENWICH GROUP**

Madoff feeder funds, **20:17**

### **FAIR FUNDS**

Injunctions, victim access to penalty,  
**13:116**

### **FAIRNESS**

See also Unfair Terms (this index)  
Rule 10b-5 as fairness rule, **12:5,**  
**12:13**  
Tender offer fairness, Congressional  
intent, **6:19**

### **FAIR SHARE LIABILITY**

See Proportionate Liability (this  
index)

### **FALSE INFORMATION**

Attorneys (this index)  
Dissemination of material false infor-  
mation, liability for, *Lorenzo v.*  
*SEC*, **8:346**  
Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### **FAMILY MEMBERS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

### **FEDERAL AGENCIES**

SEC investigations, information shar-  
ing by Office of Market Intel-  
ligence, **20:14**

### **FEDERAL ARBITRATION ACT**

Generally, **15:54 et seq.**  
See also Arbitration (this index)

### **FEDERAL SECURITIES CODE**

American Law Institute proposal,  
**1:23**

### **FEDERAL SENTENCING GUIDELINES**

Insiders and inside trading, Raj  
Rajaratnam criminal case, **21:29**  
to **21:31**

### **FEEDER FUNDS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2, 20:16 et**  
**seq.**

### **FEES**

Attorneys' Fees (this index)  
Madoff feeder funds, **20:24**

### **FIDUCIARY DUTIES**

Breach, insider trading and misappro-  
priation theory, **7:315**  
Creation of relationship  
Generally, **7:567**  
Advisers to issuers, **7:569**  
Business associates of issuers,  
**7:570**  
Law characterizing relation, **7:573**  
Position with issuer, **7:568**  
Prior dealings, creation by, **7:571**  
Securities professionals, **7:572**

#### Insider trading

Generally, **7:561 et seq.**  
Breach, **7:315**  
Contraction era, **7:576**  
Creation  
Generally, **7:567**  
Advisers to issuers, **7:569**  
Business associates of issuers,  
**7:570**  
Law characterizing relation,  
**7:573**  
Position with issuer, **7:568**  
Prior dealings, creation by,  
**7:571**  
Securities professionals, **7:572**

Criteria, **7:561 et seq.**

Expansion era, **7:574**

Issuers, **7:565**

Market insiders, **7:575**

#### Scienter

Private actions, **7:498**

Tippers, **7:381**

Trading insiders, **7:377**

Trading tippees, **7:385**

**FIDUCIARY DUTIES—Cont'd**

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - With whom must relationship exist, **7:562 et seq.**
- Investment Bankers (this index)
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**
- Private securities litigation, cyber breaches, **26:8**
- Reliance on relationship, **8:500**
- Suitability claims, **14:202**
- Suitability rules, **14:206**

**FILIP DECISION**

- SEC investigations, attorney-client privilege, **13:50 et seq.**

**FINANCIAL ABUSE**

- See Senior Investor Financial Abuse (this index)

**FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING STANDARDS BOARD (FASB)**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:60**

**FINANCIAL CRISIS INQUIRY COMMISSION**

- Subprime mortgage crisis, Commission report, **13:333**

**FINANCIAL EXPERTS**

- See Audit Committees (this index)
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act standards, **8:459**

**FINANCIAL INCENTIVES**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**FINANCIAL INDUSTRY REGULATORY AUTHORITY (FINRA)**

- Creation, **14:183**
- Suitability rules, **14:185**
  - FINRA Rule 2090, know your customer, **14:191**
  - FINRA Rule 2111, **14:186**
  - FINRA Rule 2111(a), **14:187, 14:188**
  - Institutional investors, **14:190**
  - Know your customer, **14:191**
  - Recommendations to customers, **14:187**

**FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

- Backdating of stock options, **18:1 et seq.**
- Officers' certifications and Sarbanes-Oxley Act liability, **3:169**
- Pro forma financial information, Sarbanes-Oxley Act liabilities based on, **3:170**

**FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

- Backdating of stock options, wider ramifications, **18:6**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5 to 20:7**

**FLEXIBLE FUND ANNUITIES**

- What is a security, **5:25**

**FOIA REQUESTS**

- Generally, **13:226**
- SEC investigations, **13:68**

**FORCED SALES**

- Buyer-seller requirements, **5:120**

**FORECASTS**

- Generally, **7:5 et seq.**
- Forward Looking Information (this index)
- Predictions (this index)
- Projections (this index)

**FOREIGN ACCOUNTS**

- Insiders' use of, **7:177**

**FOREIGN AND INTERNATIONAL TRANSACTIONS**

- Conduct or effect, **11:19, 11:24**
- Conflict with foreign law, **11:31**
- Discerning intent, **11:23**
- Domestic contacts, **11:36**
- Enforcement, **11:37**
- Foreign cubed case
  - Generally, **11:16**
  - American actors, **11:30**
  - Clear statement, **11:35**
  - Conduct or effect, **11:24**
  - Conduct or effect test, **11:19**
  - Conflict with foreign law, **11:31**
  - Discerning intent, **11:23**
  - Domestic contacts, **11:36**
  - Evolution of jurisdictional tests, **11:33**

## INDEX

### FOREIGN AND INTERNATIONAL TRANSACTIONS—Cont'd

Foreign cubed case—Cont'd  
Extraterritoriality, specificity,  
**11:29**  
Facts in Morrison, **11:20**  
Focus of securities laws purpose,  
**11:37**  
Foreign law, conflict with, **11:31**  
Foreign references in statute, **11:28**  
Gaps in legislature, **11:34**  
Holding in Morrison case, **11:17**  
Importance of domestic contacts,  
**11:36**  
Intent, **11:23**  
International context, **11:18**  
Judges, role, **11:26**  
Judicial filling of legislative gaps,  
**11:34**  
Jurisdictional tests, **11:33**  
Justice Steven's concurrence,  
**11:32 to 11:37**  
Legislators, role, **11:26**  
Morrison case, **11:17, 11:20**  
Presumptions, **11:22, 11:35**  
Prior law, **11:19**  
References in statute, **11:28**  
Rule 10b-5, **11:27**  
Scalia's debate with Steven's  
concurrence, **11:25**  
SEA § 10(b), generally, **11:27**  
SEC enforcement of authority,  
**11:37**  
Securities laws purpose and focus,  
**11:36**  
Specificity of extraterritoriality,  
**11:29**  
Subject matter jurisdiction, **11:21**  
Intent, **11:23**  
International transactions, generally,  
**11:172 et seq.**  
Jurisdictional means, **11:16**  
Jurisdictional tests, **11:33**  
Morrison case, generally, **11:16 to**  
**11:37**  
Presumptions, **11:22, 11:35**  
References in statute, **11:28**  
SEC enforcement of authority, **11:37**

### FOREIGN AND INTERNATIONAL TRANSACTIONS—Cont'd

Specificity of extraterritoriality, **11:29**  
Statement clarity, foreign cubed case,  
**11:35**  
Statutory bases, international transac-  
tions, **11:173**  
Subject matter jurisdiction, **11:21**

### FOREIGN CITIZENS

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act  
(FCPA), allegations and settle-  
ments, **19:12**

### FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES ACT (FCPA)

Generally, **19:1 et seq.**  
Accounting practices, **19:5, 19:9**  
Actions against private individuals,  
members of Congress, and  
foreign citizens, **19:12**  
Affirmative defenses  
Generally, **19:3 to 19:5**  
Accounting provisions, **19:5**  
Foreign law, **19:3**  
Lodging expenses, **19:4**  
Travel expenses, **19:4**  
Allegations and settlements  
Generally, **19:6**  
Bookkeeping in multiple sets, **19:9**  
Boxes of cash and two sets of  
books, **19:9**  
Chinese way of doing business,  
**19:11**  
Congress, actions against  
members, **19:12**  
Foreign citizens, actions against,  
**19:12**  
Ineffective bribe, **19:8**  
Initial public offering, foreign  
company and pervasive fraud,  
**19:10**  
Multiple sets of books, **19:9**  
Pervasive fraud, **19:10**  
Private individuals, actions against,  
**19:12**  
UN Iraqi Oil-for-Food program,  
**19:7**  
Background of Act, **19:1**  
Basis for private actions, **19:13**

**FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES**

**ACT (FCPA)—Cont'd**

- Bookkeeping in multiple sets, **19:9**
- Boxes of cash and two sets of books, **19:9**
- Bribe, effectiveness, **19:8**
- Chinese way of doing business, **19:11**
- Compliance programs, **19:14**
- Congress, actions against members, **19:12**
- Costs and expenses, **19:4**
- Developments in enforcement, **19:16**
- Due diligence, **19:15**
- Effectiveness of bribe, **19:8**
- Enforcement, recent trends, currents, and developments, **19:16**
- Exception, **19:2**
- Expense of travel and lodging, affirmative defense, **19:4**
- Foreign citizens, actions against, **19:12**
- Foreign law as affirmative defense, **19:3**
- Grease payments as statutory exception, **19:2**
- Initial public offering, foreign company and pervasive fraud, **19:10**
- Lodging expenses, affirmative defense, **19:4**
- Mergers and acquisitions, mitigation of risks, **19:15**
- Mitigation of risks in mergers and acquisitions, **19:15**
- Multiple sets of books, **19:9**
- Pervasive fraud, **19:10**
- Private actions, **19:13**
- Private individuals, actions against, **19:12**
- Recent trends, currents, and developments in enforcement, **19:16**
- Risks in mergers and acquisitions, mitigation, **19:15**
- Settlements. Allegations and settlements, above
- Statutory accounting provisions, affirmative defense, **19:5**
- Statutory affirmative defenses. Affirmative defenses, above

**FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES**

**ACT (FCPA)—Cont'd**

- Statutory exception, **19:2**
- Travel and lodging expenses, affirmative defense, **19:4**
- Undisclosed payments, generally, **19:1 et seq.**
- UN Iraqi Oil-for-Food program, **19:7**
- U.S. Congress, actions against members, **19:12**
- Written foreign law as affirmative defense, **19:3**

**FOREIGN CORRUPT PRACTICES**

**ACT UNIT**

- SEC investigations, **20:12**

**FOREIGN COUNTRIES**

- Whistleblowers, protection, application of law, **22:31**

**FOREIGN LAW**

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), affirmative defense, **19:3**

**FOREIGN TRANSACTIONS**

- See Foreign and International Transactions (this index)

**FORESEEABILITY**

- Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:334**

**FORWARD LOOKING**

**INFORMATION**

- Generally, **7:5 et seq.**
- See also Predictions; Projections (this index)
- Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
- Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
- Definition, **7:25**
- Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
- Forecasts distinguished, **7:5**
- Information types, **7:2**
- Later disclosures, **7:30**
- Misrepresentations
  - Generally, **7:5**
  - Analyst projections, **7:9**
  - Company projections, **7:8**

## INDEX

### FORWARD LOOKING

#### INFORMATION—Cont'd

- Misrepresentations—Cont'd
- Predictions and projection disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:10 et seq.**
  - Capital resources, **7:15**
  - Liquidity, **7:14**
  - With MD&A requirement
    - Administrative enforcement, **7:13**
    - Private actions, **7:17**
  - Operation results, **7:16**
  - Private actions on MD&A requirements, **7:17**
  - With SEC encouragement, **7:12**
  - Without SEC rule, **7:11**
- Pleading, **11:132**
- Predictions distinguished, **7:5**
- Projections distinguished, **7:5**
- Readily available cautionary statements
  - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
  - SEC filings, **7:33**
  - Timing, **7:32**
- Restrictions on disclosures, **7:18**
- Safe harbor
  - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Background, **7:20**
  - Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**
- PSLRA
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Corrections, **7:45**

### FORWARD LOOKING

#### INFORMATION—Cont'd

- Safe harbor—Cont'd
  - PSLRA—Cont'd
    - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
    - Discovery stays, **7:44**
    - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
    - Eligible makers, **7:37**
    - Exclusions, **7:40**
    - Expandability, **7:41**
    - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
    - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
    - Later disclosures, **7:30**
    - Motion practice, **7:43**
    - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
    - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
    - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
    - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
    - Readily available cautionary statements
      - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
      - SEC filings, **7:33**
      - Timing, **7:32**
    - Scope of Act, **7:24**
    - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
    - Update duty, **7:45**
  - SA Rule 175, **7:21**
  - SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
  - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
  - SA Rule 175, **7:21**
  - SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
  - SEC, traditional position, **7:18**
  - Types of information, **7:2**
- ### FRAUD
- Accounting, **13:112**
  - Common law fraud. See Common Law Fraud (this index)
  - Crowdfunding, potential, **14:209, 14:212**
  - Cybersecurity (this index)
  - Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:10**

**FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Foreign cubed cases. See Foreign and International Transactions (this index)
- Fraud on the market theory (FOMT). See Reliance (this index)
- Fraud to enter the market theory (FEMT). See Reliance (this index)
- Global fraud. Madoff Ponzi Scheme (this index)
- Indirect-Impersonal Dealing (this index)
- Madoff Ponzi Scheme (this index)
- Mutual fund violations, broker fraud, **17:8**
- Ponzi scheme. Madoff Ponzi Scheme (this index)
- Subprime mortgage crisis, DOJ suit against Standard and Poor's, **13:338**
- Suitability claims, consumer fraud, **14:204**

**FRONT RUNNING**

- Generally, **7:139 et seq.**
- Court cases, **7:142**
- SEC interpretations
  - Generally, **7:140**
  - Decisions, **7:142**
- SRO interpretations
  - Criticisms, **7:141**
  - Decisions, **7:142**

**FULL DISCLOSURE**

- See Disclosure (this index)

**FUND DISTRIBUTION PAYMENTS**

- Mutual fund violations, sales practices, **17:14**

**GAAP**

- Private actions, materiality, **8:42, 8:44**

**GALLEON GROUP HEDGE FUND**

- Criminal insider trading, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:1 et seq.**

**GIFTS**

- Insiders and insider trading, **7:396**

**GLOBAL FRAUD**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:1 et seq.**

**GOOD FAITH**

- See also Bad Faith (this index)
- Control person liability defense, **8:393 et seq.**
- Effect of good or bad faith generally, **8:216 et seq.**
- Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:53**
- Plaintiff's in Rule 10b-5 cases, **8:254**
- SA § 15, **8:393 et seq.**
- SEA § 20(a), **8:393 et seq.**
- SEC, false reports to, **8:150**

**GOVERNING LAW**

- Jurisdiction, foreign cubed cases, **11:31**

**GOVERNMENT ENFORCEMENT**

- See Administrative Enforcement (this index)

**GRAND JURIES**

- See Criminal Enforcement (this index)

**GREASE PAYMENTS**

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:2**

**HACKING**

- Cybersecurity, **26:1 et seq.**

**HEDGE FUNDS**

- Backdating of stock options and delayed filings, **18:9**
- Criminal insider trading, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:1 et seq.**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:1, 20:2**
- Mutual fund violations, **17:21**

**HISTORY**

- Crowdfunding, **14:210 et seq.**

**HOLMES CASE**

- Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:567**

**HOWEY TEST**

- What is a security, **5:22**

## INDEX

### IMPLIED LIABILITY

Generally, **3:54 et seq., 8:242 et seq.**  
Absolute liability, **8:243**  
Actual knowledge of plaintiff, **8:244**  
Administrative interpretation, Rule 10b-5, **3:62, 3:82**  
ALI Federal Securities Code, **3:154**  
Analysts' certifications, actions based on, **3:168**  
Attorneys, implied private actions against under Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:165**  
Audit committee financial experts, **3:166**  
Audit records, actions based on, **3:171**  
Broker-dealers, actions against  
Generally, **14:73 et seq.**  
Causation, **14:91 et seq.**  
Connection requirement, **14:94**  
Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**  
Damages, **14:95 et seq.**  
Elements of action, **14:74**  
Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**  
Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**  
Justifiable reliance, **14:89**  
Margin rules  
Generally, **14:59**  
Arbitration, use in, **14:61**  
Court cases, **14:60**  
SEA § 7, **14:59**  
Market misrepresentations, **14:78**  
Market nondisclosures, **14:79**  
Materiality, **14:82**  
Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**  
Mitigation of damages, **14:102**  
Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**  
Opinions, **14:81**  
Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**  
Predictions, **14:81**  
Proximate cause, **14:92**  
Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**  
Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**  
Recommendations, **14:81**  
Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**  
Rescission  
Chasins measure, **14:97**

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

Broker-dealers, actions against  
—Cont'd  
Rescission—Cont'd  
Lost profits, **14:101**  
Nye measure, **14:101**  
Rolf measure, **14:100**  
Restitution, **14:104**  
Rule 10b-5  
Generally, **14:73 et seq.**  
Causation, **14:91 et seq.**  
Connection requirement, **14:94**  
Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**  
Damages, **14:95 et seq.**  
Elements of action, **14:74**  
Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**  
Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**  
Justifiable reliance, **14:89**  
Market misrepresentations, **14:78**  
Market nondisclosures, **14:79**  
Materiality, **14:82**  
Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**  
Mitigation of damages, **14:102**  
Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**  
Opinions, **14:81**  
Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**  
Predictions, **14:81**  
Proximate cause, **14:92**  
Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**  
Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**  
Recommendations, **14:81**  
Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**  
Rescission  
Chasins measure, **14:97**  
Lost profits, **14:101**  
Nye measure, **14:101**  
Rolf measure, **14:100**  
Restitution, **14:104**  
Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**  
Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**  
SRO rules  
Generally, **14:62 et seq.**  
Arbitration, **14:72**  
Buttrey doctrine, **14:65**  
Colonial Realty doctrine, **14:64**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealers, actions against
  - Cont'd
  - SRO rules—Cont'd
  - Contraction era, **14:71**
  - Court cases, **14:64 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **14:63 et seq.**
- Burden of proof
  - Generally, **8:255**
  - Scienter, **8:134**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:134**
- Causation, insider trading, **7:517**
- Checklists arguing IPA cases, **3:151 et seq.**
- Churning (this index)
- Congressional intent, Rule 10b-5, **3:56**
- Constructive fraud, **8:242**
- Contraction era
  - 10b-5 actions
    - Generally, **3:74 et seq.**
    - Administrative enforcement, supplement to, **3:81**
    - Administrative interpretation, **3:82**
    - Congressional intent, **3:76**
    - Cort v Ash, **3:95**
    - Flexibility to achieve remedial purpose, **3:88**
    - Judicial restraint, **3:85**
    - Legislative history, uses of, **3:90 et seq.**
    - Modes of interpretation, **3:86 et seq.**
    - Negative implication, **3:87**
    - Policies, **3:75**
    - Policy effectuation, **3:80**
    - Practicality, **3:83**
    - Reasons, **3:75**
    - Statutory jurisdictional grant, **3:79**
    - Statutory literalism, **3:89**
    - Statutory tort, **3:77**
    - Supplement to administrative enforcement, **3:81**
    - Vexatiousness, **3:84, 3:85**
    - Voidability, statutory, **3:78**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

- Contraction era—Cont'd
- Manipulation
  - Generally, **3:125 et seq.**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:129**
  - Documents excluded, **3:130**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**
  - Government securities, **3:127**
  - Municipal securities, **3:127**
  - OTC securities, **3:126**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**
  - Securities excluded, **3:126 et seq.**
  - Substantive elements, **3:132**
- Nullification test, **3:104**
- Overlapping remedies
  - Generally, **3:102 et seq.**
  - Comparison of elements of express and implied rights, **3:105**
- Defense strategies, **3:103**
- Exclusions, effect of, **3:108**
- Falsity vs scheme, **3:106**
- Nullification test, **3:104**
- SA § 11
  - Generally, **3:109 et seq.**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:112**
  - Documents excluded, **3:113**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**
  - Securities excluded, **3:110**
  - Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**
  - Transactions excluded, **3:110**
- SA § 12(2)
  - Generally, **3:116 et seq.**
  - Commercial paper, **3:119**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:121**
  - Documents excluded, **3:122**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:124**
  - Government securities, **3:118**
  - Municipal securities, **3:117**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:120**
  - Securities excluded, **3:117 et seq.**

## INDEX

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

- Contraction era—Cont'd
  - Overlapping remedies—Cont'd
    - SA § 12(2)—Cont'd
      - Substantive elements, **3:124**
    - SEA § 9
      - Generally, **3:125 et seq.**
      - Defendants excluded, **3:129**
      - Documents excluded, **3:130**
      - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**
      - Government securities, **3:127**
      - Municipal securities, **3:127**
      - OTC securities, **3:126**
      - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**
      - Securities excluded, **3:126 et seq.**
      - Substantive elements, **3:132**
    - SEA § 18
      - Generally, **3:133 et seq.**
      - Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**
      - Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**
      - Defendants excluded, **3:141**
      - Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**
      - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**
      - Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**
      - Fischman rationale, **3:135**
      - Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**
      - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**
      - Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**
      - Scienter, **3:135**
      - Securities excluded, **3:139**
      - Substantive elements, **3:145**
    - Statutory cumulativity, **3:107**
    - Supreme Court approach, **3:104**
  - Registered offerings
    - Generally, **3:109 et seq.**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:112**
    - Documents excluded, **3:113**
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

- Contraction era—Cont'd
  - Registered offerings—Cont'd
    - Securities excluded, **3:110**
    - Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**
    - Transactions excluded, **3:110**
  - SEC filings, reliance on
    - Generally, **3:133 et seq.**
    - Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**
    - Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:141**
    - Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**
    - Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**
    - Fischman rationale, **3:135**
    - Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**
    - Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**
    - Scienter, **3:135**
    - Securities excluded, **3:139**
    - Substantive elements, **3:145**
  - Contribution (this index)
  - Contributory negligence, **8:253**
  - Current status of IPA, **3:146 et seq.**
  - Defense strategies, **3:103**
  - Disclosure, **3:60, 3:80**
  - Equitable fraud, **8:242**
  - Ethical standards, **3:60, 3:80**
  - Expansion era
    - Generally, **3:54 et seq.**
    - Manipulation, **3:72**
    - New expansion era, **3:146**
  - Overlapping remedies
    - Generally, **3:69 et seq.**
    - SA § 11, **3:70**
    - SA § 12(2), **3:71**
    - SEA § 9, **3:72**
    - SEA § 18, **3:73**
  - Registered offerings, **3:70**
  - SEC filings, reliance on, **3:73**
  - Expenses, security for, **3:175**
  - Federal vs state private actions, relative advantages, **3:200**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

Financial report certifications,  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:169**

Fraud on the market  
Generally, **8:520 et seq.**  
See also Reliance (this index)

Good faith of plaintiff, **8:254**

Implied private actions (IPA) generally, **3:53**

Indemnification, **9:76**

Innocent defendants, **8:243**

Insider trading  
Generally, **7:491 et seq.**  
Amount of liability, **7:521 et seq.**  
Ancillary relief, **7:525**  
Background, **7:501**  
Causation, **7:517**  
Contemporaneous traders, actions by, **7:503 et seq.**  
Control persons, actions against, **7:512**  
Convertibles traders, suits by, **7:508**  
Damages, **7:521 et seq.**  
Elements of action, **7:514 et seq.**  
Fiduciary theory, **7:498**  
Market, relation of parties to, **7:493 et seq.**  
Misappropriation theory, **7:499**  
Opposite side traders  
Damages, **7:522**  
Elements of action, **7:518**  
Relations of parties to market, **7:494**  
Suits by, **7:504**  
Option traders, suits by, **7:507**  
Parties defendant, **7:509**  
Relation to other liabilities, **7:524**  
Reliance, **7:516**  
Rule 10b-5, **7:497 et seq.**  
Rule 14e-3, **7:500**  
Same side traders  
Damages, **7:523**  
Elements of action, **7:519**  
Relations of parties to market, **7:495**  
Suits by, **7:505**  
Standing, **7:520**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

Insider trading—Cont'd  
Tippers, actions against, **7:511**  
Traders, actions against, **7:510**  
Who can be sued, **7:509**  
Who can sue, **7:502**

Insurance, **9:76**

Interpretation  
Generally, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et seq.**  
Expansion era, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et seq.**  
Flexibility to achieve remedial purpose  
Contraction era, **3:88**  
Expansion era, **3:66**  
Legislative history, use of  
Contraction era, **3:90 et seq.**  
Expansion era, **3:68**  
Literalism, statutory  
Contraction era, **3:89**  
Expansion era, **3:67**  
Negative implication  
Contraction era, **3:87**  
Expansion era, **3:65**  
Remedial purpose, flexibility to achieve  
Contraction era, **3:88**  
Expansion era, **3:66**  
Statutory literalism  
Contraction era, **3:89**  
Expansion era, **3:67**

Investment Advisers Act, **3:155**

Investor protection considerations, **3:60, 3:80**

Joint and Several Liability (this index)

Jurisdiction  
Generally, **11:2 et seq.**  
Adviser activities, **11:15**  
Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**  
Broker-dealer activities, **11:15**  
Check clearance as interstate activity, **11:11**  
Class actions, **11:42**  
Defenses, **11:41**  
Derivative suits, **11:43**  
Foreign transactions, **11:16**

## INDEX

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

#### Jurisdiction—Cont'd

- Fraud, interstate nature of, **11:9**
  - International transactions, **11:16**
  - Interstate commerce, **11:3**
  - Local telephone use, **11:4**
  - Mails, use of, **11:6**
  - Misconduct, relation of
    - jurisdictional means to
      - Generally, **11:8 et seq.**
    - Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**
    - Check clearances, **11:11**
    - Fraud, **11:9**
    - Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**
    - Transaction, **11:10, 11:12**
  - Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**
  - Pleading, **11:38**
  - Procedure, **11:39 et seq.**
  - Scope of commerce, **11:3**
  - Securities exchanges and interstate commerce, **11:7**
  - Statutory jurisdictional grant
    - Contraction era, **3:79**
    - Expansion era, **3:59**
  - Telephone use, **11:4**
  - Transactions, interstate, **11:10, 11:12**
- #### Jurisdictional grants, statutory
- Contraction era, **3:79**
  - Expansion era, **3:59**
- #### Limitation of actions
- Generally, **8:251, 11:61 et seq.**
  - See also Limitation of Actions (this index)
  - Court cases, **11:63 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **3:174**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:161, 11:92**
- #### Manipulation
- ##### Contraction era
- Generally, **3:125 et seq.**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:129**
  - Documents excluded, **3:130**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**
  - Government securities, **3:127**

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

#### Manipulation—Cont'd

##### Contraction era—Cont'd

- Municipal securities, **3:127**
  - OTC securities, **3:126**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**
  - Securities excluded, **3:126 et seq.**
  - Substantive elements, **3:132**
- ##### Expansion era, **3:72**
- #### Materiality
- Proxy fraud, **8:56**
  - SEA § 10, **8:55**
- #### Misrepresentation, plaintiff's knowledge of, **8:246**
- #### Modes of interpretation
- Expansion era, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et seq.**
- #### Negligence of plaintiff, **8:253**
- #### New expansion era, **3:146**
- #### Nondisclosure, plaintiff's knowledge, **8:245**
- #### Nullification test, **3:104**
- #### Officers' certifications of financial reports, **3:169**
- #### Overlapping remedies
- ##### Contraction era
- Generally, **3:102 et seq.**
  - Comparison of elements of express and implied rights, **3:105**
  - Defense strategies, **3:103**
  - Exclusions, effect of, **3:108**
  - Falsity vs scheme, **3:106**
  - Nullification test, **3:104**
- ##### SA § 11
- Generally, **3:109 et seq.**
  - Defendants excluded, **3:112**
  - Documents excluded, **3:113**
  - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**
  - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**
  - Securities excluded, **3:110**
  - Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**
  - Transactions excluded, **3:110**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

Overlapping remedies—Cont'd  
 Contraction era—Cont'd  
     SA § 12(2)  
         Generally, **3:116 et seq.**  
         Commercial paper, **3:119**  
         Defendants excluded, **3:121**  
         Documents excluded, **3:122**  
         Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:124**  
         Government securities, **3:118**  
         Municipal securities, **3:117**  
         Plaintiffs excluded, **3:120**  
         Securities excluded, **3:117 et seq.**  
         Substantive elements, **3:124**  
 SEA § 9  
     Generally, **3:125 et seq.**  
     Defendants excluded, **3:129**  
     Documents excluded, **3:130**  
     Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**  
     Government securities, **3:127**  
     Municipal securities, **3:127**  
     OTC securities, **3:126**  
     Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**  
     Securities excluded, **3:126 et seq.**  
     Substantive elements, **3:132**  
 SEA § 18  
     Generally, **3:133 et seq.**  
     Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**  
     Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**  
     Defendants excluded, **3:141**  
     Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**  
     Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**  
     Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**  
     Fischman rationale, **3:135**  
     Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**  
     Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**  
     Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**  
     Scienter, **3:135**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

Overlapping remedies—Cont'd  
 Contraction era—Cont'd  
     SEA § 18—Cont'd  
         Securities excluded, **3:139**  
         Substantive elements, **3:145**  
         Statutory cumulativeness, **3:107**  
         Supreme Court approach, **3:104**  
 Expansion era  
     Generally, **3:69 et seq.**  
     SA § 11, **3:70**  
     SA § 12(2), **3:71**  
     SEA § 9, **3:72**  
     SEA § 18, **3:73**  
 Nullification test, **3:104**  
 Parties  
     Proxy fraud, **8:284**  
     SEA § 14  
         Proxy fraud, **8:284**  
         Tender offer fraud, **8:285**  
     SEA § 15(c)(1), **8:286**  
     SEA § 18, **8:287**  
     Tender offer fraud, **8:285**  
 Penny Stock Sales (this index)  
 Plaintiff's knowledge  
     Generally, **8:244 et seq.**  
     Actual knowledge, **8:244**  
     Comparative knowledge, **8:249**  
     Constructive knowledge, **8:250**  
     Limitation of actions, **8:251**  
     Misrepresentation, **8:246**  
     Nondisclosure, **8:245**  
     Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**  
 Pleading  
     Generally, **8:257, 11:104 et seq.**  
     See also Private Actions (this index)  
     Broker-dealer fraud, **8:145**  
     Jurisdiction, **11:38**  
     Particularity, **11:114**  
     Pleading, **11:104**  
 Scienter  
     Broker-dealer fraud, **8:145**  
     Tender offer fraud, **8:138**  
 Policies  
     Effectuation, Rule 10b-5, **3:60, 3:80**  
     Rule 10b-5, **3:55**

## INDEX

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

- Practicality, expansion era, **3:63, 3:83**
- Private actions generally
  - Generally, **8:1 et seq.**
  - See also Private Actions (this index)
- Privity
  - Generally, **8:288 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **3:176**
- Pro forma financial information disclosures, **3:170**
- Proof
  - Generally, **8:256**
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief, **8:142**
  - Rule 10b-5, **3:177**
  - Scienter, **8:135, 8:142**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:135**
- Proportionate Liability (this index)
- Proxy fraud
  - Materiality, **8:56**
  - Scienter
    - Generally, **8:125 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:127**
    - Intent, **8:129**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:130**
    - Pleading, **8:131**
    - Proof, **8:128**
- Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**
- Registered offerings
  - Contraction era
    - Generally, **3:109 et seq.**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:112**
    - Documents excluded, **3:113**
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**
    - Securities excluded, **3:110**
    - Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**
    - Transactions excluded, **3:110**
  - Expansion era, **3:70**
- Regulation G liabilities, **3:170**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:484 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
  - Insider trading, **7:516**
- Remedies (this index)

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

- Remedies, Rule 10b-5, **3:178**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **3:54 et seq.**
  - Absorption principle, **3:173**
  - Administrative interpretation, **3:62, 3:82**
  - Clause 3, primacy of, **3:182**
  - Congressional intent, **3:56**
  - Current status of IPA, **3:146 et seq.**
  - Displacements within 10b-5, **3:181**
  - Expansion era, **3:54 et seq.**
  - Expenses, security for, **3:175**
  - Implied civil recovery, Rule 10b-5 without, **3:180**
  - Jurisdictional grant, statutory, **3:59, 3:79**
  - Limitations of actions, **3:174**
  - Modes of interpretation, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et seq.**
  - Overlaps within 10b-5, **3:181**
  - Policies
    - Generally, **3:55**
    - Effectuation, **3:60, 3:80**
  - Practicality, **3:63, 3:83**
  - Prevalence of rule, **3:179**
  - Privity requirements, **3:176**
  - Proof requirements, **3:177**
  - Reasons, **3:55**
  - Remedies, **3:178**
  - Security for expenses, **3:175**
  - Silent conduct, **3:182**
  - Statutory tort principles, **3:57, 3:77**
  - Supplement to government enforcement, **3:61, 3:81**
  - Voidability, statutory, **3:58**
- SA 17(a), **3:155**
- Sales fraud, parties
  - Generally, **8:274 et seq.**
  - Aider-abettors, **8:279**
  - Brokers, **8:276**
  - Buyers, **8:275**
  - Conspirators, **8:280**
  - Control persons, **8:281**
  - Insiders, **8:277**
  - Participants, **8:278**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act
  - Generally, **3:156 et seq.**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act—Cont'd
  - Analysts' certifications, actions based on, **3:168**
  - Attorneys, implied private actions against, **3:165**
  - Audit committee financial experts, **3:166**
  - Audit records, actions based on, **3:171**
  - Express actions negating IPA, **3:162**
  - Financial report certifications, **3:169**
  - History of enactment, **3:159**
  - Legislative intent, **3:158**
  - Limitation of actions, **3:161**
  - Off-balance sheet transactions, **3:167**
  - Officers' certifications of financial reports, **3:169**
  - Overview, **3:157**
  - Pro forma financial information, liabilities based on, **3:170**
  - Provisions adversely impacting IPA, **3:163**
  - Regulation G liabilities, **3:170**
  - Rejection of IPA, **3:161**
  - SEC rules and releases, **3:164 et seq.**
- Scienter
  - Broker-dealer fraud
    - Generally, **8:139 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:141**
    - Defendant's intent, **8:143**
    - Defendant's knowledge and belief
      - Generally, **8:140 et seq.**
      - Burden of proof, **8:141**
      - Proof, **8:142**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:144**
    - Pleading, **8:145**
    - Proof, **8:142**
  - Pleading, **8:131, 8:138, 8:145**
  - Proxy fraud
    - Generally, **8:125 et seq., 8:126 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:127**
    - Intent, **8:129**

**IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd**

- Scienter—Cont'd
  - Proxy fraud—Cont'd
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:130**
    - Pleading, **8:131**
    - Proof, **8:128**
  - Tender offer fraud
    - Defendant's intent, **8:136**
    - Defendant's knowledge and belief
      - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
      - Burden of proof, **8:134**
      - Proof, **8:135**
    - Intent, **8:136**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:137**
    - Pleading, **8:138**
  - SEA § 14, **8:132 et seq.**
  - SEC filings, reliance on
    - Contraction era
      - Generally, **3:133 et seq.**
      - Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**
      - Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**
      - Defendants excluded, **3:141**
      - Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**
      - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**
      - Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**
      - Fischman rationale, **3:135**
      - Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**
      - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**
      - Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**
      - Scienter, **3:135**
      - Securities excluded, **3:139**
      - Substantive elements, **3:145**
    - Expansion era, **3:73**
  - Security for expenses, **3:175**
  - Standing, **7:520**
  - Statutory tort principles
    - Contraction era, **3:77**
    - Expansion era, **3:57**
  - Strict liability, **8:243**
  - Suitability (this index)
  - Supplement to government enforcement, Rule 10b-5, **3:61, 3:81**
  - Supreme Court, **3:148**

## INDEX

### IMPLIED LIABILITY—Cont'd

- Tender offer fraud
  - Generally, **8:132 et seq.**
- Scienter
  - Defendant's intent, **8:136**
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:134**
    - Proof, **8:135**
  - Intent, **8:136**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:137**
  - Pleading, **8:138**
  - Standing to challenge, **6:124**
- Tests for implied rights
  - Generally, **3:100**
  - Prohibitory language, **3:101**
- Voidability, statutory
  - Contraction era, **3:78**
  - Expansion era, **3:58**

### IMPLIED PRIVATE ACTIONS (IPA)

- Generally, **3:53**
- See also Implied Liability (this index)

### INDEMNIFICATION

- Generally, **9:76, 12:11**

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING

- Generally, **7:1 et seq.**
- Accumulation of stock, manipulation by, **7:134**
- Actual knowledge and scienter, **8:172**
- Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**
- Aiding-abetting, **7:98**
- Analyst projections, **7:9**
- Antifraud provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:546**
- Bright line vs. substantial participation, **7:89**
- Business judgment standard, misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:50**
- Capping, **7:136**
- Causation, **7:76**
- Central Bank decision, **7:79, 7:85**
- Circular trading, **7:135**
- Company projections, **7:8**

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Cornering the market, **7:134**
- Criminal enforcement
  - Burden of proof, insider trading charges, **7:366**
  - Defenses to insider trading charges, generally, **7:350**
  - Double jeopardy limitations, insider trading charges, **7:443**
- Insiders
  - Generally, **7:460 et seq.**
  - Amount of penalties, **7:466**
  - Disgorgement, **7:465**
  - Judge or jury, **7:467**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:463**
  - Penalties, **7:466**
  - Restitution, **7:465**
  - RICO, **7:464**
  - Securities violations, **7:462**
- Insider trading
  - Generally, **7:415 et seq.**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:171**
- Insider trading charges
  - Burden of proof
    - Generally, **7:366**
    - Defenses, **7:369**
    - Institutions, **7:367**
  - Connection with requirement
    - Market transactions, **7:370**
    - Rule 10b-5, **7:370**
    - Rule 14e-3, **7:371**
    - Tender offers, **7:371**
  - Defenses
    - Generally, **7:350**
    - Amount defined, **7:355**
    - Binding contract defense, **7:351**
    - Burden of proof, **7:369**
    - Burden of proving, **7:369**
    - Common terms and issues, **7:355 et seq.**
    - Date defined, **7:357**
    - Delegation alternative to amount, price and date, **7:358**
    - Exclusiveness of defenses, **7:360**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

Criminal enforcement—Cont'd  
 Insider trading charges—Cont'd  
 Defenses—Cont'd  
     Institutional defenses, **7:361**  
     Instructions defense, **7:352**  
     Overriding limitations, **7:359**  
     Price defined, **7:356**  
     Relation to other laws, **7:362**  
     Systematic plans defense,  
         **7:353**  
     Tracking plans defense, **7:354**  
 Fiduciary breach, **7:315**  
 Institutional defenses, **7:361**  
 Institutions, burden of proof,  
     **7:367**  
 Motion practice, **7:365**  
 Parties, **7:363**  
 Pleading  
     Generally, **7:364**  
     Scienter, **7:398**  
 Procedural aspects, **7:363 et**  
     **seq.**  
 Proof, **7:368**  
 Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**  
 RICO, **7:414, 7:464**  
 Scienter  
     Generally, **7:372 et seq.**  
     Fiduciary theory  
         Tippers, **7:381**  
         Trading insiders, **7:377**  
         Trading tippees, **7:385**  
     Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**  
     Martha Stewart case  
         Generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
         Acquittal, **7:411**  
         Background of case, **7:404**  
         Imclone stock sale, **7:404**  
         Indictment, **7:405**  
         Inferences from evidence,  
             **7:409**  
         Intent inference test, **7:410**  
         Limits on argument and  
             evidence, **7:407**  
         Misrepresentation, **7:406**  
         Sufficiency of evidence  
             test, **7:408**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

Criminal enforcement—Cont'd  
 Insider trading charges—Cont'd  
 Scienter—Cont'd  
     Misappropriation theory  
         Tippers, **7:382**  
         Trading insiders, **7:378**  
         Trading tippees, **7:386**  
     Pleading, **7:398**  
     Proof, **7:399 et seq.**  
     Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**  
     Rule 14e-3, **7:412**  
     Tippers  
         Generally, **7:379 et seq.**  
         Proof, **7:401**  
     Trading insiders  
         Generally, **7:375 et seq.**  
         Proof, **7:400**  
     Trading tippees  
         Generally, **7:383 et seq.**  
         Proof, **7:402**  
     Tippers, **7:379 et seq.**  
 Mail and wire fraud  
     Generally, **7:171, 7:463**  
     Scienter, **7:413**  
     Motion practice, **7:365**  
     Penalty actions, **7:438 et seq.**  
     Pleadings, **7:364**  
     Quantum of proof, **7:366**  
 Cross trading manipulation, **7:135**  
 Curtailing scheme to defraud. Fraud,  
     below  
 Defenses to insider trading charges  
     Generally, **7:350**  
     Amount defined, **7:355**  
     Binding contract defense, **7:351**  
     Burden of proof, **7:369**  
     Common terms and issues, **7:355**  
         **et seq.**  
     Date defined, **7:357**  
     Delegation alternative to amount,  
         price and date, **7:358**  
     Exclusiveness of defenses, **7:360**  
     Institutional defenses, **7:361**  
     Instructions defense, **7:352**  
     Overriding limitations, **7:359**  
     Price defined, **7:356**

## INDEX

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Defenses to insider trading charges—Cont'd
  - Relation to other laws, **7:362**
  - Systematic plans defense, **7:353**
  - Tracking plans defense, **7:354**
- Depressing price manipulations, **7:124**
- Derivatives, see also Derivatives Fraud (this index)
- Direct and indirect dealings, **4:1, 7:91, 7:108, 7:116**
- Disclosure corrections
  - How long is correction necessary, **6:326**
  - What makes correction necessary, **6:322**
- Due diligence, consideration of in misrepresentation claims, **7:52**
- Enron case, **7:87**
- Exemption provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:548**
- Fiduciary breach, **7:315**
- Fifth Circuit, Enron case, **7:87**
- First Circuit, Lernout case, **7:106**
- Foreign law, insiders, **7:201**
- Fraud
  - Generally, **7:84 to 7:620**
  - Bright line vs. substantial participation, **7:89**
  - Central Bank decision, **7:79, 7:85**
  - Creation of misrepresentation, **7:90**
  - Curtailing scheme to defraud, generally, **7:75 et seq.**
  - Directly and indirectly, **7:91, 7:108, 7:116**
  - Fifth Circuit, Enron case, **7:87**
  - First Circuit, Lernout case, **7:106**
  - Group scienler, **7:99**
  - Group violations, **7:92, 7:95**
  - Historical perspective, **7:81**
  - Insider defendants, **7:102**
  - Liability, scope of, **7:96**
  - Manipulation vs. scheme, **7:113**
  - Misrepresentation vs. scheme, **7:88, 7:110, 7:112**

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Fraud—Cont'd
    - Misrepresentation vs. scheme revisited, **7:115**
    - Ninth Circuit, Homestore case, **7:101**
    - Outsider defendants, **7:103**
    - Participation, **7:116**
    - Primary liability vs. aiding-abetting, **7:98**
    - Primary violators, **7:104, 7:109, 7:110, 7:114**
    - Private actions for schemes, **7:105**
  - PSLRA
    - Application of, **7:97**
    - Impact of, **7:86**
  - Reliance, **7:76 to 7:78, 7:80**
  - Scheme to defraud, generally, **7:84 et seq.**
  - SEC authority, **7:93**
  - Secondary actors, **7:104, 7:114**
  - Second Circuit, Parmalat case, **7:111**
  - SEC view of reliance, **7:77, 7:80**
  - Specific violations, **7:100**
  - Stoneridge amici, **7:83**
  - Stoneridge impact, **7:82**
  - Supreme Court, Zandford case, **7:117**
  - Zone and reliance permitted, **7:78**
- ### Front running manipulation
- Generally, **7:139 et seq.**
  - Court cases, **7:142**
  - SEC interpretations
    - Generally, **7:140**
    - Decisions, **7:142**
  - SRO interpretations
    - Generally, **7:140**
    - Criticisms, **7:141**
    - Decisions, **7:142**
    - Insider trading, **7:168**
  - Good faith, consideration of in misrepresentation claims, **7:53**
  - Group scienler, **7:99**
  - Guidelines for information releases, **7:54**
  - Homestore case, **7:101**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

- Information release guidelines, **7:54**
- Information types, **7:2**
- Inside trading
  - See also Insiders and Insider Trading (this index)
  - Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**
  - Benefit to insider-tipper, **7:627**
  - Fraud, **7:102**
  - Information, **7:4**
  - Misappropriation theory of liability
    - Generally, **7:577**
    - Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**
    - Close family relationships, **7:587**
    - Connection element, **7:597**
    - Connection with transaction, **7:680**
    - Court cases, **7:582 et seq.**
    - Enforcement actions, **7:578**
    - Family relationships, **7:587**
    - Mail and wire fraud, **7:594**
    - Private actions, **7:579, 7:603**
    - Rule 10b5-2, **7:585 et seq.**
    - SEC v. Mark Cuban, stress test for misappropriation theory, generally, **7:604 to 7:622**
    - Shared confidences, **7:590**
  - Regulation FD disclosure, below
  - Shared confidences, **7:590**
- Tippees
  - Generally, **7:623**
  - Benefit to insider-tipper, **7:627**
  - Dirks background, **7:625**
  - Family benefit to, **7:630**
  - Fiduciary breach requirement, **7:626**
  - Friends, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Need for fiduciary benefit, **7:626**
  - Pecuniary benefit, **7:628**
  - Receipt in fiduciary breach, **7:623**
  - Relations, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Reputational benefit, **7:629**
  - Tip defined, **7:624**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

- Intent, consideration of in misrepresentation claims, **7:53**
- Lernout case, **7:106**
- Mail and wire fraud, **7:463**
- Manipulation
  - Generally, **7:118 et seq.**
  - Accumulation of stock, **7:134**
  - Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**
  - Capping, **7:136**
  - Circular trading, **7:135**
  - Cornering the market, **7:134**
  - Cross trading, **7:135**
  - Definition, **7:119**
  - Depressing prices, **7:124**
  - Federal securities laws, **7:120**
  - Fraud, scheme, **7:113**
  - Front running
    - Generally, **7:139 et seq.**
    - Court cases, **7:142**
    - SEC interpretations
      - Generally, **7:140**
      - Decisions, **7:142**
    - SRO interpretations
      - Generally, **7:140**
      - Criticisms, **7:141**
      - Decisions, **7:142**
      - Insider trading, **7:168**
  - Margin requirements, parking to avoid, **7:148**
  - Marking the close, **7:131**
  - Matched orders, **7:121**
  - Painting the tape, **7:132**
  - Parking
    - Generally, **7:143 et seq.**
    - Capital requirements, use to avoid, **7:147**
    - Control fights, use in, **7:146**
    - Definitions, **7:144**
    - Margin requirements
      - Parking to avoid, **7:148**
      - Use to avoid, **7:148**
    - Record keeping violations, **7:149**
    - Tax evasion uses, **7:150**
  - Pegging, **7:136**
  - Raising prices, **7:124**

INDEX

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

Manipulation—Cont'd  
Rule 10b-5  
Generally, **7:130 et seq.**  
Accumulation of stock, **7:134**  
Capping, **7:136**  
Circular trading, **7:135**  
Control, **7:138**  
Cornering the market, **7:134**  
Cross trading, **7:135**  
Domination, **7:138**  
Front running, above  
Marking the close, **7:131**  
Painting the tape, **7:132**  
Parking, above  
Pegging, **7:136**  
Short selling, **7:137**  
Successive activity price  
manipulations, **7:133**  
SEA § 9(a)(1), **7:121**  
SEA § 9(a)(2)  
Generally, **7:122 et seq.**  
Actual or apparent trading,  
**7:124**  
Depressing prices, **7:124**  
Purpose, **7:125**  
Raising prices, **7:124**  
Series of transactions, **7:123**  
SEA § 9(a)(3), **7:126**  
SEA § 9(a)(4), **7:126**  
SEA § 9(a)(5), **7:126**  
SEA § 9(a)(6), **7:127**  
SEA § 9(b), **7:128**  
SEA § 9(e), **7:129**  
Short selling, **7:137**  
Successive activity price manipula-  
tions, **7:133**  
Wash sales, **7:121**  
Margin requirements, parking to  
avoid, **7:148**  
Market-informing responsibilities,  
**12:7**  
Marking the close manipulations,  
**7:131**  
Matched order manipulations, **7:121**  
Mediation, **15:69**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

Method of disclosure, Regulation FD,  
**7:544**  
Misappropriation by insiders  
Generally, **7:577**  
Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**  
Arguments of parties on appeal,  
**7:619**  
Close family relationships, **7:587**  
Conclusion of Cuban case, **7:622**  
Confidentiality, **7:611**  
Connection element, **7:597**  
Connection with transaction, **7:680**  
Court cases, **7:582 et seq.**  
Cuban responds to charges, **7:607**  
Disclosure, trading with impunity,  
**7:609**  
District court ruling in favor of  
Cuban, **7:616**  
Enforcement actions, **7:578**  
Family relationships, **7:587**  
Federal charges filed by Commis-  
sion, **7:606**  
Five law professors file brief amici  
curiae in support of Cuban's  
motion, **7:615**  
Lack of agreement by Cuban not to  
trade, **7:617**  
Limitation of Rule 10b-5 to family  
and other personal relation-  
ships, **7:613**  
Mail and wire fraud, **7:594**  
Mark Cuban and Commission as  
players, **7:605**  
Motion to dismiss, **7:610**  
Pre-emptive strike against applica-  
tion of SEC Rule 10b5-  
2(b)(1), **7:612**  
Private actions, **7:579, 7:603**  
Reexamination of development of  
misappropriation theory,  
**7:608**  
Relevancy of Cuban's opinion,  
**7:621**  
Response by SEC to Cuban's  
motion, **7:614**  
Response to charges by Cuban,  
**7:607**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

- Misappropriation by insiders—Cont'd
  - Rule 10b5-2, **7:585 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b5-2 evaluation by District Court, **7:618**
  - SEC v. Mark Cuban, stress test for misappropriation theory, generally, **7:604 to 7:622**
  - Shared confidences, **7:590**
  - Sufficiency of SEC allegations of misappropriation, **7:617**
  - Telephone calls, evaluation, **7:620**
  - Trading with impunity, **7:609**
- Misrepresentations
  - Generally, **7:5, 7:46 et seq.**
  - See also Forward Looking Information (this index)
  - Analyst projections, **7:9**
  - Business judgment standard, **7:50**
  - Company projections, **7:8**
  - Creation of misrepresentation, **7:90**
  - Due diligence, **7:52**
  - Earnings, **7:47**
  - GAAP violations
    - Generally, **7:55 et seq.**
    - Auditor violation, **7:70**
    - Court decisions, generally, **7:62 et seq.**
    - Enforcement cases, **7:65, 7:71**
    - Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB), **7:60**
  - Fraud
    - Fraud without GAAP violation, **7:63**
    - GAAP violation with fraud, **7:66 to 7:71**
    - GAAP violation without fraud, **7:64, 7:65**
  - Judicial eyes, GAAP in judicial eyes, **7:57**
  - Non-GAAP financial measures, **7:74**
  - PRO FORMAs (NGFM)s, **7:72 to 7:74**
  - Public communications not filed with SEC, **7:73**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

- Misrepresentations—Cont'd
- GAAP violations—Cont'd
  - Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (PCAOB), **7:61**
  - Red flags, **7:70**
  - Reg G, **7:73**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley restrictions on pro forma or non-GAAP financial information, **7:72**
  - Scienter, allegations supporting, **7:69**
  - SEC, **7:58, 7:59, 7:72 to 7:74**
  - Sources of GAAP, **7:59, 7:60, 7:61**
  - Statutes, GAAP in statutes, **7:56**
- Generally accepted accounting principles. GAAP violations, above
- Good faith, **7:53**
- Guidelines for information releases, **7:54**
- Information release guidelines, **7:54**
- Intent, **7:53**
- Negligence, **7:52**
- Predictions, **7:46**
- Predictions and projection disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:10 et seq.**
  - Capital resources, **7:15**
  - Liquidity, **7:14**
  - With MD&A requirement
    - Administrative enforcement, **7:13**
    - Private actions, **7:17**
  - Operation results, **7:16**
  - Private actions on MD&A requirements, **7:17**
- Restrictions on disclosures, **7:18**
- Safe harbor
  - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
  - Background, **7:20**
  - Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
- PSLRA
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**

## INDEX

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Misrepresentations—Cont'd
- Predictions and projection disclosure obligations—Cont'd
- Safe harbor—Cont'd
  - PSLRA—Cont'd
    - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
    - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
    - Caution prong, **7:26**
    - Corrections, **7:45**
    - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
    - Discovery stays, **7:44**
    - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
    - Eligible makers, **7:37**
    - Exclusions, **7:40**
    - Expandability, **7:41**
    - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
    - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
    - Later disclosures, **7:30**
    - Motion practice, **7:43**
    - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
    - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
    - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
    - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
    - Scope of Act, **7:24**
    - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
    - Update duty, **7:45**
  - Readily available cautionary statements
    - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
    - SEC filings, **7:33**
    - Timing, **7:32**
  - SA Rule 175, **7:21**
  - SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
- SEC
  - Generally, **7:11**
  - Encouragement of, **7:12**
  - Traditional position, **7:18**
- Reasonable investor standard, **7:51**

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Misrepresentations—Cont'd
  - Scheme to defraud vs. misrepresentation, **7:88, 7:110, 7:112**
  - Scheme to defraud vs. misrepresentation revisited, **7:115**
  - Scienter, **7:53**
  - Standards for preparation of information, **7:49**
  - Violations, criteria for determining, **7:49**
- Negligence, consideration of in misrepresentation claims, **7:52**
- Ninth Circuit, Homestore case, **7:101**
- Opposite side traders
  - Damages, **7:522**
  - Elements of action, **7:518**
  - Relations of parties to market, **7:494**
  - Suits by, **7:504**
- Organization of treatise, **4:1**
- Outsider defendants, **7:103**
- Painting the tape manipulations, **7:132**
- Parking
  - Generally, **7:143 et seq.**
  - Capital requirements, use to avoid, **7:147**
  - Control fights, use in, **7:146**
  - Definitions, **7:144**
  - Margin requirements
    - Parking to avoid, **7:148**
    - Use to avoid, **7:148**
  - Record keeping violations, **7:149**
  - Tax evasion uses, **7:150**
- Parmalat case, **7:111**
- Participation, **7:116**
- Pegging, **7:136**
- Personal and impersonal dealings, **4:1**
- Price, importance of, **7:3**
- Primary liability vs. aiding-abetting, **7:98**
- Primary violators in scheme to defraud, **7:104, 7:109, 7:110, 7:114**
- Private actions for schemes to defraud, **7:105**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

PSLRA  
     Application of, **7:97**  
     Impact of, **7:86**  
 Raising price manipulations, **7:124**  
 Reasonable investor standard, **7:51**  
 Regulation FD disclosure  
     Generally, **7:526 et seq.**  
     Analysts' roles, **7:528**  
     Antifraud provisions and, **7:546**  
     Avoiding selective disclosure,  
         **7:553**  
     Companies covered, **7:545**  
     Compliance, **7:551 et seq.**  
     Curing violations, **7:554**  
     Eliminating nonpublic information,  
         **7:552**  
     Enforcement, **7:549**  
     Exemption provisions and, **7:548**  
     Information, triggering, **7:534**  
     Intentional and nonintentional  
         partial disclosures, **7:538 et**  
         **seq.**  
     Materiality of triggering informa-  
         tion, **7:535**  
     Method of disclosure, **7:544**  
     Persons triggering duty, **7:537**  
     Policy basis, **7:527**  
     Prompt disclosure requirement,  
         **7:543**  
     Registration provisions and, **7:547**  
     Regulatory gap, **7:530**  
     Scope of regulation, **7:545**  
     SEC filing, compliance by, **7:555**  
     Selective disclosure  
         Generally, **7:529**  
         Avoiding, **7:553**  
         Curing violations, **7:554**  
         Materiality, **7:535**  
         Nonpublic nature of information  
             disclosed, **7:536**  
         Triggering full disclosure  
             obligation, **7:532**  
         Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**  
     Simultaneous disclosure require-  
         ments, **7:542**  
     Timing requirements, **7:541 et seq.**

**INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL  
DEALING—Cont'd**

Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd  
 Triggering events  
     Generally, **7:531 et seq.**  
     Information, triggering, **7:534**  
     Intentional and nonintentional  
         partial disclosures, **7:538 et**  
         **seq.**  
     Materiality of triggering infor-  
         mation, **7:535**  
     Nonintentional disclosures,  
         **7:540**  
     Nonpublic nature of information  
         disclosed, **7:536**  
     Nontriggering disclosures, **7:533**  
     Persons triggering duty, **7:537**  
     Selective disclosures, **7:532**  
     Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**  
 Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**  
 Validity, **7:550**  
 Violations, curing, **7:554**  
 Reliance, curtailing scheme to  
     defraud, **7:76 to 7:78, 7:80**  
 Remoteness, **7:76**  
 Rule 10b-5 application to, **3:28**  
 Rule 10b-5 responsibilities generally,  
     **12:7**  
 Rule 14e-3, **7:166**  
 Rule 15c1-2, **7:165**  
 Rule 144, **7:167**  
 SA § 17(a), **7:164**  
 Same side traders  
     Damages, **7:523**  
     Elements of action, **7:519**  
     Relations of parties to market,  
         **7:495**  
     Suits by, **7:505**  
 Scierter  
     Actual knowledge, **8:172**  
     Misrepresentation claims,  
         consideration of, **7:53**  
     Scheme to defraud, group scierter,  
         **7:99**  
 Secondary actors in scheme to  
     defraud, **7:104, 7:114**  
 Second Circuit, Parmalat case, **7:111**

## INDEX

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC), **7:58, 7:59, 7:72 to 7:74, 7:77, 7:80, 7:93**
- Selective disclosure and full disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:529**
  - Avoiding, **7:553**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Materiality, **7:535**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Short selling manipulations, **7:137**
- Simultaneous FD disclosure requirements, **7:542**
- SRO rules, insider trading, **7:168**
- Stoneridge case, curtailing scheme to defraud
  - Amici, **7:83**
  - Impact, **7:82**
- Substantial participation in scheme to defraud, **7:89**
- Successive activity price manipulations, **7:133**
- Supreme Court, Zandford case, **7:117**
- Tender offers
  - Disclosures in, **7:288**
  - Inside information as to pending offers, **7:214**
- Timing of FD disclosure requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
- Tippee liabilities
  - Generally, **7:623**
  - Benefit to insider-tipper, **7:627**
  - Dirks background, **7:625**
  - Family benefit to, **7:630**
  - Fiduciary breach requirement, **7:626**
  - Friends, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Need for fiduciary benefit, **7:626**
  - Pecuniary benefit, **7:628**
  - Receipt in fiduciary breach, **7:623**
  - Relations, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Reputational benefit, **7:629**
  - Tip defined, **7:624**

### INDIRECT-IMPERSONAL DEALING—Cont'd

- Transaction types, **7:1**
- Unintentional disclosures and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:540**
- Wash sale manipulations, **7:121**
- What is a Security (this index)
- Zandford case, **7:117**
- Zone, curtailing scheme to defraud, **7:78**

### INDUCEMENT

- Generally, **8:295**
- Aider-Abettors (this index)
- Parties (this index)

### INFORMANTS

- Generally, **7:445**

### INFORMATION

- See Release of Information (this index)
- Disclosure (this index)
- Insiders and Insider Trading (this index)
- Original information. See Whistleblowers (this index)

### INITIAL COIN OFFERINGS

- Cryptocurrencies (this index)

### INITIAL PUBLIC OFFERINGS (IPOS)

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:10**
- Injunctions, ancillary relief, **13:111**

### INJUNCTIONS

- Accounting, fraudulent accounting, **13:112**
- Actual knowledge and scienter, **8:174**
- Administrative enforcement of aider-abettor liability, **8:371**
- Advantages and disadvantages
  - CFTC, **13:252**
  - SEC, **13:120**
- Aider-abettor liability, **8:371**
- Aider-abettor restraints, **8:371**
- Ancillary relief
  - Auditors, **13:113**
  - CFTC, **13:250**

**INJUNCTIONS—Cont'd**

Ancillary relief—Cont'd

Fraudulent accounting, **13:112**

Initial public offerings (IPOs),  
**13:111**

Investment bankers global settle-  
ment, **13:110**

Monetary civil penalties, generally,  
**13:108 et seq.**

Mutual funds, **13:114**

Other violations, **13:115**

SEC, **13:107 et seq.**

Victim access to penalty, fair  
funds, **13:116**

WorldCom, **13:109**

Asset freezes, **13:100**

Auditors, ancillary relief, **13:113**

Balance of equities, **6:134**

Bar orders in, **13:117**

Buyer-seller requirements, **5:122**

Cease and desist orders

CFTC, **13:239**

Likelihood of future violation,  
**13:239**

Market impact, **13:240**

Permanent, **13:85**

Temporary, **13:86**

CFTC

Generally, **13:245 et seq.**

Advantages and disadvantages,  
**13:252**

Ancillary relief, **13:250**

Character of proceedings, **13:245**

Collateral effect, **13:249**

Duration, **13:251**

Evidence, **13:246**

Likelihood of future violations,  
**13:239, 13:248**

Market impact, **13:240**

Proof, **13:246**

Proper showing, **13:248**

Scienter, **13:247**

Standards, **13:246**

Trading privileges, denial of,  
**13:240**

Character of proceedings

CFTC, **13:245**

SEC, **13:96**

**INJUNCTIONS—Cont'd**

Civil penalties in addition to

Ancillary relief, generally, **13:108**  
**et seq.**

Auditors, **13:113**

Fraudulent accounting, **13:112**

Initial public offerings (IPOs),  
**13:111**

Investment bankers global settle-  
ment, **13:110**

Mutual funds, **13:114**

Other violations, **13:115**

SEC, **13:108**

Victim access to penalty, fair  
funds, **13:116**

WorldCom, **13:109**

Collateral effect

CFTC, **13:249**

Disciplinary proceedings, **13:106**

SEC, **13:105, 13:106**

Conspirators, **8:312**

Constructive knowledge and scienter,  
**8:185**

Disciplinary proceedings, **13:106**

Duration

CFTC, **13:251**

SEC, **13:119**

Equitable relief generally, **13:118**

Evidence

CFTC, **13:246**

SEC, **13:101**

Fraudulent accounting, ancillary  
relief, **13:112**

Inadequacy of other remedies, **6:133**

Initial public offerings (IPOs), ancil-  
lary relief, **13:111**

Insider trading charges

Generally, **7:422 et seq.**

Disgorgement orders, **7:425 et seq.**

Hearing, right to, **7:424**

Intent and scienter, **8:195**

Investment bankers global settlement,  
ancillary relief, **13:110**

Irreparable injuries, **6:133**

Likelihood of future violations

CFTC, **13:239, 13:248**

SEC, **13:103**

Limitation of actions, **13:99**

## INDEX

### INJUNCTIONS—Cont'd

Market impact, CFTC, **13:240**  
Monetary civil penalties. Civil penalties in addition to, above  
Mutual funds, ancillary relief, **13:114**  
Parallel civil and criminal proceedings  
Generally, **13:133 et seq.**  
Battle over discovery, **13:135**  
CFTC references, **13:263**  
Civil-criminal flow of information, **13:139**  
Continuation of criminal proceedings, **13:140**  
Continuations of civil proceedings, **13:137, 13:138**  
Criminal-civil flow of information, **13:143**  
Criteria for stay of discovery, **13:136**  
Discovery, **13:139, 13:142, 13:143**  
Continuation of civil proceedings with, **13:138**  
Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**  
Reasons for concern, **13:134**  
SEC references, **13:133 et seq.**  
Preliminary injunctions, **6:131 et seq.**  
Private suits, relation to, **13:98**  
Privity considerations, **8:303**  
Probability of success, **6:132**  
Proof standards  
CFTC, **13:246**  
SEC, **13:101**  
Proper showing  
CFTC, **13:248**  
SEC, **13:103**  
Scienter  
Actual knowledge, **8:174**  
CFTC, **13:247**  
Constructive knowledge, **8:185**  
Intent, **8:195**  
SEC, **13:102**  
SEC  
Generally, **13:96 et seq.**  
Advantages and disadvantages, **13:120**

### INJUNCTIONS—Cont'd

SEC—Cont'd  
Ancillary relief, **13:107 et seq.**  
Asset freezes, **13:100**  
Bar orders in, **13:117**  
Character of proceedings, **13:96**  
Civil penalties in addition to, **13:108**  
Collateral effect, **13:105, 13:106**  
Duration, **13:119**  
Equitable relief generally, **13:118**  
Evidence, **13:101**  
Likelihood of future violations, **13:103**  
Limitation of actions, **13:99**  
Private suits, relation to, **13:98**  
Proof standards, **13:101**  
Proper showing, **13:103**  
Scienter, **13:102**  
Standards, **13:101**  
Undertakings, **13:97**  
WorldCom, **13:109**  
SROs, **13:303**  
Standards  
CFTC, **13:246**  
SEC, **13:101**  
State investigations, **13:319**  
Tender offer challenges  
Generally, **6:131 et seq., 6:137**  
Balance of equities, **6:134**  
Clean hands, **6:136**  
Final relief, **6:140**  
Inadequacy of other remedies, **6:133**  
Irreparable injuries, **6:133**  
Preliminary injunctions, **6:131 et seq.**  
Probability of success, **6:132**  
Proof elements, **6:132**  
SEC actions, **6:138**  
Time for relief, **6:139**  
Types of relief, **6:135**  
Trading privileges, denial of, **13:240**  
Types of relief, **6:135**  
Undertakings, **13:97**  
Victim access to penalty, fair funds, **13:116**  
WorldCom, ancillary relief, **13:109**

**INNOCENT DEFENDANTS**

Strict liability, **8:243**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING**

Generally, **7:152 et seq.**

Access criteria, **7:560**

Acquisition plans, **7:211**

Acquisitions, **7:214**

Administrative enforcement

Generally, **7:159, 7:415 et seq.**

Ancillary relief, **7:419, 7:437**

Bounties, **7:445**

Burden of proof

Generally, **7:366**

Defenses, **7:369**

Institutions, **7:367**

Civil penalties, **7:420**

Connection with requirement

Market transactions, **7:370**

Rule 10b-5, **7:370**

Rule 14e-3, **7:371**

Tender offers, **7:371**

Control person liability

Generally, **7:451 et seq.**

All control persons, **7:453**

Amount of liability, **7:459**

Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**

B test, **7:456**

Contribution to violation, **7:458**

Failure to act, **7:455**

Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**

Knowledge

Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**

Likelihood of violation, **7:454**

Penalties imposed on, **7:440**

Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**

Reckless disregard

Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**

Likelihood of violation, **7:454**

Requirements, **7:452**

Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd**

Administrative enforcement—Cont'd

Control person liability—Cont'd

Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**

A test, **7:453**

Defenses

Generally, **7:350**

Amount defined, **7:355**

Binding contract defense, **7:351**

Burden of proving, **7:369**

Common terms and issues, **7:355 et seq.**

Date defined, **7:357**

Delegation alternative to amount, price and date, **7:358**

Exclusiveness of defenses, **7:360**

Institutional defenses, **7:361**

Instructions defense, **7:352**

Overriding limitations, **7:359**

Price defined, **7:356**

Relation to other laws, **7:362**

Systematic plans defense, **7:353**

Tracking plans defense, **7:354**

Disgorgement, **7:418, 7:425 et seq.**

Disposition of penalties, **7:445**

Double jeopardy limitations, **7:443**

Hearing, right to, **7:424**

Informants, awards to, **7:445**

Injunctive actions

Generally, **7:422 et seq.**

Disgorgement orders, **7:425 et seq.**

Hearing, right to, **7:424**

Institutional defenses, **7:361**

Institutions

Burden of proof, **7:367**

Defenses, **7:361**

Judge or jury, **7:421**

Generally, **7:421**

Penalty actions, **7:446**

Martha Stewart case. Scierter, below in this group

Misappropriation theory, **7:578**

INDEX

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Administrative enforcement—Cont'd
  - Motion practice, **7:365**
  - Parties, **7:363**
  - Penalty actions
    - Generally, **7:438**
    - Amount of penalty
      - Control persons, **7:459**
      - Court-imposed, **7:439**
    - Bounties, **7:445**
    - Control persons, penalties imposed on, **7:440**
    - Court imposed penalties, **7:439**
    - Disposition of penalties, **7:445**
    - Double jeopardy limitations, **7:443**
    - Factors considered in imposition of penalties, **7:442**
    - Informants, awards to, **7:445**
    - Judge or jury, **7:446**
    - Maximum penalties imposed, **7:441**
    - Persons liable
      - Generally, **7:447**
      - Aider-abettors, **7:449**
      - Employers, **7:450**
      - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
      - Tippers, **7:448**
      - Traders, **7:448**
    - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
    - Settled penalties, **7:444**
    - Tippees, penalties imposed on, **7:439**
    - Traders, penalties imposed on, **7:439**
  - Pleading
    - Generally, **7:364**
    - Scienter, **7:398**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:368**
  - Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**
  - Reporting requirements
    - Generally, **7:175 et seq.**
    - Detection of illegal trades, **7:178**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Administrative enforcement—Cont'd
  - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
  - RICO, **7:414, 7:464**
  - Sanctions, **7:417**
  - Sanctions, statutory, **7:417**
  - Scienter
    - Generally, **7:372 et seq.**
    - Fiduciary theory
      - Tippers, **7:381**
      - Trading insiders, **7:377**
      - Trading tippees, **7:385**
    - Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**
    - Martha Stewart case
      - Generally, **7:403 et seq.**
      - Acquittal, **7:411**
      - Background of case, **7:404**
      - Imclone stock sale, **7:404**
      - Indictment, **7:405**
      - Inferences from evidence, **7:409**
      - Intent inference test, **7:410**
      - Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**
      - Misrepresentation, **7:406**
      - Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**
    - Misappropriation theory
      - Tippers, **7:382**
      - Trading insiders, **7:378**
      - Trading tippees, **7:386**
    - Pleading, **7:398**
    - Proof, **7:399 et seq.**
    - Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**
    - Rule 14e-3, **7:412**
    - Tippers
      - Generally, **7:379 et seq., 7:382**
      - Proof, **7:401**
    - Trading insiders
      - Generally, **7:375 et seq.**
      - Proof, **7:400**
    - Trading tippees
      - Generally, **7:383 et seq.**
      - Proof, **7:402**
  - SEA § 16(b), **7:159**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Administrative enforcement—Cont'd  
 Tippees, penalties imposed on, **7:439**  
 Tippers  
   Generally, **7:159**  
   Scienter, **7:379 et seq.**  
   Tippers, scienter, **7:379 et seq.**  
   Wiretap in enforcement, **13:146, 13:153**  
 Advisers to issuers, **7:569**  
 Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**  
 Analysts' roles in full disclosure regulations, **7:528**  
 Antifraud provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:546**  
 Arguments in Rajaratnam criminal case  
   Closing arguments, **21:25**  
   Defense arguments, **21:38**  
   DOJ argument on nature and circumstances of offenses, **21:33**  
   Leadership role enhancement (U.S.S.G. § 3B1.1(a)), **21:36, 21:42**  
   Limitation of gain to amount actually realized by defendant, **21:40**  
   Obstruction enhancement under U.S.S.G. § 3C1.1, **21:43**  
   Sentencing arguments, **21:32**  
   Seriousness of offense overstated under Sentencing Guidelines calculations, **21:41**  
 Arrest of Raj Rajaratnam, **21:4**  
 Asset information, **7:206**  
 Awareness of MNPI  
   Generally, **7:316, 7:349 et seq.**  
   Possession distinguished, **7:349**  
 Bail in securities prosecutions. Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading, below  
 Benefit of tipper, transmission of information for, **7:661**  
 Benefit to insider-tipper, **7:627**  
 Blackouts, director and officer trading during, **7:161**  
 Bounties to informants, **7:445**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Burden of proof  
   Generally, **7:366**  
   Defenses, **7:369**  
   Institutions, **7:367**  
   Nonpublic nature of information, **7:312**  
 Business associates to issuers, **7:570**  
 Business judgment, timely disclosure, **7:241**  
 Calculation of sentence in Raj Rajaratnam criminal case, **21:34 et seq.**  
 California statutes, **App G**  
 Case law, **7:182**  
 Causation, **7:517**  
 Chiasson/Newman cases, **7:387 et seq.**  
 Chinese walls  
   Generally, **7:343 et seq.**  
   Evolution of rule, **7:344**  
   Operation, **7:345**  
 Closing arguments, Raj Rajaratnam criminal case, **21:25**  
 Co-conspirators, Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading, **21:20 to 21:24, 21:44**  
 Common law, **7:153**  
 Compulsory disclosure. Regulation FD disclosure, below  
 Connection with requirement  
   Generally, **7:676 et seq.**  
   Inducing action, **7:682**  
   Investment decision, influencing, **7:682**  
   Market transactions, **7:370**  
   Misappropriation theory, **7:680**  
   Non-participation in pertinent transactions, **7:677**  
   Possession vs use, **7:681**  
   Price, affecting, **7:682**  
   Purchase, inducing, **7:682**  
   Purchaser-seller test, **7:678**  
   Rule 10b-5, **7:370**  
   Rule 14c-3, **7:371**  
   Tender offers, **7:371**  
   Touching test, **7:678**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Conspirators, insider trades
  - Generally, **8:308**
  - Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading, **21:20 to 21:24, 21:44**
- Control person liability
  - Generally, **7:451 et seq.**
  - All control persons, **7:453**
  - Amount of liability, **7:459**
  - Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**
  - B test, **7:456**
  - Contribution to violation, **7:458**
  - Failure to act, **7:455**
  - Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
  - Knowledge
    - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
    - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
  - Penalties imposed on, **7:440**
  - Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**
  - Private actions against, **7:486, 7:512**
  - Reckless disregard
    - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
    - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
  - Requirements, **7:452**
  - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
  - Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**
  - A test, **7:453**
- Corporate information, **7:203 et seq.**
- Costs of enforcement, **7:195**
- Counts One through Five, Raj Rajaratnam conspiracies, **21:20 to 21:24**
- Criminal enforcement
  - Generally, **7:460 et seq.**
  - Amount of penalties, **7:466**
  - Disgorgement, **7:465**
  - Judge or jury, **7:467**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:463**
  - Martha Stewart case, below

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Criminal enforcement—Cont'd
  - New York district federal prosecutions, **App J**
  - Penalties, **7:466**
  - Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:1 et seq.**
  - Restitution, **7:465**
  - RICO, **7:464**
  - Securities violations, **7:462**
- Damages, **7:488**
- Defenses
  - Generally, **7:350**
  - Amount defined, **7:355**
  - Binding contract defense, **7:351**
  - Burden of proof, **7:369**
  - Common terms and issues, **7:355 et seq.**
  - Date defined, **7:357**
  - Delegation alternative to amount, price and date, **7:358**
  - Exclusiveness of defenses, **7:360**
  - Institutional defenses, **7:361**
  - Instructions defense, **7:352**
  - Overriding limitations, **7:359**
  - Price defined, **7:356**
  - Rajaratnam criminal case, **21:38**
  - Relation to other laws, **7:362**
  - Systematic plans defense, **7:353**
  - Tracking plans defense, **7:354**
- Detention, pre-trial, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:6, 21:8**
- Deteriorations in financial condition, **7:208**
- Direct-impersonal dealing, tender offers, unregulated
  - Generally, **6:111**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:114**
- Disclose or abstain duty
  - Generally, **7:197 et seq.**
  - Duration of duty, **7:200**
  - Nature of duty, **7:198**
  - Regulation FD disclosure, below
  - Who is entitled to disclosure, **7:199**
- Disproportionate liability, **7:196**
- Dividend actions
  - Generally, **7:207**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Dividend actions—Cont'd
  - When disclosure required, **7:246**
- DOJ argument on nature and circumstances of Rajaratnam's criminal offenses, **21:33**
- Earnings information
  - Generally, **7:205**
  - Predictions, **7:204**
- Employers, harm to, **7:190**
- Evidence
  - Burden of proof, above
  - Trial on the merits, proof at, **21:19**
  - Wiretap. Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading, below
- Exemption provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:548**
- Expansion era, scope of regulations, **7:560**
- Family of tippee, benefit to, **7:630**
- Federal bail in securities prosecutions, **21:8**
- Federal securities laws, **7:155 et seq.**, **7:162 et seq.**
- Federal Sentencing Guidelines
  - Length of sentence, **21:30**
  - Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading, **21:28 to 21:31**
  - Statutory maximum, **21:29**
  - Strategies, **21:31**
  - Structure of Guidelines, **21:28**
- Fiduciary relationships
  - Breach, misappropriation theory and fiduciary breach, **7:576**
  - Contraction era, **7:576**
  - Creation
    - Generally, **7:567**
    - Advisers to issuers, **7:569**
    - Business associates of issuers, **7:570**
    - Law characterizing relation, **7:573**
    - Position with issuer, **7:568**
    - Prior dealings, creation by, **7:571**
    - Securities professionals, **7:572**
    - Criteria, **7:561 et seq.**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Fiduciary relationships—Cont'd
  - Expansion era, **7:574**
  - Issuers, **7:565**
  - Market insiders, **7:575**
  - Private actions, **7:498**
  - Scope of relationships, **7:562 et seq.**
  - Tippers, **7:381**
  - Trading insiders, **7:377**
  - Trading tippers, **7:385**
  - With whom must relationship exist, **7:562 et seq.**
- Foreign accounts, use of, **7:177**
- Foreign law, **7:201**
- Friends of tippee, benefit to, **7:630**
- Full disclosure
  - Duty triggered by partial disclosure, **7:536**
  - Regulation FD disclosure, below
- Galleon conspiracy, Count One, **21:20**
- Gift to relative, **7:396**
- Harmless insider trading, **7:194**
- Harm to employers, **7:190**
- Harm to individual investors, **7:186, 7:187**
- Harm to investor confidence, **7:184**
- Harm to issuers, **7:188**
- Harm to market integrity, **7:185**
- Harm to principals, **7:190**
- Hearing, bail, **21:9**
- High frequency trading and front running, **7:169**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing
  - For detailed treatment
    - See Indirect-Impersonal Dealing (this index)
  - Generally, **7:152 et seq.**
  - Acquisition plans, **7:211**
  - Administrative enforcement
    - Generally, **7:415 et seq.**, **7:416 et seq.**
    - Ancillary relief, **7:419, 7:437**
    - Civil penalties, **7:420**
    - Disgorgement, **7:418, 7:425 et seq.**

INDEX

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Administrative enforcement—Cont'd
    - Hearing, right to, **7:424**
  - Injunctive actions
    - Generally, **7:422 et seq.**
    - Disgorgement orders, **7:425 et seq.**
    - Hearing, right to, **7:424**
    - Judge or jury, **7:421**
    - Penalty actions, below
    - Sanctions, statutory, **7:417**
  - Antifraud provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:546**
  - Asset information, **7:206**
  - Awareness of MNPI
    - Generally, **7:316, 7:349 et seq.**
    - Possession distinguished, **7:349**
  - On basis of inside information, trades made, **7:348**
  - Blackouts, director and officer trading during, **7:161**
  - Blue sky law, **7:154**
  - Burden of proof
    - Generally, **7:366**
    - Defenses, **7:369**
    - Institutions, **7:367**
    - Nonpublic nature of information, **7:312**
  - Case law, recent, **7:182**
  - Chiasson/Newman cases, **7:387 et seq.**
  - Common law, **7:153**
  - Connection with requirement
    - Generally, **7:676 et seq.**
    - Inducing action, **7:682**
    - Investment decision, influencing, **7:682**
    - Market transactions, **7:370**
    - Misappropriation theory, **7:680**
    - Non-participation in pertinent transactions, **7:677**
    - Possession vs use, **7:681**
    - Price, affecting, **7:682**
    - Purchase, inducing, **7:682**
    - Purchaser-seller test, **7:678**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Connection with requirement—Cont'd
    - Rule 10b-5, **7:370**
    - Rule 14e-3, **7:371**
    - Tender offers, **7:371**
    - Touching test, **7:678**
  - Corporate information, **7:203 et seq.**
  - Costs of enforcement, **7:195**
  - Criminal enforcement, **7:465**
  - Defendants as insiders, **7:102**
  - Defenses to insider trading charges
    - Generally, **7:350**
    - Amount defined, **7:355**
    - Binding contract defense, **7:351**
    - Burden of proof, **7:369**
    - Common terms and issues, **7:355 et seq.**
    - Date defined, **7:357**
    - Delegation alternative to amount, price and date, **7:358**
    - Exclusiveness of defenses, **7:360**
    - Institutional defenses, **7:361**
    - Instructions defense, **7:352**
    - Overriding limitations, **7:359**
    - Price defined, **7:356**
    - Relation to other laws, **7:362**
    - Systematic plans defense, **7:353**
    - Tracking plans defense, **7:354**
  - Deteriorations in financial condition, **7:208**
  - Disclose or abstain duty
    - Generally, **7:197 et seq.**
    - Duration of duty, **7:200**
    - Nature of duty, **7:198**
    - Regulation FD disclosure, below
      - Who is entitled to disclosure, **7:199**
  - Disproportionate liability, **7:196**
  - Dividend actions
    - Generally, **7:207**
    - When disclosure required, **7:246**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Earnings  
     Generally, **7:205**  
     Predictions, **7:204**  
 Employers, harm to, **7:190**  
 Exemption provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:548**  
 Federal securities laws, **7:155 et seq., 7:162 et seq.**  
 Fiduciary breach and misappropriation theory, **7:315**  
 Fiduciary relationships  
     Contraction era, **7:576**  
     Creation  
         Generally, **7:567**  
         Advisers to issuers, **7:569**  
         Business associates of issuers, **7:570**  
         Law characterizing relation, **7:573**  
         Position with issuer, **7:568**  
         Prior dealings, creation by, **7:571**  
         Securities professionals, **7:572**  
     Criteria, **7:561 et seq.**  
     Expansion era, **7:574**  
     Issuers, **7:565**  
     Market insiders, **7:575**  
     Scienter, **7:381**  
     Scope of relationships, **7:561 et seq.**  
     With whom must relationship exist, **7:562 et seq.**  
 Foreign accounts, use of, **7:177**  
 Foreign law, **7:201**  
 Full disclosure  
     Duty triggered by partial disclosure of nonpublic information, **7:536**  
     Regulation FD disclosure, below  
         Gift to relative, **7:396**  
         Harmless insider trading, **7:194**  
         Harm to employers, **7:190**  
         Harm to individual investors, **7:186, 7:187**  
         Harm to investor confidence, **7:184**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Harm to issuers, **7:188**  
 Harm to market integrity, **7:185**  
 Harm to principals, **7:190**  
 Individual investors, harm to, **7:186, 7:187**  
 Information, unequal, **7:181**  
 Information possession criteria, **7:576**  
 Insider short sales, **7:157**  
 Institutional defenses, **7:361**  
 Institutions, burden of proof, **7:367**  
 Internal rules, **7:173**  
 Investor confidence, harm to, **7:184**  
 Issuer disclosures  
     Periodic reports, **7:289**  
     Press releases, **7:283**  
     Prospectuses, **7:286**  
     Reports, **7:289**  
     SEC filings, **7:285**  
     Shareholder communications, **7:284**  
     Tender offer statements, **7:288**  
 Issuer liability  
     Generally, **7:643 et seq.**  
     Advisers, **7:652**  
     Affiliated entities, **7:647**  
     Business associates, **7:653**  
     Contraction era, **7:646**  
     Directors, **7:649**  
     Employees, **7:650**  
     Expansion era, **7:645**  
     Officers, **7:648**  
     Shareholders, **7:651**  
     Tippees, **7:654**  
 Issuers, harm to, **7:188**  
 Judge or jury  
     Administrative enforcement, **7:421**  
     Penalty actions, **7:446**  
 Kinds of information  
     Generally, **7:202 et seq.**  
     Acquisition plans, **7:211**  
     Acquisitions, **7:214**  
     Assets, **7:206**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Kinds of information—Cont'd
  - Corporate information, **7:203 et seq.**
  - Deteriorations in financial condition, **7:208**
  - Dividends, **7:207**
  - Earnings
    - Generally, **7:205**
    - Predictions, **7:204**
  - Market information, **7:213 et seq.**
  - Operational information, **7:209**
  - Outside information, **7:213 et seq.**
  - Predictions, earning, **7:204**
  - Publicity, **7:216**
  - Recommendations, **7:215**
  - Share repurchase plans, **7:210**
  - Tender offers, **7:214**
- Law and fact questions, **7:314**
- Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**
- Mail and wire fraud
  - Generally, **7:171, 7:463**
  - Scienter, **7:413**
- Management compensation, **7:193**
- Market efficiency, **7:192**
- Market insiders, **7:575**
- Market integrity harm to, **7:185**
- Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
- Martha Stewart case. Scienter, below in this group
- Materiality
  - Generally, **7:218 et seq.**
  - Acquisitions
    - Negotiated, **7:262 et seq.**
    - Nonnegotiated, **7:270**
  - Actual market impact after release, **7:236**
  - Aggregate materiality, **7:225**
  - Burden of proof, **7:226**
  - Dividend information, **7:247**
  - Evidence, **7:229 et seq.**
  - Expectations, relation to, **7:233**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Materiality—Cont'd
  - Factors, **7:229 et seq.**
  - Graduations of materiality, **7:224**
  - Law or fact issue, **7:227**
  - Magnitude relative to company, **7:230**
  - Market release, actual impact of, **7:236**
  - Probability relative to company, **7:230**
  - Proof, **7:226**
  - Public disclosure and materiality, **7:280**
  - Public information, relation of inside information to, **7:234**
  - Readily available information compared, **7:234**
  - Reasonable investor test
    - Generally, **7:221**
    - Substantial market impact test compared, **7:223**
  - Regulation FD triggering disclosures, **7:535**
  - Relation to expectations, **7:233**
  - Reliability, **7:231**
  - Specificity, **7:232**
  - Standard of proof, **7:228**
  - Substantial market impact test
    - Generally, **7:222**
    - Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**
  - Tests of materiality
    - Generally, **7:219 et seq.**
    - Aggregate materiality test, **7:225**
    - Graduations of materiality, **7:224**
    - Mosaic theory, **7:225**
    - Reasonable investor test
      - Generally, **7:221**
      - Substantial market impact test compared, **7:223**
    - Significant alteration of total mix, **7:221**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Materiality—Cont'd
  - Tests of materiality—Cont'd
    - Substantial market impact test
      - Generally, **7:222**
      - Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**
    - Use as test of materiality, **7:235**
  - Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
  - Media disclosures
    - Generally, **7:292 et seq.**
    - Particular media, **7:299**
    - Timing, **7:297**
  - Method of disclosure, Regulation FD, **7:544**
  - Misappropriation theory
    - Private actions, **7:499**
    - Scienter, tippers, **7:382**
  - Misrepresentations, disclosures as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - MNPI
    - Defined, **7:152**
    - Materiality, above
    - Nonpublic information, below
  - Moral considerations, **7:189**
  - Motion practice, **7:365**
  - Nonpublic information
    - Generally, **7:271 et seq.**
    - Absorption requirement, **7:306 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **7:312**
    - Duty to disclose generally, **7:275**
    - Eliminating nonpublic information, Regulation FD, **7:552**
    - Full disclosure duty triggered by partial disclosure of, **7:536**
    - Investment community disclosure, **7:300**
    - Issuer disclosures
      - Generally, **7:282 et seq.**
      - Periodic reports, **7:289**
      - Press releases, **7:283**
      - Prospectuses, **7:286**
      - Proxy statements, **7:287**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Nonpublic information—Cont'd
- Issuer disclosures—Cont'd
  - Reports, **7:289**
  - SEC filings, **7:285**
  - Shareholder communications, **7:284**
  - Tender offer statements, **7:288**
  - Law and fact questions, **7:314**
  - Limitations period, disclosure as starting, **7:279**
  - Market reaction as public/nonpublic test, **7:281**
  - Materiality and public disclosure, **7:280**
  - Media disclosures
    - Generally, **7:292 et seq.**
    - Particular media, **7:299**
    - Timing, **7:297**
  - Misrepresentations, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Motion practice, **7:311**
  - Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Pleading, **7:310**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:309 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:313**
  - Public as affecting insider trading, **7:272 et seq.**
  - Quantum of proof, **7:312**
  - Rumors, **7:301**
  - Time in becoming public, **7:304 et seq.**
  - Tipping of, **7:272 et seq.**
  - Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**
  - Operational information, **7:209**
  - Opposite side traders
    - Damages, **7:522**
    - Elements of action, **7:518**
    - Relations of parties to market, **7:494**
    - Suits by, **7:504**
  - Parties, **7:363**

INDEX

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
Penalty actions, below  
Persons subject to regulation  
    Generally, **7:642 et seq.**  
    Advisers, **7:652**  
    Affiliated entities, **7:647**  
    Business associates, **7:653**  
    Contraction era, **7:646**  
    Directors, **7:649**  
    Employees, **7:650**  
    Expansion era, **7:645**  
    Issuers, **7:643 et seq.**  
    Officers, **7:648**  
    Shareholders, **7:651**  
    Tippees, **7:654**  
Pervasiveness, **7:195**  
Pleading  
    Generally, **7:364**  
    Nonpublic nature of information, **7:310**  
    Scienter, **7:398**  
Policies, preventive  
    Generally, **7:468 et seq.**  
    Arguments con, **7:180 et seq.**  
    Arguments pro, **7:191 et seq.**  
    Broker-dealers, **7:470**  
    Control person liabilities for failure to have, **7:457**  
    Education, **7:473**  
    Information policies and procedures, **7:474**  
    Investment advisers, **7:470**  
    Nature of policies and procedures, **7:472**  
    Organizations, requirements for, **7:471**  
    Procedures, **7:476**  
    Sanctions for violations, **7:477**  
    Tipping policies, **7:475**  
    Trading policies, **7:475**  
Possession of MNPI  
    Generally, **7:316**  
    Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**  
    Burden of proof, **7:321, 7:341**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
Possession of MNPI—Cont'd  
    Chinese walls  
        Generally, **7:343 et seq.**  
        Evolution of rule, **7:344**  
        Operation, **7:345**  
    Connection with transaction, **7:681**  
    Individuals, proof for, **7:342**  
    Knowing possession, **7:320**  
    Mere possession, **7:319**  
    Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**  
    Precautions against trading, **7:346**  
    Proof, **7:322 et seq.**  
    Rule 10b-5  
        Generally, **7:318 et seq.**  
        Access, proof of, **7:323**  
        Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**  
        Burden of proof, **7:321**  
        Contact, proof of, **7:324**  
        Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**  
        Knowing possession, **7:320**  
        Mere possession, **7:319**  
        Organizations, proof for, **7:326**  
        Proof, **7:322 et seq.**  
        Trading, proof of, **7:325**  
        Use inferred from possession, **7:328**  
    Rule 14e-3  
        Generally, **7:340 et seq.**  
        Burden of proof, **7:341**  
        Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**  
        Individuals, proof for, **7:342**  
        Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**  
        Precautions against trading, **7:346**  
        Standard of proof, **7:341**  
    Standard of proof, **7:341**  
    Use compared, **7:317**  
Predictions, earnings, **7:204**  
Principals, harm to, **7:190**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Private actions  
     Generally, **7:478 et seq., 7:491 et seq.**  
     Amount of liability, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**  
     Ancillary relief, **7:490, 7:525**  
     Background, **7:501**  
     Causation, **7:517**  
     Contemporaneous traders, actions by, **7:503 et seq.**  
     Control persons, actions against, **7:486, 7:512**  
     Convertible traders, suits by, **7:508**  
     Damages, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**  
     Elements of action, **7:514 et seq.**  
     Express causes of action, **7:478 et seq.**  
     Fiduciary theory, **7:498**  
     Implied causes of action, **7:491 et seq., 7:493 et seq.**  
     Market, relation of parties to, **7:493 et seq.**  
     Misappropriation theory, **7:499**  
     Opposite side traders  
         Damages, **7:522**  
         Elements of action, **7:518**  
         Relations of parties to market, **7:494**  
         Suits by, **7:504**  
     Option traders, suits by, **7:507**  
     Other liabilities, relation to, **7:489**  
     Parties defendant, **7:483, 7:509**  
     Parties plaintiff  
         Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**  
         Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**  
     Relation to other liabilities, **7:489, 7:524**  
     Reliance, **7:516**  
     Rule 10b-5, **7:497 et seq.**  
     Rule 14e-3, **7:500**  
     Same class of securities, actions by traders in, **7:482, 7:506**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd  
 Private actions—Cont'd  
     Same side traders  
         Damages, **7:523**  
         Elements of action, **7:519**  
         Relations of parties to market, **7:495**  
         Suits by, **7:505**  
     Standing, **7:520**  
     Tippers, actions against, **7:485, 7:511**  
     Traders  
         Actions against, **7:484, 7:510**  
         Contemporaneous, suits by, **7:481**  
         Who can be sued, **7:483, 7:509**  
         Who can sue  
             Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**  
             Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**  
         Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**  
         Prompt disclosure requirement, Regulation FD, **7:543**  
     Proof  
         Generally, **7:368**  
         Nonpublic nature of information, **7:313**  
     Protection of information traders, **7:183**  
     Proximity of tippee, **7:673**  
     Public or nonpublic character of information. Nonpublic information, above  
     Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**  
     Reasons  
         Con, **7:180 et seq.**  
         Pro, **7:191 et seq.**  
     Registration provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:547**  
     Regulation FD disclosure  
         Generally, **7:526 et seq.**  
         Analysts' roles, **7:528**  
         Antifraud provisions and, **7:546**  
         Avoiding selective disclosure, **7:553**  
         Companies covered, **7:545**

INDEX

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd
  - Compliance, **7:551 et seq.**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, **7:552**
  - Enforcement, **7:549**
  - Exemption provisions and, **7:548**
  - Information, triggering, **7:534**
  - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
  - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
  - Method of disclosure, **7:544**
  - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
  - Policy basis, **7:527**
  - Prompt disclosure requirement, **7:543**
  - Registration provisions and, **7:547**
  - Regulatory gap, **7:530**
  - Scope of regulation, **7:545**
  - SEC filing, compliance by, **7:555**
  - Selective disclosure
    - Generally, **7:529**
    - Avoiding, **7:553**
    - Curing violations, **7:554**
    - Materiality, **7:535**
    - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
    - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
    - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Simultaneous disclosure requirements, **7:542**
  - Timing requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
  - Triggering events
    - Generally, **7:531 et seq.**
    - Information, triggering, **7:534**
    - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd
- Triggering events—Cont'd
  - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
  - Non-intentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Nontriggering disclosures, **7:533**
  - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
  - Selective disclosures, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Validity, **7:550**
  - Violations, curing, **7:554**
- Relationships subject to regulation, **7:562 et seq.**
- Relative gift, **7:396**
- Reliance, **7:516**
- Remoteness of tippee, **7:673**
- Reporting requirements
  - Generally, **7:175 et seq.**
  - Detection of illegal trades, **7:178**
  - Extent of activity, **7:179**
  - Foreign accounts, use of, **7:177**
  - Publication, **7:176**
- RICO, **7:414, 7:464**
- Rule 10b-5, **7:163**
- Rule 14e-3, **7:166**
- Rule 15c1-2, **7:165**
- Rule 144, **7:167**
- SA § 17(a), **7:164**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **7:372 et seq.**
  - Fiduciary theory
    - Tippers, **7:381**
    - Trading insiders, **7:377**
    - Trading tippees, **7:385**
  - Knowledge that tippee will trade, **7:662**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**
  - Martha Stewart case
    - Generally, **7:403 et seq.**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Scienter—Cont'd
    - Martha Stewart case—Cont'd
      - Acquittal, **7:411**
      - Background of case, **7:404**
      - Imclone stock sale, **7:404**
      - Indictment, **7:405**
      - Inferences from evidence, **7:409**
      - Intent inference test, **7:410**
      - Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**
      - Misrepresentation, **7:406**
      - Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**
    - Misappropriation theory
      - Tippers, **7:382**
      - Trading insiders, **7:378**
      - Trading tippees, **7:386**
    - Pleading, **7:398**
    - Proof, **7:399 et seq.**
    - Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**
    - Rule 14e-3, **7:412**
    - Tippee violations, **7:672**
    - Tippers
      - Generally, **7:379 et seq.**
      - Proof, **7:401**
    - Tipping violations, **7:662**
    - Trading insiders
      - Generally, **7:375 et seq.**
      - Proof, **7:400**
    - Trading tippees
      - Generally, **7:383 et seq.**
      - Proof, **7:402**
  - Scope of regulations
    - Generally, **7:557 et seq.**
    - Access criteria, **7:560**
    - Buyers, **7:563**
    - Congressional intent, **7:559**
    - Contraction era, **7:561 et seq.**
    - Expansion era, **7:560**
    - Issuers, applicability to, **7:565**
    - Relationships subject to regulation, **7:562 et seq.**
    - SEC efforts to define, **7:559**
    - Sellers, **7:563**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
  - Scope of regulations—Cont'd
    - Third parties, applicability to, **7:566**
    - Unfairness criteria, **7:560**
  - SEA § 16(b)
    - Generally, **7:156 et seq.**
    - Administrative enforcement, **7:159**
    - Blackouts, director and officer trading during, **7:161**
    - Civil penalties, **7:159**
    - Insider short sales, **7:157**
    - Private actions, **7:160**
    - Short swing trading, **7:156**
    - Tipping, **7:158**
  - SEC Rule 14e-3
    - Generally, **7:632 et seq.**
    - Duty imposed, **7:633**
    - Supreme Court validation, **7:636, 7:637**
    - Validity, **7:634 et seq.**
  - Selective disclosure and full disclosure obligations
    - Generally, **7:529**
    - Avoiding, **7:553**
    - Curing violations, **7:554**
    - Materiality, **7:535**
    - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
    - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
    - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Share repurchase plans, **7:210**
  - Short swing trading, SEA § 16(b), **7:156**
  - SRO rules, **7:168**
  - State law, **7:153**
  - Timely disclosure
    - Generally, **7:238 et seq.**
    - Acquisition information
      - Generally, **7:248 et seq.**
      - Agreements
        - Disclosure not required, **7:261**
        - Disclosure required, **7:260**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Timely disclosure—Cont'd
  - Acquisition information—Cont'd
    - Company, trading by, **7:256**
    - Definitions, **7:250**
    - Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**
    - Leaks, **7:255**
    - Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**
    - Preliminary negotiations
      - Misleading statements, **7:253**
      - No statement made, **7:252**
      - Other situations, **7:254**
    - Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**
    - Rumors, **7:255**
    - Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**
    - Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
    - When disclosure of agreement required, **7:260**
    - When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq.**
  - Business judgment considerations, **7:241**
  - Corporate purpose considerations, **7:242**
  - Delays, justifications for, **7:240**
  - Dividend actions
    - Evolving information, **7:245**
    - Materiality, **7:247**
    - When disclosure required, **7:246**
  - Justification for delay, **7:240**
  - Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**
  - Ripeness and timing, **7:243**
  - Tender offers
    - Generally, **7:267**
    - Materiality, **7:270**
    - Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Timely disclosure—Cont'd
  - Tender offers—Cont'd
    - When disclosure required, **7:269**
  - Tippee's knowledge of tipper's benefit, **7:387**
  - Tippee violations
    - Generally, **7:664 et seq.**
    - Benefit to tipper, **7:671**
    - Elements of, **7:668 et seq.**
    - Expansion era, **7:665**
    - Issuer affiliated, **7:654**
    - Knowledge of inside source, **7:672**
    - Misappropriation, **7:675**
    - Policies, **7:666**
    - Possession element, **7:669**
    - Proof of possession element, **7:670**
    - Proximity of tippee, **7:673**
    - Reasons, **7:666**
    - Remoteness of tippee, **7:673**
    - Scienter, **7:672**
    - Specificity of possession element, **7:669**
    - Theories of, **7:667**
    - Tipper violation, necessity of, **7:674**
    - Trading as violation, **7:664 et seq., 7:675**
  - Tipsters, scienter, **7:379 et seq.**
  - Tipping
    - Generally, **7:655 et seq.**
    - Benefit of tipper, transmission of information for, **7:661**
    - Elements of violations, **7:658 et seq.**
    - Expansion era, **7:656**
    - Knowledge that tippee will trade, **7:662**
    - Necessity of tippee trading, **7:663**
    - Nonpublic information, **7:272 et seq.**
    - Policies, **7:657**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Tipping—Cont'd
  - Private purpose, transmission of information for, **7:661**
  - Proof of transmission of information, **7:660**
  - Reasons, **7:657**
  - Scienter, **7:662**
  - SEA § 16(b), **7:158**
  - Transmission of information, **7:659**
  - Violations, elements, **7:658 et seq.**
- Unequal information, **7:181**
- Unfairness of activities, **7:181**
- Unintentional disclosures and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:540**
- Use of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316**
  - Burden of proof, **7:331**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
  - Possession compared, **7:317**
  - Rule 10b-5
    - Generally, **7:327 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **7:331**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
    - Inferences, **7:328**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
    - Possession, use inferred from, **7:328**
    - Rebuttal evidence, **7:337, 7:338**
    - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
    - Standard of proof, **7:331**
    - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
    - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
  - Rule 14e-3, generally, **7:347**
  - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
  - Standard of proof, **7:331**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing—Cont'd
- Use of MNPI—Cont'd
  - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
  - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
- Individual investors, harm to, **7:186, 7:187**
- Inducement by insiders, **8:299**
- Informants, awards to, **7:445**
- Information, unequal, **7:181**
- Information generally, **7:4**
- Insider short sales, **7:157**
- Insider trading law enforcement (SEC)
  - Generally, **7:415 et seq.**
- Administrative proceedings
  - Generally, **7:416 et seq.**
  - Ancillary relief, **7:419, 7:437**
  - Civil penalties, **7:420**
  - Disgorgement, **7:418**
  - Judge or jury, **7:421**
  - Sanctions, statutory, **7:417**
- Criminal proceedings, **7:465**
- Disgorgement orders
  - Administrative proceedings, **7:425 et seq.**
  - Criminal proceedings, **7:465**
- Hearing, right to, **7:424**
- Injunctive actions
  - Generally, **7:422 et seq.**
  - Disgorgement orders, **7:425 et seq.**
  - Hearing, right to, **7:424**
- Judge or jury
  - Administrative proceedings, **7:421**
  - Penalty actions, **7:446**
- Penalty actions, 6:347 et seq.
- Policies, preventive
  - Generally, **7:468 et seq.**
  - Broker-dealers, **7:470**
  - Control person liabilities for failure to have, **7:457**
  - Education, **7:473**
  - Information policies and procedures, **7:474**

INDEX

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Insider trading law enforcement  
(SEC)—Cont'd  
Policies, preventive—Cont'd  
Investment advisers, **7:470**  
Nature of policies and  
procedures, **7:472**  
Organizations, requirements for,  
**7:471**  
Procedures, **7:476**  
Sanctions for violations, **7:477**  
Tipping policies, **7:475**  
Trading policies, **7:475**  
Scope of regulations, **7:559**  
Institutional investors  
Burden of proof, **7:367**  
Defenses, **7:361**  
Intentional and nonintentional partial  
disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**  
Internal rules, **7:173**  
Interpositioning, **7:170**  
Investigations  
Generally, **13:1 et seq.**  
See also Investigations (this index)  
SEC investigations, below  
Investment community disclosure,  
**7:300**  
Investor confidence, harm to, **7:184**  
Issuer disclosures  
Generally, **7:282 et seq.**  
Periodic reports, **7:289**  
Press releases, **7:283**  
Prospectuses, **7:286**  
Proxy statements, **7:287**  
Reports, **7:289**  
SEC filings, **7:285**  
Shareholder communications,  
**7:284**  
Tender offer statements, **7:288**  
Issuers, harm to, **7:188**  
Joint and several liability, **9:36**  
Judge or jury  
Administrative enforcement, **7:421**  
Criminal proceedings, **7:467**  
Penalty actions, **7:446**  
Raj Rajaratnam criminal case, jury  
trial, **21:26**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Kinds of information  
Generally, **7:202 et seq.**  
Acquisitions, **7:214**  
Corporate information, **7:203 et  
seq.**  
Publicity, **7:216**  
Recommendations, **7:215**  
Tender offers, **7:214**  
Knowledge of inside source, tippee  
violations, **7:672**  
Knowledge that tippee will trade,  
**7:662**  
Law and fact questions, nonpublic  
character of information, **7:314**  
Leadership role sentencing enhance-  
ment (U.S.S.G. § 3B1.1(a)),  
**21:36**  
Limitations period, disclosure as  
starting, **7:279**  
Mail and wire fraud  
Generally, **7:171, 7:463**  
Scienter, **7:413**  
Management compensation, **7:193**  
Market efficiency, **7:192**  
Market insiders, **7:575**  
Market integrity harm to, **7:185**  
Market reaction as public/nonpublic  
test, **7:281**  
Martha Stewart case  
Generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
Acquittal, **7:411**  
Background of case, **7:404**  
Imclone stock sale, **7:404**  
Indictment, **7:405**  
Inferences from evidence, **7:409**  
Intent inference test, **7:410**  
Limits on argument and evidence,  
**7:407**  
Misrepresentation, **7:406**  
Scienter, generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**  
Materiality  
Generally, **7:218 et seq.**  
Acquisitions  
Negotiations, **7:262 et seq.**  
Nonnegotiated, **7:270**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Materiality—Cont'd  
 Actual market impact after release,  
     **7:236**  
 Aggregate materiality, **7:225**  
 Burden of proof, **7:226**  
 Dividend information, **7:247**  
 Evidence, **7:229 et seq.**  
 Expectations, relation to, **7:233**  
 Factors, **7:229 et seq.**  
 Graduations of materiality, **7:224**  
 Law or fact issue, **7:227**  
 Magnitude relative to company,  
     **7:230**  
 Market release, actual impact of,  
     **7:236**  
 Probability relative to company,  
     **7:230**  
 Proof, **7:226**  
 Public disclosure and materiality,  
     **7:280**  
 Public information, relation of  
     inside information to, **7:234**  
 Readily available information  
     compared, **7:234**  
 Reasonable investor test  
     Generally, **7:221**  
     Substantial market impact test  
         compared, **7:223**  
 Regulation FD triggering  
     disclosures, **7:535**  
 Relation to expectations, **7:233**  
 Reliability, **7:231**  
 Selective disclosures, materiality  
     of, **7:535**  
 Specificity, **7:232**  
 Standard of proof, **7:228**  
 Substantial market impact test  
     Generally, **7:222**  
     Reasonable investor test  
         compared, **7:223**  
 Tests of materiality  
     Generally, **7:219 et seq.**  
     Aggregate materiality test,  
         **7:225**  
     Graduations of materiality,  
         **7:224**  
     Mosaic theory, **7:225**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Materiality—Cont'd  
 Tests of materiality—Cont'd  
     Reasonable investor test  
         Generally, **7:221**  
         Substantial market impact test  
             compared, **7:223**  
     Significant alteration of total  
         mix, **7:221**  
     Substantial market impact test  
         Generally, **7:222**  
         Reasonable investor test  
             compared, **7:223**  
     Use as test of, **7:235**  
 Materiality and public disclosure,  
     **7:280, 21:16**  
 Material nonpublic information  
     (MNPI)  
     Defined, **7:152**  
     Materiality, above  
     Nonpublic information, below  
 Media disclosures  
     Generally, **7:292 et seq.**  
     Particular media, **7:299**  
     Timing, **7:297**  
 Merits, trial on, Raj Rajaratnam case,  
     **21:19**  
 Method of disclosure, Regulation FD,  
     **7:544**  
 Misappropriation theory of liability  
     Generally, **7:577**  
     Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**  
     Close family relationships, **7:587**  
     Connection element, **7:597**  
     Connection with transaction, **7:680**  
     Court cases, **7:582 et seq.**  
     Enforcement actions, **7:578**  
     Family relationships, **7:587**  
     Mail and wire fraud, **7:594**  
     Private actions, **7:499, 7:579,**  
         **7:603**  
     Rule 10b5-2, **7:585 et seq.**  
     Shared confidences, **7:590**  
     Tippers, **7:382**  
     Trading insiders, **7:378**  
     Trading tippees, **7:386**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

Misrepresentations, public disclosure  
as curing, **7:276 et seq.**

#### MNPI

Defined, **7:152**

Materiality, above

Nonpublic information, below

Monitoring rules in context, **7:174**

Moral considerations, **7:189**

Motion practice

Generally, **7:365**

Nonpublic nature of information,  
**7:311**

Suppression of wiretap evidence,  
**21:12**

Mutual fund violations, **17:9**

Necessity requirement, wiretap evi-  
dence in Raj Rajaratnam case,  
**21:14, 21:17**

Nonpublic information

Generally, **7:271 et seq.**

Absorption requirement, **7:306 et  
seq.**

Burden of proof, **7:312**

Duty to disclose generally, **7:275**

Eliminating nonpublic information,  
Regulation FD, **7:552**

Full disclosure duty triggered by  
partial disclosure of, **7:536**

Investment community disclosure,  
**7:300**

Issuer disclosures

Generally, **7:282 et seq.**

Periodic reports, **7:289**

Press releases, **7:283**

Prospectuses, **7:286**

Proxy statements, **7:287**

Reports, **7:289**

SEC filings, **7:285**

Shareholder communications,  
**7:284**

Tender offer statements, **7:288**

Law and fact questions, **7:314**

Limitations period, disclosure as  
starting, **7:279**

Market reaction as public/  
nonpublic test, **7:281**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

Nonpublic information—Cont'd

Materiality and public disclosure,  
**7:280**

Media disclosures

Generally, **7:292 et seq.**

Particular media, **7:299**

Timing, **7:297**

Misrepresentations, public  
disclosure as curing, **7:276 et  
seq.**

Motion practice, **7:311**

Omissions, public disclosure as  
curing, **7:276 et seq.**

Pleading, **7:310**

Procedural aspects, **7:309 et seq.**

Proof, **7:313**

Public as affecting insider trading,  
**7:272 et seq.**

Quantum of proof, **7:312**

Rumors, **7:301**

Time in becoming public, **7:304 et  
seq.**

Tipping of, **7:272 et seq.**

NYSE rules, **App F**

Obstruction sentencing enhancement  
under U.S.S.G § 3C1.1, **21:37,  
21:43**

Omissions

Materiality of, Raj Rajaratnam  
case, **21:16**

Public disclosure as curing, **7:276  
et seq.**

On basis of inside information, trades  
made, **7:348**

Operational information, **7:209**

Opposite side traders

Damages, **7:522**

Elements of action, **7:518**

Relations of parties to market,  
**7:494**

Suits by, **7:504**

Opposition to motion to suppress  
wiretap evidence, Raj  
Rajaratnam case, **21:13**

Overview, **7:638 et seq.**

Parties, **7:363**

Pecuniary benefit to tippee, **7:628**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Penalty actions
  - Generally, **7:438**
  - Aider-abettors, **7:449**
  - Amount of penalty
    - Control persons, **7:459**
    - Court-imposed, **7:439**
  - Bounties, **7:445**
  - Control person liability
    - Generally, **7:451 et seq.**
    - All control persons, **7:453**
    - Amount of liability, **7:459**
    - Broker-dealer control persons, **7:456**
    - B test, **7:456**
    - Contribution to violation, **7:458**
    - Failure to act, **7:455**
    - Investment adviser control persons, **7:456**
    - Knowledge
      - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
      - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
    - Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**
    - Reckless disregard
      - Failure to have preventive policies in place, **7:457**
      - Likelihood of violation, **7:454**
    - Requirements, **7:452**
    - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
    - Substantial contribution to violation, **7:458**
    - A test, **7:453**
  - Control persons, penalties imposed on, **7:440**
  - Court imposed penalties, **7:439**
  - Disposition of penalties, **7:445**
  - Double jeopardy limitations, **7:443**
  - Factors considered in imposition of penalties, **7:442**
  - Informants, awards to, **7:445**
  - Judge or jury, **7:446**
  - Maximum penalties imposed, **7:441**
  - Persons liable
    - Generally, **7:447**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Penalty actions—Cont'd
  - Persons liable—Cont'd
    - Aider-abettors, **7:449**
    - Control person liability, above
    - Employers, **7:450**
    - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
    - Tippers, **7:448**
    - Traders, **7:448**
  - Respondeat superior liability, **7:450**
  - Settled penalties, **7:444**
  - Tippees, penalties imposed on, **7:439**
  - Traders, penalties imposed on, **7:439**
- Persons subject to regulation
  - Generally, **7:642 et seq.**
  - Advisers, **7:652**
  - Affiliated entities, **7:647**
  - Business associates, **7:653**
  - Contraction era, **7:646**
  - Directors, **7:649**
  - Employees, **7:650**
  - Expansion era, **7:645**
  - Issuers, **7:643 et seq.**
  - Officers, **7:648**
  - Shareholders, **7:651**
  - Tippees, **7:654**
- Pervasiveness, **7:195**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **7:364**
  - Nonpublic nature of information, **7:310**
  - Scienter, **7:398**
- Policies, preventive
  - Generally, **7:468 et seq.**
  - Arguments pro, **7:191 et seq.**
  - Broker-dealers, **7:470**
  - Con arguments, **7:180 et seq.**
  - Control person liabilities for failure to have, **7:457**
  - Education, **7:473**
  - Information policies and procedures, **7:474**
  - Investment advisers, **7:470**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

Policies, preventive—Cont'd  
Nature of policies and procedures,  
**7:472**

Organizations, requirements for,  
**7:471**

Procedures, **7:476**

Sanctions for violations, **7:477**

Tipping policies, **7:475**

Trading policies, **7:475**

Possession of MNPI

Generally, **7:316**

Awareness and possession  
distinguished, **7:349**

Burden of proof, **7:321, 7:341**

Chinese walls

Generally, **7:343 et seq.**

Evolution of rule, **7:344**

Operation, **7:345**

Connection with transaction, **7:681**

Individuals, proof for, **7:342**

Knowing possession, **7:320**

Mere possession, **7:319**

Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et  
seq.**

Precautions against trading, **7:346**

Proof, **7:322 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5

Generally, **7:318 et seq.**

Access, proof of, **7:323**

Awareness and possession  
distinguished, **7:349**

Burden of proof, **7:321**

Contact, proof of, **7:324**

Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**

Knowing possession, **7:320**

Mere possession, **7:319**

Organizations, proof for, **7:326**

Proof, **7:322 et seq.**

Trading, proof of, **7:325**

Use inferred from possession,  
**7:328**

Rule 14e-3

Generally, **7:340 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **7:341**

Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**

Individuals, proof for, **7:342**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

Possession of MNPI—Cont'd

Rule 14e-3—Cont'd

Organizations, proof for, **7:343  
et seq.**

Precautions against trading,  
**7:346**

Standard of proof, **7:341**

Standard of proof, **7:341**

Use compared, **7:317**

Predictions, earning, **7:204**

Pre-trial detention, Raj Rajaratnam  
case, **21:6, 21:8**

Principals, harm to, **7:190**

Private actions

Generally, **7:478 et seq., 7:491 et  
seq.**

Amount of liability, **7:488, 7:521  
et seq.**

Ancillary relief, **7:490, 7:525**

Background, **7:501**

Causation, **7:517**

Contemporaneous traders, actions  
by, **7:503 et seq.**

Control persons, actions against,  
**7:486, 7:512**

Convertibles traders, suits by,  
**7:508**

Damages, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**

Elements of action, **7:514 et seq.**

Express causes of action, **7:478 et  
seq.**

Fiduciary theory, **7:498**

Implied causes of action, **7:491 et  
seq., 7:493 et seq.**

Market, relation of parties to,  
**7:493 et seq.**

Misappropriation theory, **7:499**

Opposite side traders

Damages, **7:522**

Elements of action, **7:518**

Relations of parties to market,  
**7:494**

Suits by, **7:504**

Option traders, suits by, **7:507**

Other liabilities, relation to, **7:489**

Parties defendant, **7:483, 7:509**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Private actions—Cont'd
  - Parties plaintiff
    - Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**
    - Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**
  - Relation to other liabilities, **7:489, 7:524**
  - Reliance, **7:516**
  - Rule 10b-5, **7:497 et seq.**
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:500**
  - Same class of securities, actions by traders in, **7:482, 7:506**
  - Same side traders
    - Damages, **7:523**
    - Elements of action, **7:519**
    - Relations of parties to market, **7:495**
    - Suits by, **7:505**
  - SEA § 16(b), **7:160**
  - Standing, **7:520**
  - Tippers, actions against, **7:485, 7:511**
  - Traders
    - Actions against, **7:484, 7:510**
    - Contemporaneous, suits by, **7:481**
    - Who can be sued, **7:483, 7:509**
    - Who can sue, generally, **7:502**
    - Who may sue
      - Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**
      - Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**
  - Private purpose, transmission of information for, **7:661**
  - Privity
    - Implied liability, **8:277**
    - SA § 12(2), **8:267**
    - SA § 17(a), **8:277**
    - Sales fraud, **8:267**
  - Probable cause, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:15**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**
  - Prompt disclosure requirement, Regulation FD, **7:543**
  - Proof
    - Generally, **7:368**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Proof—Cont'd
  - Materiality, **7:226**
  - Nonpublic nature of information, **7:313**
  - Transmission of information, **7:660**
- Protection of information traders, **7:183**
- Proximity of tippee, **7:673**
- Publicity, **7:216**
- Public or nonpublic character of information. Nonpublic information, above
- Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**
- Rajaratnam-Chiesi conspiracy, Count Five, **21:24**
- Rajaratnam-Goel conspiracy, Count Three, **21:22**
- Rajaratnam-Khan conspiracy, Count Two, **21:21**
- Rajaratnam-Kumar conspiracy, Count Four, **21:23**
- Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading
  - Generally, **21:1 et seq.**
  - Arguments in Rajaratnam criminal case, above
  - Arrest of Rajaratnam, **21:4**
  - Background of Rajaratnam, **21:2**
  - Bail hearing, **21:9**
  - Bail in securities prosecutions
    - Generally, **21:5**
    - Federal bail, **21:8**
    - Final word, **21:10**
    - Hearing, **21:9**
  - Calculation of gain under U.S.S.G., by Rajaratnam, **21:39, 21:40**
  - Calculation of sentence, **21:34 et seq.**
  - Closing arguments, **21:25**
  - Co-conspirators' sentences, **21:44**
  - Conclusions and observations on sentencing, **21:49**
  - Counts One through Five, **21:20 to 21:24**
  - Court decision on suppression of wiretap evidence, **21:14**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading—Cont'd
  - Criminal offenses, DOJ argument on nature and circumstances, **21:33**
  - Defense arguments on nature and character of defendant, **21:38**
  - Disputes, opinion of Judge Holwell resolving sentencing disputes, **21:45**
  - DOJ arguments, **21:33**
  - Early investigation by SEC, **21:3**
  - Failure to establish probable cause, **21:15**
  - Federal bail, **21:8**
  - Federal Sentencing Guidelines, **21:28 to 21:31**
  - Gain, **21:35, 21:39, 21:40**
  - Galleon conspiracy
    - Count One, **21:20**
    - Gain, **21:46**
  - Government opposition to suppression of wiretap evidence, **21:13**
  - Government's technical sentencing guideline calculation, **21:34**
  - Hearing, bail, **21:9**
  - Interpretation of Sentencing Guidelines, **21:46**
  - Investigation by SEC, early, **21:3**
  - Judge Holwell's opinions, **21:45, 21:46**
  - Jury trial, **21:26**
  - Leadership role enhancement (U.S.S.G. § 3B1.1(a)), **21:36, 21:42, 21:47**
  - Length of sentence under Federal Sentencing Guidelines, **21:30**
  - Limitation of gain to amount actually realized by defendant, **21:40**
  - Materiality of omissions, **21:16**
  - Motion to suppress wiretap evidence, **21:12**
  - Necessity requirement, **21:14, 21:17**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading—Cont'd
  - Obstruction enhancement under U.S.S.G. § 3C1.1, **21:37, 21:43, 21:48**
  - Omissions, materiality of, **21:16**
  - Opposition to motion to suppress wiretap evidence, **21:13**
  - Overview of sentencing arguments, **21:32**
  - Pre-trial detention, **21:6, 21:8**
  - Probable cause, **21:15**
  - Proof at trial on the merits, **21:19**
  - Rajaratnam-Chiesi conspiracy, Count Five, **21:24**
  - Rajaratnam-Goel conspiracy, Count Three, **21:22**
  - Rajaratnam-Khan conspiracy, Count Two, **21:21**
  - Rajaratnam-Kumar conspiracy, Count Four, **21:23**
  - Resolution of leadership role enhancement, **21:47**
  - Resolution of obstruction issue, **21:48**
  - Sentencing phase, generally, **21:27**
  - Seriousness of offense, overstatement by Sentencing Guidelines, **21:41**
  - Share of gains of Galleon case, **21:46**
  - Statutory maximum, **21:29**
  - Strategies of Federal Sentencing Guidelines, **21:31**
  - Structure of Federal Sentencing Guidelines, **21:28**
  - Suppression of wiretap evidence, motion for, **21:12**
  - Trial on the merits, **21:19**
  - Trial preparation, **21:7**
  - Wiretap evidence
    - Conclusions regarding suppression motion, **21:18**
    - Court decision on suppression, **21:14**
    - Government opposition to suppression, **21:13**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading—Cont'd
- Wiretap evidence—Cont'd
  - Insider trading investigation generally, **21:11**
  - Materiality of omissions, **21:16**
  - Motion to suppress, **21:12**
  - Necessity doctrine, **21:13**
  - Necessity requirement, **21:17**
  - Opposition to motion to suppress, **21:13**
  - Probable cause, failure to establish, **21:15**
- Reasons
  - Con, **7:180 et seq.**
  - Pro, **7:191 et seq.**
- Recommendations, **7:215**
- Registration provisions and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:547**
- Regulation FD disclosure
  - Generally, **7:526 et seq.**
  - Analysts' roles, **7:528**
  - Antifraud provisions and, **7:546**
  - Avoiding selective disclosure, **7:553**
  - Companies covered, **7:545**
  - Compliance, **7:551 et seq.**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Eliminating nonpublic information, **7:552**
  - Enforcement, **7:549**
  - Exemption provisions and, **7:548**
  - Information, triggering, **7:534**
  - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
  - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
  - Method of disclosure, **7:544**
  - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
  - Policy basis, **7:527**
  - Prompt disclosure requirement, **7:543**
  - Registration provisions and, **7:547**
  - Regulatory gap, **7:530**
  - Scope of regulation, **7:545**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd
  - SEC filing, compliance by, **7:555**
- Selective disclosure
  - Generally, **7:529**
  - Avoiding, **7:553**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Materiality, **7:535**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Simultaneous disclosure requirements, **7:542**
- Timing requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
- Triggering events
  - Generally, **7:531 et seq.**
  - Information, triggering, **7:534**
  - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
  - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
  - Non-intentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Nontriggering disclosures, **7:533**
  - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
  - Selective disclosures, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Validity, **7:550**
- Violations, curing, **7:554**
- Relationships subject to regulation, **7:562 et seq.**
- Relations of tippee, benefit to, **7:630**
- Relative, gift to, **7:396**
- Reliance, private actions, **7:516**
- Remoteness of tippee, **7:673**
- Reporting requirements
  - Generally, **7:175 et seq.**
  - Detection of illegal trades, **7:178**
  - Extent of activity, **7:179**
  - Foreign accounts, use of, **7:177**
  - Publication, **7:176**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

Reputational benefit to tippee, **7:629**  
RICO, **7:414, 7:464**  
Rule 10b-5, **4:1, 7:163, 12:4**  
Rule 14e-3, **7:166**  
Rule 15c1-2, **7:165**  
Rule 144, **7:167**  
SA § 17(a)  
    Generally, **7:164**  
    Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:164**  
Same side traders  
    Damages, **7:523**  
    Elements of action, **7:519**  
    Relations of parties to market,  
        **7:495**  
    Suits by, **7:505**  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, inside trading  
    reports, **8:471**  
Scienter  
    Generally, **7:372 et seq.**  
    Fiduciary theory  
        Tippers, **7:381**  
        Trading insiders, **7:377**  
        Trading tippees, **7:385**  
    Knowledge that tippee will trade,  
        **7:662**  
    Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**  
Martha Stewart case  
    Generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
    Acquittal, **7:411**  
    Background of case, **7:404**  
    Imclone stock sale, **7:404**  
    Indictment, **7:405**  
    Inferences from evidence, **7:409**  
    Intent inference test, **7:410**  
    Limits on argument and evi-  
        dence, **7:407**  
    Misrepresentation, **7:406**  
    Sufficiency of evidence test,  
        **7:408**  
Misappropriation theory  
    Tippers, **7:382**  
    Trading insiders, **7:378**  
    Trading tippees, **7:386**  
Pleading, **7:398**  
Proof, **7:399 et seq.**  
Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

Scienter—Cont'd  
    Rule 14e-3, **7:412**  
    Tippee violations, **7:672**  
Tippers  
    Generally, **7:379 et seq.**  
    Fiduciary theory, **7:381**  
    Misappropriation theory, **7:382**  
    Proof, **7:401**  
Tipping violations, **7:662**  
Trading insiders, **7:375 et seq.,**  
    **7:400**  
Trading tippees  
    Generally, **7:383 et seq.**  
    Proof, **7:402**  
Scope of regulations  
    Generally, **7:557 et seq.**  
    Access criteria, **7:560**  
    Buyers, **7:563**  
    Congressional intent, **7:559**  
    Contraction era, **7:561 et seq.**  
    Expansion era, **7:560**  
    Issuers, applicability to, **7:565**  
    Relationships subject to regulation,  
        **7:562 et seq.**  
    SEC efforts to define, **7:559**  
    Sellers, **7:563**  
    Third parties, applicability to,  
        **7:566**  
    Unfairness criteria, **7:560**  
SEA § 16(b)  
    Generally, **7:156 et seq.**  
    Administrative enforcement, **7:159**  
    Civil penalties, **7:159**  
    Insider short sales, **7:157**  
    Private actions, **7:160**  
    Short swing trading, **7:156**  
    Tipping, **7:158**  
SEC investigations  
    Raj Rajaratnam case, early  
        investigation, **21:3**  
    Wiretap in enforcement, **13:146,**  
        **13:153**  
SEC Rule 14e-3  
    Generally, **7:632 et seq.**  
    Duty imposed, **7:633**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

SEC Rule 14e-3—Cont'd  
 Supreme Court validation, **7:636, 7:637**  
 Validity, **7:634 et seq.**  
 Securities Act (SA), Mail and wire fraud, **7:172**  
 Securities professionals as insiders, **7:572**  
 Selective disclosure and full disclosure obligations  
 Generally, **7:529**  
 Avoiding, **7:553**  
 Curing violations, **7:554**  
 Materiality, **7:535**  
 Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**  
 Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**  
 Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**  
 Sentencing phase of Raj Rajaratnam criminal insider trading case, **21:27 et seq.**  
 Shared confidences, **7:590**  
 Share repurchase plans, **7:210**  
 Short swing trading, SEA § 16(b), **7:156**  
 Simultaneous FD disclosure requirements, **7:542**  
 SRO rules, **7:168**  
 State law, **7:153**  
 Summary of provisions, **7:638 et seq.**  
 Suppression of wiretap evidence, **21:12 to 21:18**  
 Tender offers, **6:111, 7:214**  
 Timely disclosure  
 Generally, **7:238 et seq.**  
 Acquisition information  
 Generally, **7:248 et seq.**  
 Agreements  
 Disclosure not required, **7:261**  
 Disclosure required, **7:260**  
 Company, trading by, **7:256**  
 Definitions, **7:250**  
 Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**  
 Leaks, **7:255**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

Timely disclosure—Cont'd  
 Acquisition information—Cont'd  
 Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**  
 Preliminary negotiations  
 Misleading statements, **7:253**  
 No statement made, **7:252**  
 Other situations, **7:254**  
 Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**  
 Rumors, **7:255**  
 Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**  
 Target response to tender offers, **7:258**  
 When disclosure of agreement required, **7:260**  
 When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq.**  
 Business judgment considerations, **7:241**  
 Corporate purpose considerations, **7:242**  
 Delays, justifications for, **7:240**  
 Dividend actions  
 Evolving information, **7:245**  
 Materiality, **7:247**  
 When disclosure required, **7:246**  
 Evolving information. Dividend actions, above  
 Justification for delay, **7:240**  
 Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**  
 Ripeness and timing, **7:243**  
 Tender offers  
 Generally, **7:267**  
 Materiality, **7:270**  
 Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**  
 When disclosure required, **7:269**  
 Timing of FD disclosure requirements, **7:541 et seq.**  
 Tippee's knowledge of tipper's benefit, **7:387**  
 Tippee violations  
 Generally, **7:623, 7:664 et seq.**  
 Benefit to insider-tipper, **7:627**

## INDEX

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Tippee violations—Cont'd
  - Benefit to tipper, **7:671**
  - Dirks background, **7:396, 7:625**
  - Elements of, **7:668 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **7:665**
  - Family benefit to, **7:630**
  - Fiduciary breach requirement, **7:626**
  - Friends, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Issuers, **7:654**
  - Knowledge of inside source, **7:672**
  - Misappropriation, **7:675**
  - Need for fiduciary benefit, **7:626**
  - Pecuniary benefit, **7:628**
  - Penalties imposed on, **7:439**
  - Policies, **7:666**
  - Proof of possession element, **7:670**
  - Proximity of tippee, **7:673**
  - Reasons, **7:666**
  - Receipt in fiduciary breach, **7:623**
  - Relations, benefit to, **7:630**
  - Remoteness of tippee, **7:673**
  - Reputational benefit, **7:629**
  - Scienter, **7:672**
  - Theories of, **7:667**
  - Tip defined, **7:624**
  - Tipper violation, necessity of, **7:674**
  - Trading, **7:675**
- Tipper violations
  - Fiduciary theory, **7:381**
  - Misappropriation theory, **7:382**
  - Scienter, **7:379 et seq.**
- Tipping violations
  - Generally, **7:655 et seq.**
  - Benefit of tipper, transmission of information for, **7:661**
  - Elements of violations, **7:658 et seq.**
  - Expansion era, **7:656**
  - Joint and several liability, **9:36**
  - Knowledge that tippee will trade, **7:662**
  - Necessity of tippee trading, **7:663**
  - Nonpublic information, **7:272 et seq.**

### INSIDERS AND INSIDER TRADING—Cont'd

- Tipping violations—Cont'd
  - Policies, **7:657**
  - Private purpose, transmission of information for, **7:661**
  - Proof of transmission of information, **7:660**
  - Reasons, **7:657**
  - Scienter, **7:662**
  - SEA § 16(b), **7:158**
  - Transmission of information, **7:659**
  - Violations, elements, **7:658 et seq.**
- Transmission of information, **7:659**
- Trial on the merits, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:19**
- Trial preparation, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:7**
- Unequal information, **7:181**
- Unfairness criteria, **7:560**
- Unfairness of activities, **7:181**
- Unintentional disclosures and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:540**
- Use of MNPI
  - Generally, **7:316**
  - Burden of proof, **7:331**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:681**
  - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
  - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
  - Possession compared, **7:317**
  - Rule 10b-5
    - Generally, **7:327 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **7:331**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
    - Inferences, **7:328**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
    - Possession, use inferred from, **7:328**
    - Rebuttal evidence, **7:337, 7:338**
    - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
    - Standard of proof, **7:331**
    - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
    - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
  - Rule 14e-3, generally, **7:347**

**INSIDERS AND INSIDER  
TRADING—Cont'd**

- Use of MNPI—Cont'd
  - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
  - Standard of proof, **7:331**
  - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
  - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
- Wiretap in enforcement
  - Raj Rajaratnam and criminal insider trading, above
  - SEC investigations, **13:146, 13:153**

**INSIDER TRADING AND  
SECURITIES FRAUD  
ENFORCEMENT ACT**

- Broker-dealer liability, **14:168**

**INSTITUTIONAL INVESTORS**

- Suitability of investments, **14:190**

**INSURANCE**

- Generally, **9:76**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, recovery, **20:24**
- SEC settlements, coverage for settling defendants, **13:183**
- Uninsured products NASD risk disclosure requirements, **6:288**

**INSURANCE COMPANIES**

- Proxy rules, applicability of
  - Generally, **6:201**
  - Antifraud provisions, federal, **6:204**
  - Federal and state rules, **6:202**
  - McCarran Act, **6:203**

**INTENT**

- Generally, **8:58 et seq., 8:191 et seq.**
- See also Knowledge (this index)
- Absence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
- Administrative intent, **3:19**
- Common law, **8:59**
- Congressional Intent (this index)
- Conscious intent, **8:358**
- Criminal cases, **8:197**
- Defendant's intent
  - Blue sky laws, **8:61**

**INTENT—Cont'd**

- Defendant's intent—Cont'd
  - Broker-dealer fraud, **8:143**
  - Common law, **8:59**
  - Manipulation, **8:119**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:68**
  - SA § 17(a), **8:86**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:86**
  - Broker-dealer fraud, **8:143**
  - Tender offers, **8:136**
- SEC, false reports to, **8:150**
- Tender offers, **8:136**
- Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:79**
- Foreign cubed cases, discerning intent, **11:23**
- High conscious intent, **8:358**
- Insufficiency, **8:199**
- Manipulation, defendant's intent, **8:119**
- Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:53**
- Presence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
- Private actions, necessity of proving intent in, **8:194**
- Privity determinations, **8:316**
- Proxy fraud, **8:129**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:58, 8:191 et seq.**
  - See also Scienter (this index)
  - Absence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
  - Burden of proof, **8:201**
  - Criminal cases, **8:197**
  - Injunctions, **8:195**
  - Insufficiency, **8:199**
  - Necessity, **8:193 et seq.**
  - Presence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
  - Private actions, necessity of proving intent in, **8:194**
  - Proof, **8:202**
  - Proxy fraud, **8:129**
  - SEC decisions, **8:196**
  - Sufficiency, **8:198**
  - Tender offers, **8:136**
- SEC, false reports to, **8:150**
- Sufficiency, **8:198**

## INDEX

### INTENT—Cont'd

Versions of scienter, relations among,  
**8:192**

### INTERFERENCE

Private actions, materiality, **8:43**

### INTERMEDIARIES

Mutual fund violations, **17:18**

### INTERNAL REVENUE CODE

Backdating of stock options, **18:5**

### INTERNATIONAL FRAUD

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:1 et seq.**

### INTERNATIONAL TRANSACTIONS

See Foreign and International  
Transactions (this index)

### INTERNET

See Crowdfunding (this index)

### INTERPRETATION

Congressional Intent (this index)

Disclosures, **6:236**

Flexibility to achieve remedial  
purpose

Contraction era, **3:88**

Expansion era, **3:66**

Implied liability

Generally, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et  
seq.**

Flexibility to achieve remedial  
purpose

Contraction era, **3:88**

Expansion era, **3:66**

Legislative history, use of

Contraction era, **3:90 et seq.**

Expansion era, **3:68**

Literalism, statutory

Contraction era, **3:89**

Expansion era, **3:67**

Negative implication

Contraction era, **3:87**

Expansion era, **3:65**

Remedial purpose, flexibility to  
achieve

Contraction era, **3:88**

Expansion era, **3:66**

### INTERPRETATION—Cont'd

Implied liability—Cont'd

Rule 10b-5, **3:64 et seq., 3:86 et  
seq.**

Statutory literalism

Contraction era, **3:89**

Expansion era, **3:67**

Legislative history, use of

Contraction era, **3:90 et seq.**

Expansion era, **3:68**

Literalism, statutory

Contraction era, **3:89**

Expansion era, **3:67**

Negative implication

Contraction era, **3:87**

Expansion era, **3:65**

Remedial purpose, flexibility to  
achieve

Contraction era, **3:88**

Expansion era, **3:66**

Statutory literalism

Contraction era, **3:89**

Expansion era, **3:67**

### INVESTIGATIONS

Generally, **13:1 et seq.**

Administrative Enforcement (this  
index)

Attorney General Eric Schneiderman  
of New York, Martin Act suits  
following subprime mortgage  
crisis, **13:336, 13:337**

Attorneys

CFTC investigations

Counsel investigations, **13:219**

Multiple clients, **13:207**

Conflicts of interest

CFTC investigations, **13:207**

SEC investigations, **13:15**

SRO investigations, **13:277**

Counsel investigations

CFTC investigations, **13:219**

SEC investigations, **13:27**

SRO investigations, **13:281**

Early strategy, **13:3**

Foresight, need for, **13:3**

Privileges

Generally, **13:31 et seq.**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

Attorneys—Cont'd  
Privileges—Cont'd  
Attorney-client  
Generally, **13:36**  
Filip era  
Changes in policy, **13:54**  
Cooperation, **13:51, 13:52**  
Internal investigations,  
**13:52**  
Investor recovery, **13:55**  
Joint defense, **13:54**  
Relief from pressure to  
waive, **13:50**  
Sharing agreements, **13:54**  
Waiver request, **13:53**  
Work product, **13:54**  
Waiver  
Constitutional analysis,  
**13:42**  
Constitutional violations,  
**13:43**  
District Court reconsideration  
(Stein IV), **13:46**  
Fee claims, **13:45**  
Filip era, **13:50**  
Findings, **13:41**  
Legal fee payment, **13:39**  
McNulty era, **13:48**  
Pressure to waive, **13:38**  
Proffers under threat of  
nonpayment of legal  
fees, **13:44**  
Relief from pressure to  
waive, **13:48 et seq.**  
Second Circuit (Stein V),  
**13:47**  
Specter Bill, **13:49**  
US v. Stein, **13:39 et seq.**  
Claiming, strategic  
considerations, **13:61 to**  
**13:65**  
Self incrimination  
Generally, **13:32**  
Waiver, **13:33**  
Waiver, **13:33, 13:37 et seq.**  
Work product, **13:59**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

Attorneys—Cont'd  
Right to counsel  
CFTC, **13:206**  
SEC, **13:14**  
SROs, **13:276**  
SEC investigations  
Cooperation agreements, **20:15**  
Counsel investigations, **13:27**  
Multiple clients, **13:15**  
Waiver of attorney-client privi-  
leges, **13:37 et seq.**  
SRO investigations  
Counsel investigations, **13:281**  
Multiple clients, **13:277**  
Strategy, early, **13:3**  
Auction Rate Security (ARS) litigation  
Coordinated SEC-state-SRO  
investigations, generally,  
**13:322 et seq.**  
Criminal aspects, **13:331**  
Government regulatory suits,  
**13:329**  
Investor recovery as objective,  
**13:324**  
Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**  
Securities and market, **13:325**  
Seller management liability,  
**13:330**  
State law, private litigation, **13:328**  
Violations, **13:326**  
Audits of investigations, **13:163**  
Authority to investigate  
CFTC  
Generally, **13:192**  
CEA § 6(b), **13:194**  
CEA § 8, **13:193**  
CEA § 14(b), **13:196**  
CEA § 16(a), **13:193**  
Inspection of records, **13:195**  
Interpretation, **13:198**  
Publishing data, restrictions on,  
**13:193**  
Records inspections, **13:195**  
State investigations, **13:197**  
SEC, **13:6**  
SROs, **13:268**

## INDEX

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

- Authority to investigate—Cont'd
  - State agencies, **13:314**
- Cause investigation, Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**
- CFTC
  - Generally, **13:190 et seq.**
  - Administrative Enforcement (this index)
  - Amicus curiae participation in private litigation, **13:234**
  - Authority to investigate
    - Generally, **13:192**
    - Inspection of records, **13:195**
    - Interpretation, **13:198**
    - Publishing data, restrictions on, **13:193**
    - Records inspections, **13:195**
    - State investigations, **13:197**
  - CEA § 6(b), **13:194**
  - CEA § 8, **13:193**
  - CEA § 16(a), **13:193**
  - Character of investigations, **13:191**
  - Collateral effects of orders, **13:241**
  - Conferences with staff, **13:218**
  - Conflicts of interest, **13:207**
  - Contacts, responses to, **13:205**
  - Counsel investigations, **13:219**
  - Discovery
    - Generally, **13:224 et seq.**
    - Document production, **13:217**
    - Document subpoenas, **13:225**
    - FOIA requests, **13:226**
    - Production requests, **13:227**
    - Rule 34 production requests, **13:227**
  - Documents
    - Production, **13:217**
    - Subpoenas, **13:225**
    - Third party access to, **13:224 et seq.**
  - Early strategy, **13:3**
  - Factors influencing outcome, **13:264**
  - FOIA requests, **13:226**
  - Foresight, need for, **13:3**
  - Formal orders of investigation
    - Generally, **13:208**

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

- CFTC—Cont'd
  - Formal orders of investigation—Cont'd
    - Access to orders, **13:210**
    - Content, **13:209**
    - Evaluation, **13:211**
    - Issuance, **13:208**
    - Validity, **13:212**
  - Implications of investigations, **13:2**
  - Informal enforcement actions, **13:233**
  - Informal warnings, **13:230**
  - Information given by agency, **13:204**
  - Inspection of records, **13:195**
  - Multiple clients, **13:207**
  - Negotiating an outcome, **13:266**
  - No further action outcomes, **13:229**
  - Outcomes of investigations, **13:228 et seq.**
  - Overview, **13:1**
  - Parallel civil and criminal proceedings, **13:263**
  - Private investigations, **13:201**
  - Privileges, **13:223**
  - Production requests, **13:227**
  - Public investigations, **13:201**
  - Public reports, **13:232**
  - Records inspections, **13:195**
  - Reports, **13:232**
  - Requests for information, **13:203**
  - Responses to contacts, **13:205**
  - Right to counsel, **13:206**
  - Rule 34 production requests, **13:227**
  - Rule 45(b) subpoenas, **13:225**
  - SROs, references to, **13:231**
  - Staff conferences, **13:218**
  - State authorities, references to, **13:231**
  - State investigations, **13:197**
  - Statistics, **13:202**
  - Strategy, early, **13:3**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

CFTC—Cont'd  
 Subpoenas  
   Generally, **13:203, 13:213 et seq.**  
   Content, **13:214**  
   Document production, **13:217**  
   Document subpoenas, **13:225**  
   Evaluation, **13:215**  
   Power to issue, **13:200**  
   Responses, **13:217**  
   Validity challenges, **13:216**  
 Testimony  
   Generally, **13:220 et seq.**  
   Interrogations, **13:221**  
   Preparing witnesses, **13:220**  
   Transcripts, **13:222**  
 Transcripts, third party access to, **13:224 et seq.**  
 Triggers of investigations, **13:199**  
 Types of investigations, **13:200 et seq.**  
 Warnings, **13:230**  
 Wells submissions, **13:265**  
 Character of investigations  
   CFTC, **13:191**  
   SEC, **13:5**  
 Collateral effects of orders  
   CFTC, **13:241**  
   SEC, **13:92**  
   SROs, **13:298**  
 Collateralized debt obligations(CDOs), subprime mortgage crisis, **13:332**  
 Compliance orders, SEC, **13:82**  
 Conflicts of interest  
   CFTC investigations, **13:207**  
   SEC investigations, **13:15**  
   SRO investigations, **13:277**  
 Contacts, responses to  
   CFTC, **13:205**  
   SEC, **13:13**  
   SROs, **13:275**  
 Cooperation by target  
   Assistance provided, **20:15**  
   Framework for evaluation of cooperation, **20:15**  
   Remediation, **20:15**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

Cooperation by target—Cont'd  
   SEC investigations, **13:154 to 13:157, 20:15**  
   Self-policing, **20:15**  
   Self-reporting, **20:15**  
   SROs investigations, **13:305**  
 Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations  
   Generally, **13:322 et seq.**  
   ARS seller management liability, **13:330**  
   ARS violations, **13:326**  
   Auction Rate Security (ARS), **13:323**  
   Criminal aspects, **13:331**  
   Government regulatory suits, **13:329**  
   Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**  
   Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**  
   State law, private litigation, **13:328**  
   Subprime mortgage crisis, **13:332 to 13:339**  
 Corruption, DOJ suit against Standard and Poor's, **13:338**  
 Counsel investigations  
   CFTC, **13:219**  
   SEC, **13:27**  
   SROs, **13:281**  
 Creators of residential mortgage-backed securities, investor litigation, **13:335**  
 Credit Suisse Securities suit, subprime mortgage crisis, **13:337**  
 Dexia v. Bear Stearns case, subprime mortgage crisis, **13:335**  
 Discovery  
   CFTC  
     Generally, **13:224 et seq.**  
     Document production, **13:217**  
     Document subpoenas, **13:225**  
     FOIA requests, **13:226**  
     Production requests, **13:227**  
   SEC  
     Generally, **13:66 et seq.**  
     Document production, **13:25**  
     Document subpoenas, **13:67**

INDEX

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

- Discovery—Cont'd
  - SEC—Cont'd
    - FOIA requests, **13:68**
    - Production requests, **13:69**
    - SROs, generally, **13:286**
- Documents
  - Production
    - CFTC, **13:217**
    - SEC, **13:25**
  - Third party access to
    - CFTC, **13:224 et seq.**
    - SEC, **13:66 et seq.**
    - SROs, **13:286**
- DOJ suit against Standard and Poor's, **13:338**
- Enforcement actions. See Administrative Enforcement (this index)
- Factors influencing outcome
  - CFTC, **13:264**
  - SEC, **13:154 to 13:157**
  - SROs, **13:305**
- Financial Crisis Inquiry Commission report, summary, **13:333**
- First Amendment rights, **13:35**
- FOIA requests
  - CFTC, **13:226**
  - SEC, **13:68**
- Foreseeability, subprime mortgage crisis, **13:334**
- Formal investigations, SEC, **13:8**
- Formal orders of investigation
  - Access to orders
    - CFTC, **13:210**
    - SEC, **13:18**
  - CFTC
    - Generally, **13:208**
    - Access to orders, **13:210**
    - Content, **13:209**
    - Evaluation, **13:211**
    - Validity, **13:212**
  - Content
    - CFTC, **13:209**
    - SEC, **13:17**
  - Evaluation
    - CFTC, **13:211**
    - SEC, **13:19**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

- Formal orders of investigation—Cont'd
  - Issuance
    - CFTC, **13:208**
    - SEC, **13:16**
  - SEC
    - Generally, **13:16 et seq.**
    - Access to orders, **13:18**
    - Content, **13:17**
    - Evaluation, **13:19**
    - Validity, **13:20**
  - SROs, **13:278**
  - Validity
    - CFTC, **13:212**
    - SEC, **13:20**
- Fraud, DOJ suit against Standard and Poor's, **13:338**
- Informal enforcement actions
  - CFTC, **13:233**
  - SROs, **13:292**
- Informal investigations, SEC, **13:8**
- Informal warnings
  - CFTC, **13:230**
  - SEC, **13:72**
  - SROs, **13:289**
- Information given by agency
  - CFTC, **13:204**
  - SEC, **13:12**
  - SROs, **13:274**
- Injunctions (this index)
- Insiders and Insider Trading (this index)
- Investor litigation following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:335**
- Investor recovery as objective of coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:324**
- JP Morgan/Bear Stearns action, subprime mortgage crisis, **13:336**
- Jurisdiction
  - Generally, **11:2 et seq.**
  - See also Jurisdiction (this index)
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, SEC investigations, **20:2, 20:6**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

- Martin Act suits, subprime mortgage crisis, **13:336, 13:337**
- Mortgage backed securities (MBSs), subprime mortgage crisis, **13:332**
- Negotiating an outcome
  - CFTC, **13:266**
  - SEC
    - Generally, **13:161 et seq.**
    - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:163**
    - Authority of staff, **13:162**
    - Considerations, **13:165**
    - Objectives, **13:164**
  - SROs
    - Generally, **13:308 et seq.**
    - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:310**
    - Considerations, **13:312**
    - Objectives, **13:311**
- No further action outcomes
  - CFTC, **13:229**
  - SEC, **13:71**
  - SROs, **13:288**
- Orders
  - CFTC
    - Collateral effects of orders, **13:241**
    - Duration of orders, **13:243**
  - Collateral effects of orders
    - CFTC, **13:241**
    - SEC, **13:92**
    - SROs, **13:298**
  - Compliance orders, SEC, **13:82**
  - Duration of orders
    - CFTC, **13:243**
    - SEC, **13:94**
    - SROs, **13:300**
  - Formal orders of investigation, above
  - SEC
    - Collateral effects of orders, **13:92**
    - Compliance orders, **13:82**
    - Duration of orders, **13:94**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

- Orders—Cont'd
  - SROs
    - Collateral effects of orders, **13:298**
    - Duration of orders, **13:300**
- Outcomes of investigations
  - CFTC, **13:228 et seq.**
  - SEC, **13:70 et seq.**
  - SROs, **13:287 et seq.**
  - State agencies, **13:317**
- Overview, **13:1**
- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings
  - Generally, **13:133 et seq.**
  - Battle over discovery, **13:135**
  - CFTC references, **13:263**
  - Civil-criminal flow of information, **13:139**
  - Continuation of criminal proceedings, **13:140**
  - Continuations of civil proceedings, **13:137, 13:138**
  - Criminal-civil flow of information, **13:141, 13:142, 13:143**
  - Criteria for stay of discovery, **13:136**
  - Discovery, **13:139, 13:141, 13:143**
  - Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**
  - Reasons for concern, **13:134**
  - SEC references, **13:133 et seq.**
- Payments to foreign government officials. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA) (this index)
- Preliminary investigations, **13:8**
- Private investigations
  - CFTC, **13:201**
  - SEC, **13:9**
  - SROs, **13:271**
- Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**
- Privileges
  - Attorney-client, SEC
    - Generally, **13:36**
    - Waiver, **13:37 et seq.**
  - CFTC investigations, generally, **13:223**

INDEX

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

Privileges—Cont'd  
Claiming, strategic considerations,  
SEC, **13:61 to 13:65**  
SEC  
Generally, **13:31 et seq.**  
Attorney-client  
Generally, **13:36**  
Waiver, **13:37 et seq.**  
Claiming, strategic  
considerations, **13:61 to  
13:65**  
Self incrimination  
Generally, **13:32**  
Waiver, **13:33**  
Unreasonable search and  
seizure, **13:34**  
Waiver, **13:33**  
Work product, **13:59**  
Self incrimination  
Generally, **13:32**  
Waiver, **13:33**  
SRO investigations, **13:285**  
Unreasonable search and seizure,  
**13:34**  
Waiver, **13:33, 13:37 et seq.**  
Work product, **13:59**  
Public investigations  
CFTC, **13:201**  
SEC, **13:9**  
SROs, **13:271**  
Reports  
CFTC, **13:232**  
SEC, **1:10, 13:74 et seq.**  
SROs, **13:291**  
Requests for information  
CFTC, **13:203**  
SEC, **13:11**  
SROs, **13:273**  
Residential mortgages, failure during  
subprime mortgage crisis,  
**13:332**  
Responses to contacts  
CFTC, **13:205**  
SEC, **13:13**  
SROs, **13:275**  
Right to counsel  
CFTC, **13:206**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

Right to counsel—Cont'd  
SEC, **13:14**  
SROs, **13:276**  
Rule 45(b) subpoenas  
CFTC, **13:225**  
SEC, **13:67**  
Sanctions, SEC, **13:81**  
SEC  
Generally, **13:4 et seq.**  
Access, use of wiretap in enforce-  
ment, **13:150**  
Administrative Enforcement (this  
index)  
Adoption of changes, **20:11**  
Amicus curiae participation in  
private litigation, **13:79**  
Analysis of tips, complaints and  
referrals by Office of Market  
Intelligence, **20:14**  
Asset Management Unit, **20:12**  
Assistance provided, **20:15**  
Attorney-client privilege  
Generally, **13:36**  
Filip era  
Changes in policy, **13:54**  
Cooperation, **13:51, 13:52**  
Internal investigations, **13:52**  
Investor recovery, **13:55**  
Joint defense, **13:54**  
Relief from pressure to waive,  
**13:50**  
Sharing agreements, **13:54**  
Waiver request, **13:53**  
Work product, **13:54**  
Waiver  
Generally, **13:37 et seq.**  
Constitutional analysis, **13:42**  
Constitutional violations,  
**13:43**  
District Court reconsideration  
(Stein IV), **13:46**  
Fee claims, **13:45**  
Filip era, **13:50**  
Findings, **13:41**  
KPMG's actions, **13:40**  
Legal fee payment, **13:39**  
McNulty era, **13:48**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

SEC—Cont'd  
 Attorney-client privilege—Cont'd  
     Waiver—Cont'd  
         Pressure to waive, **13:38**  
         Proffers under threat of nonpayment of legal fees, **13:44**  
         Relief from pressure to waive, **13:48 et seq.**  
         Second Circuit (Stein V), **13:47**  
         Specter Bill, **13:49**  
         US v. Stein, **13:39 et seq.**  
 Audits of investigations, **13:163**  
 Authority for wiretap, **13:145**  
 Authority to investigate, **13:6**  
 Bounties to whistleblowers, **20:15**  
 Changes, **20:11**  
 Character of investigations, **13:5**  
 Collateral effects of orders, **13:92**  
 Collateral horrors of cooperation, **20:15**  
 Collection of tips, complaints and referrals by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
 Compliance orders, **13:82**  
 Conferences with staff, **13:26**  
 Conflicts of interest, **13:15**  
 Contacts, responses to, **13:13**  
 Control of wiretap results, **13:148**  
 Cooperation agreements, **20:15**  
 Cooperation by target, **13:154 to 13:157, 20:15**  
 Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations  
     Generally, **13:322 et seq.**  
     ARS securities and market, **13:325**  
     ARS seller management liability, **13:330**  
     ARS violations, **13:326**  
     Auction Rate Security (ARS), **13:323**  
     Criminal aspects, **13:331**  
     Government regulatory suits, **13:329**  
     Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

SEC—Cont'd  
 Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations—Cont'd  
     Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**  
     State law, private litigation, **13:328**  
 Counsel investigations, **13:27**  
 Deferred prosecution agreements, **20:15**  
 Delay of SEC investigations, **20:10**  
 Discovery  
     Generally, **13:66 et seq.**  
     Document production, **13:25**  
     Document subpoenas, **13:67**  
     FOIA requests, **13:68**  
     Production requests, **13:69**  
     Rule 34 production requests, **13:69**  
 Document production, **13:25**  
 Documents, third party access to, **13:66 et seq.**  
 Document subpoenas, **13:67**  
 Early strategy, **13:3**  
 Encouraging cooperation, **20:15**  
 Enforcement Manual 2010 revisions, **20:15**  
 Evaluation of cooperation, **20:15**  
 Experience level of investigative personnel, **20:10**  
 Expertise of investigators, **20:12**  
 Factors influencing outcome, **13:154 to 13:157**  
 First Amendment freedoms, **13:35**  
 Focus of SEC examinations, **20:10**  
 FOIA requests, **13:68**  
 Foreign Corrupt Practices Act Unit, **20:12**  
 Foresight, need for, **13:3**  
 Formal investigations, **13:8**  
 Formal orders of investigation  
     Generally, **13:16 et seq.**  
     Access to orders, **13:18**  
     Content, **13:17**  
     Evaluation, **13:19**  
     Issuance, **13:16**  
     Validity, **13:20**

## INDEX

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

#### SEC—Cont'd

- Fostering cooperation, **20:15**
- Framework for evaluation of cooperation, **20:15**
- Galleon cases, use of wiretap in enforcement, **13:146, 13:153**
- Implications of investigations, **13:2**
- Informal enforcement actions, **13:78**
- Informal investigations, **13:8**
- Informal warnings, **13:72**
- Information given by agency, **13:12**
- Insider trading, use of wiretap in enforcement, **13:146, 13:153**
- Internal communications within investigations, **20:10**
- Judicial approval of wiretap, **13:151**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2, 20:6, 20:10 to 20:24**
- Market Abuse Unit, **20:12**
- Monitoring of tips, complaints and referrals by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**
- Multiple clients, **13:15**
- Municipal Securities and Public Pensions Unit, **20:12**
- Negotiating an outcome
  - Generally, **13:161 et seq.**
  - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:163**
  - Authority of staff, **13:162**
  - Considerations, **13:165**
  - Objectives, **13:164**
- No further action outcomes, **13:71**
- Nonprosecution agreements, **20:15**
- Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**
- Outcomes of investigations, **13:70 et seq.**
- Overview, **13:1**
- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings, **13:133 et seq.**
- Preliminary investigations, **13:8**
- Privacy interests, use of wiretap in enforcement, **13:149, 13:150**

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

#### SEC—Cont'd

- Private investigations, **13:9**
- Privileges
  - Generally, **13:31 et seq.**
  - Attorney-client
    - Generally, **13:36**
    - Waiver, **13:37 et seq.**
  - Claiming, strategic considerations, **13:61 to 13:65**
  - Self incrimination
    - Generally, **13:32**
    - Waiver, **13:33**
  - Waiver, **13:33**
  - Work product, **13:59**
- Production requests, **13:69**
- Proffer agreements, **20:15**
- Public access, use of wiretap in enforcement, **13:149**
- Public investigations, **13:9**
- Public reports, **13:74 et seq.**
- Rajaratnam case issues yet to be resolved, **13:153**
- Red flags during investigations, **20:10**
- Referrals, screening by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**
- Relevancy of wiretap, **13:152**
- Remediation by target, **20:15**
- Reports, **1:10, 13:74 et seq.**
- Requests for information, **13:11**
- Resolutions of examiners, **20:10**
- Responses to contacts, **13:13**
- Restricted immunity offers, **20:15**
- Review, use of wiretap in enforcement, **13:147**
- Right to counsel, **13:14**
- Risks of cooperation, **20:15**
- Rule 34 production requests, **13:69**
- Rule 45(b) subpoenas, **13:67**
- Sanctions, **13:81**
- Scope of investigations, **20:10**
- SEA § 21(a) reports, **13:74 et seq.**
- Seaboard Report, **20:15**
- Self-policing by target, **20:15**
- Self-reporting by target, **20:15**
- Settlements, **13:154 to 13:157**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

SEC—Cont'd

- Sharing information with other agencies, etc., **20:14**
- Shortening of Wells process, **20:13**
- Specialized investigation units, **20:12**
- Specialized investigators, **20:12**
- Specificity, **13:104**
- SROs, references to, **13:73**
- Staff conferences, **13:26**
- Staffing of investigations, **20:10**
- Staff performance evaluation, **20:13**
- State authorities, references to, **13:73**
- Statistics, **13:10**
- Strategy, early, **13:3**
- Streamlining internal investigation procedures, **20:13**
- Structured and New Products Unit, **20:12**
- Subpoenas
  - Generally, **13:11, 13:21 et seq.**
  - Content, **13:22**
  - Document production, **13:25**
  - Document subpoenas, **13:67**
  - Evaluation, **13:23**
  - Responses, **13:25**
  - Validity challenges, **13:24**
- Testimony
  - Generally, **13:28 et seq.**
  - Interrogations, **13:29**
  - Preparing witnesses, **13:28**
  - Transcripts, **13:30**
- Tips and connections between tips, **20:14**
- Tolling requirements for investigations, **20:13**
- Training of investigators, **20:12**
- Transcripts, third party access to, **13:66 et seq.**
- Triggers of investigations, **13:7**
- Types of investigations, **13:8 et seq.**
- Unreasonable search and seizure, **13:34**
- Warnings, **13:72**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

SEC—Cont'd

- Web site for post-Madoff reforms, **20:13**
- Wells submissions
  - Generally, **13:158**
  - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:160**
  - Character, **13:159**
  - Timeframe, **20:13**
- Whistleblowers, **20:14, 20:15**
- Wiretap in enforcement, **13:144 et seq.**
- Work product privileges, **13:59**
- Self-dealing, DOJ suit against Standard and Poor's, **13:338**
- Settlements
  - SEC, **13:154 to 13:157**
  - SROs, **13:305**
  - State agencies, **13:321**
- Specificity, **13:104**
- SROs
  - Generally, **13:267 et seq.**
  - Amicus curiae participation in private litigation, **13:293**
  - ARS securities and market, **13:325**
  - ARS seller management liability, **13:330**
  - ARS violations, **13:326**
  - Auction Rate Security (ARS), **13:323**
- Authority
  - Orders, **13:278**
  - Subpoenas, **13:279**
- Authority to investigate, **13:268**
- CFTC references of investigations to, **13:231**
- Collateral effects of orders, **13:298**
- Conferences with staff, **13:280**
- Conflicts of interest, **13:277**
- Contacts, responses to, **13:275**
- Cooperation by target, **13:305**
- Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, generally, **13:322 et seq.**
- Counsel investigations, **13:281**
- Criminal aspects, **13:331**

## INDEX

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

#### SROs—Cont'd

- Criminal enforcement references, **13:304**
- Discovery, **13:286**
- Documents, third party access to, **13:286**
- Early strategy, **13:3**
- Factors influencing outcome, **13:305**
- Foresight, need for, **13:3**
- Formal orders of investigation, **13:278**
- Government regulatory suits, **13:329**
- Implications of investigations, **13:2**
- Informal enforcement actions, **13:292**
- Informal warnings, **13:289**
- Information given by agency, **13:274**
- Information sharing by SEC Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**
- Interorganization references, **13:290**
- Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**
- Multiple clients, **13:277**
- Negotiating an outcome
  - Generally, **13:308 et seq.**
  - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:310**
  - Considerations, **13:312**
  - Objectives, **13:311**
- No further action outcomes, **13:288**
- Orders, **13:278**
- Outcomes of investigations, **13:287 et seq.**
- Overview, **13:1**
- Private investigations, **13:271**
- Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**
- Privileges, **13:285**
- Public investigations, **13:271**
- Public reports, **13:291**
- References between SROs, **13:290**
- Reports, **13:291**
- Requests for information, **13:273**

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

#### SROs—Cont'd

- Responses to contacts, **13:275**
- Right to counsel, **13:276**
- SEC references of investigations to, **13:73**
- Settlements, **13:305**
- Staff conferences, **13:280**
- State authorities, references to, **13:290**
- State law, private litigation, **13:328**
- Statistics, **13:272**
- Strategy, early, **13:3**
- Subpoena power, **13:270**
- Subpoenas, **13:279**
- Summary proceedings, **13:302**
- Testimony
  - Generally, **13:282 et seq.**
  - Interrogations, **13:283**
  - Preparing witnesses, **13:282**
  - Transcripts, **13:284**
- Transcripts, third party access to, **13:286**
- Triggers of investigations, **13:269**
- Types of investigations, **13:270**
- Warnings, **13:289**
- Wells submission equivalents
  - Generally, **13:306**
  - Character, **13:307**
- Staff conferences
  - CFTC, **13:218**
  - SEC, **13:26**
  - SROs, **13:280**
- Standard and Poor's ratings of mortgage-backed securities, **13:338**
- State agencies
  - Generally, **13:313 et seq.**
  - ARS securities and market, **13:325**
  - ARS seller management liability, **13:330**
  - ARS violations, **13:326**
  - Auction Rate Security (ARS), **13:323**
  - Authority, **13:314**
  - CFTC references of investigations to, **13:231**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

- State agencies—Cont'd
  - Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, generally, **13:322 et seq.**
  - Criminal aspects, **13:331**
  - Government regulatory suits, **13:329**
  - Information sharing by SEC Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**
  - Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**
  - Outcomes of investigations, **13:317**
  - Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**
  - SEC references of investigations to, **13:73**
  - Settlements, **13:321**
  - SRO references of investigations to, **13:290**
  - State law, private litigation, **13:328**
  - Subpoenas, **13:315**
- Statistics
  - CFTC, **13:202**
  - SEC, **13:10**
  - SROs, **13:272**
- Subpoenas
  - CFTC
    - Generally, **13:203, 13:213 et seq.**
    - Content, **13:214**
    - Document production, **13:217, 13:225**
    - Evaluation, **13:215**
    - Responses, **13:217**
    - Validity challenges, **13:216**
  - Content
    - CFTC, **13:214**
    - SEC, **13:22**
  - Document production
    - CFTC, **13:217**
    - SEC, **13:25**
  - Document subpoenas
    - CFTC, **13:225**
    - SEC, **13:67**
  - Evaluation
    - CFTC, **13:215**
    - SEC, **13:23**

**INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd**

- Subpoenas—Cont'd
  - Power to issue
    - CFTC, **13:200**
    - SROs, **13:270**
  - Responses
    - CFTC, **13:217**
    - SEC, **13:25**
  - SEC
    - Generally, **13:11, 13:21 et seq.**
    - Content, **13:22**
    - Document production, **13:25**
    - Document subpoenas, **13:67**
    - Evaluation, **13:23**
    - Responses, **13:25**
    - Validity challenges, **13:24**
  - SROs, **13:279**
  - State agencies, **13:315**
  - Validity challenges
    - CFTC, **13:216**
    - SEC, **13:24**
- Subprime mortgage crisis
  - Attorney General Eric Schneiderman of New York, Martin Act suits, **13:336, 13:337**
  - Collateralized debt obligations(CDOs), **13:332**
  - Creators of residential mortgage-backed securities, investor litigation, **13:335**
  - Credit Suisse Securities suit, **13:337**
  - Dexia v. Bear Stearns case, **13:335**
  - Financial Crisis Inquiry Commission report, summary, **13:333**
  - Foreseeability, **13:334**
  - Investor litigation, **13:335**
  - JP Morgan/Bear Stearns suit, **13:336**
  - Litigation, **13:332, 13:335 to 13:339**
  - Martin Act suits, **13:336, 13:337**
  - Mortgage backed securities (MBSs), **13:332**
  - Residential mortgages, failure, **13:332**
  - Underwriters of residential mortgage-backed securities, investor litigation, **13:335**

## INDEX

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

Summary proceedings, **13:302**

Testimony

CFTC

Generally, **13:220 et seq.**

Interrogations, **13:221**

Preparing witnesses, **13:220**

Transcripts, **13:222**

Interrogations

CFTC, **13:221**

SEC, **13:29**

SROs, **13:283**

Preparing witnesses

CFTC, **13:220**

SEC, **13:28**

SROs, **13:282**

SEC

Generally, **13:28 et seq.**

Interrogations, **13:29**

Preparing witnesses, **13:28**

Transcripts, **13:30**

SROs

Generally, **13:282 et seq.**

Interrogations, **13:283**

Preparing witnesses, **13:282**

Transcripts, **13:284**

Transcripts

CFTC, **13:222**

SEC, **13:30**

SROs, **13:284**

Third party access to

CFTC, **13:224 et seq.**

SEC, **13:66 et seq.**

SROs, **13:286**

Triggers of investigations

CFTC, **13:199**

SEC, **13:7**

SROs, **13:269**

Types of investigations

CFTC, **13:200 et seq.**

SEC, **13:8 et seq.**

SROs, **13:270**

Underwriters of residential mortgage-

backed securities, investor liti-  
gation, **13:335**

Warnings

CFTC, **13:230**

SEC, **13:72**

### INVESTIGATIONS—Cont'd

Warnings—Cont'd

SROs, **13:289**

Wells submissions

Generally, **13:158**

Advantages and disadvantages,  
**13:160**

Character, **13:159**

SROs, **13:306, 13:307**

Timeframe, **20:13**

### INVESTMENT ADVISERS

Control person liability, **7:456**

Insider trading, **7:470**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, fraud, **20:6**

### INVESTMENT ADVISERS ACT

Implied private actions (IPA), **3:155**

### INVESTMENT BANKERS

Generally, **5:172 et seq.**

Controlled company bankers, **5:175**

Controlling company bankers, **5:177**

Dual representation bankers, **5:176**

Global settlement, ancillary relief,  
**13:110**

Injunctions, global settlement and  
ancillary relief, **13:110**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, Sonja Kohn,  
**20:21**

Opinions of, challenging, **5:181**

Prior relations of, **5:182**

Qualities of bankers, **5:173**

Roles of bankers, **5:174**

Successive bankers, **5:179**

Trials, bankers for, **5:180**

Unfair terms

Generally, **5:172 et seq.**

Controlled company bankers,  
**5:175**

Controlling company bankers,  
**5:177**

Dual representation bankers, **5:176**

Opinions of, challenging, **5:181**

Prior relations of, **5:182**

Qualities of bankers, **5:173**

Roles of bankers, **5:174**

Successive bankers, **5:179**

Trials, bankers for, **5:180**

**INVESTMENT COMPANIES**

Proxy rules, applicability of, **6:205**

**INVESTMENT MANAGERS**

Madoff feeder funds, dual roles,  
**20:19**

SEC investigations, integration of  
broker-dealer and investment  
management examinations,  
**20:13**

**INVESTOR RECOVERY**

Objective of coordinated SEC-state-  
SRO investigations, **13:324**

**IPA**

See Implied Private Actions (this  
index)

**ISSUERS**

Advisers to issuers as insiders, **7:569**

Analysts' roles in full disclosure  
regulations, **7:528**

Antifraud provisions and Regulation  
FD disclosure, **7:546**

Business associates to issuers as  
insiders, **7:570**

Buyer-seller requirements, **5:121**

Compulsory disclosure. Regulation  
FD disclosure, below

Disclosure

Generally, **7:282 et seq.**

Awareness of MNPI

Generally, **7:316, 7:349 et seq.**

Possession distinguished, **7:349**

On basis of inside information,  
trades made, **7:348**

Burden of proof, nonpublic nature  
of information, **7:312**

Full disclosure

Duty triggered by partial  
disclosure, **7:536**

Regulation FD disclosure, below

Law and fact questions, nonpublic  
character of information,  
**7:314**

Limitations period, disclosure as  
starting, **7:279**

Materiality and public disclosure,  
**7:280**

**ISSUERS—Cont'd**

Disclosure—Cont'd

Media disclosures

Generally, **7:292 et seq.**

Particular media, **7:299**

Timing, **7:297**

Misrepresentations, public  
disclosure as curing, **7:276 et  
seq.**

MNPI

Materiality, above

Nonpublic information, below

Nonpublic information

Generally, **7:271 et seq.**

Absorption requirement, **7:306  
et seq.**

Burden of proof, **7:312**

Duty to disclose generally,  
**7:275**

Eliminating nonpublic informa-  
tion, Regulation FD, **7:552**

Full disclosure duty triggered by  
partial disclosure of, **7:536**

Law and fact questions, **7:314**

Limitations period, disclosure as  
starting, **7:279**

Materiality and public  
disclosure, **7:280**

Media disclosures

Generally, **7:292 et seq.**

Particular media, **7:299**

Timing, **7:297**

Misrepresentations, public  
disclosure as curing, **7:276  
et seq.**

Motion practice, **7:311**

Omissions, public disclosure as  
curing, **7:276 et seq.**

Pleading, **7:310**

Procedural aspects, **7:309 et  
seq.**

Proof, **7:313**

Public as affecting insider trad-  
ing, **7:272 et seq.**

Quantum of proof, **7:312**

Rumors, **7:301**

Time in becoming public, **7:304  
et seq.**

Tipping of, **7:272 et seq.**

## INDEX

### ISSUERS—Cont'd

#### Disclosure—Cont'd

Omissions, public disclosure as curing, **7:276 et seq.**

Periodic reports, **7:289**

Pleading nonpublic nature of information, **7:310**

#### Possession of MNPI

Generally, **7:316**

Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**

Burden of proof, **7:321, 7:341**

Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**

Connection with transaction, **7:681**

Individuals, proof for, **7:342**

Knowing possession, **7:320**

Mere possession, **7:319**

Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**

Precautions against trading, **7:346**

Proof, **7:322 et seq.**

#### Rule 10b-5

Generally, **7:318 et seq.**

Access, proof of, **7:323**

Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**

Burden of proof, **7:321**

Contact, proof of, **7:324**

Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**

Knowing possession, **7:320**

Mere possession, **7:319**

Organizations, proof for, **7:326**

Proof, **7:322 et seq.**

Trading, proof of, **7:325**

Use inferred from possession, **7:328**

#### Rule 14e-3

Generally, **7:340 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **7:341**

Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**

Individuals, proof for, **7:342**

Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**

Precautions against trading, **7:346**

### ISSUERS—Cont'd

#### Disclosure—Cont'd

#### Possession of MNPI—Cont'd

##### Rule 14e-3—Cont'd

Standard of proof, **7:341**

Standard of proof, **7:341**

Use compared, **7:317**

Press releases, **7:283**

Proof of nonpublic character of information, **7:313**

Prospectuses, **7:286**

Proxy statements, **7:287**

Reports, **7:289**

Rumors, **7:301**

SEC filings, **7:285**

Shareholder communications, **7:284**

Tender offer statements, **7:288**

Tipping nonpublic information, **7:272 et seq.**

#### Use of MNPI

Generally, **7:316**

Burden of proof, **7:331**

Connection with transaction, **7:681**

Individuals, proof for, **7:332**

Organizations, proof for, **7:339**

Possession compared, **7:317**

#### Rule 10b-5

Generally, **7:327 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **7:331**

Individuals, proof for, **7:332**

Inferences, **7:328**

Organizations, proof for, **7:339**

Possession, use inferred from, **7:328**

Rebuttal evidence, **7:337, 7:338**

Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**

Standard of proof, **7:331**

Timing, proof of, **7:333**

Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**

#### Rule 14e-3, **7:347**

Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**

**ISSUERS—Cont'd**

Disclosure—Cont'd  
 Use of MNPI—Cont'd  
   Standard of proof, **7:331**  
   Timing, proof of, **7:333**  
   Type of transaction, proof value,  
   **7:335**  
 Exemption provisions and Regulation  
 FD disclosure, **7:548**  
 Inside trading regulation  
   Generally, **7:557 et seq.**  
   Access criteria, **7:560**  
   Buyers, **7:563**  
   Congressional intent, **7:559**  
   Contraction era, **7:561 et seq.**  
   Expansion era, **7:560**  
 Issuers  
   Generally, **7:643 et seq.**  
   Advisers, **7:652**  
   Affiliated entities, **7:647**  
   Applicability to, **7:565**  
   Business associates, **7:653**  
   Contraction era, **7:646**  
   Directors, **7:649**  
   Employees, **7:650**  
   Expansion era, **7:645**  
   Officers, **7:648**  
   Shareholders, **7:651**  
   Tippees, **7:654**  
 Relationships subject to regulation,  
   **7:562 et seq.**  
 SEC efforts to define, **7:559**  
 Sellers, **7:563**  
 Third parties, applicability to,  
   **7:566**  
 Unfairness criteria, **7:560**  
 Intentional and nonintentional partial  
 disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**  
 Method of disclosure, Regulation FD,  
   **7:544**  
 Periodic reports, **7:289**  
 Press releases, **7:283**  
 Privately held securities, issuer  
 liabilities as to, **5:6**  
 Prompt disclosure requirement,  
 Regulation FD, **7:543**  
 Prospectuses, disclosure by, **7:286**  
 Proxy statement disclosures, **7:287**

**ISSUERS—Cont'd**

Publicly held securities, issuer  
 liabilities as to, **5:7**  
 Redemptions, **6:145**  
 Registration provisions and Regula-  
 tion FD disclosure, **7:547**  
 Regulation FD disclosure  
   Generally, **7:526 et seq.**  
   Analysts' roles, **7:528**  
   Antifraud provisions and, **7:546**  
   Avoiding selective disclosure,  
   **7:553**  
   Companies covered, **7:545**  
   Compliance, **7:551 et seq.**  
   Curing violations, **7:554**  
   Eliminating nonpublic information,  
   **7:552**  
   Exemption provisions and, **7:548**  
   Information, triggering, **7:534**  
   Intentional and nonintentional  
   partial disclosures, **7:538 et**  
   **seq.**  
   Materiality of triggering informa-  
   tion, **7:535**  
   Method of disclosure, **7:544**  
   Persons triggering duty, **7:537**  
   Policy basis, **7:527**  
   Prompt disclosure requirement,  
   **7:543**  
   Registration provisions and, **7:547**  
   Regulatory gap, **7:530**  
   Scope of regulation, **7:545**  
   SEC filing, compliance by, **7:555**  
 Selective disclosure  
   Generally, **7:529**  
   Avoiding, **7:553**  
   Curing violations, **7:554**  
   Materiality, **7:535**  
   Nonpublic nature of information  
   disclosed, **7:536**  
   Triggering full disclosure  
   obligation, **7:532**  
   Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**  
 Simultaneous disclosure require-  
 ments, **7:542**  
 Timing requirements, **7:541 et seq.**  
 Triggering events  
   Generally, **7:531 et seq.**

## INDEX

### ISSUERS—Cont'd

- Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd
  - Triggering events—Cont'd
    - Information, triggering, **7:534**
    - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
    - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
    - Non-intentional disclosures, **7:540**
    - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
    - Nontriggering disclosures, **7:533**
    - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
    - Selective disclosures, **7:532**
    - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Validity, **7:550**
  - Violations, curing, **7:554**
- Reports, disclosure, **7:289**
- SEC filing disclosures, **7:285**
- Securities professionals as insiders, **7:572**
- Selective disclosure and full disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:529**
  - Avoiding, **7:553**
  - Curing violations, **7:554**
  - Materiality, **7:535**
  - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
  - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
  - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
- Shareholder communications, disclosure by, **7:284**
- Simultaneous FD disclosure requirements, **7:542**
- Tender offers
  - Generally, **6:141**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:144**
  - Price, **6:142**
  - Redemptions, **6:145**
  - Standing to challenge, **6:143**
- Tender offer statement disclosure, **7:288**
- Timing of FD disclosure requirements, **7:541 et seq.**

### ISSUERS—Cont'd

- Unintentional disclosures and Regulation FD disclosure, **7:540**

### JOBS ACT

- See Crowdfunding (this index)

### JOINDER

- Arbitration proceedings, **15:18**
- SLUSA restrictions, **3:206**

### JOINT AND SEVERAL LIABILITY

- Generally, **9:19 et seq.**
- See also Contribution; Proportionate Liability (this index)
- Blue sky law, **9:21**
- Broker-dealer fraud, **9:31**
- Commodities law, **9:46**
- Common law, **9:20**
- Control persons, **9:25, 9:33**
- Court cases, **9:42**
- Disgorgement, **9:26**
  - Rule 10b-5 liability, **9:39 et seq.**
  - Securities Exchange Act, **9:35**
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Knowing violators, **9:51**
- Market manipulation, **9:28**
- Proportionate liability compared, **9:47**
- Proxy fraud, **9:29**
- Registration statement fraud, **9:24**
- Restitution, **9:44**
- Rule 10b-5 liability
  - Generally, **9:37 et seq.**
  - Damages, **9:38**
  - Disgorgement, **9:39 et seq.**
- SEC, false reports to, **9:32**
- Securities Act
  - Generally, **9:22 et seq.**
  - Control persons, **9:25**
  - Disgorgement, **9:26**
  - Registration statement fraud, **9:24**
  - Section 11, **9:24**
  - Section 12(2), **9:23**
  - Section 15, **9:25**
- Securities Exchange Act
  - Generally, **9:27 et seq.**
  - Broker-dealer fraud, **9:31**

**JOINT AND SEVERAL LIABILITY**  
—Cont'd

Securities Exchange Act—Cont'd  
 Damages, **9:34**  
 Disgorgement, **9:35**  
 Market manipulation, **9:28**  
 Proxy fraud, **9:29**  
 SEC, false reports to, **9:32**  
 Section 9(a), **9:28**  
 Section 14  
     Proxy fraud, **9:29**  
     Tender offer fraud, **9:30**  
 Section 15(c)(1), **9:31**  
 Section 18, **9:32**  
 Section 20(a), **9:33**  
 Section 20(A)(c), **9:36**  
 Tender offer fraud, **9:30**  
 Tipping, **9:36**  
 Self regulatory discipline, **9:45**  
 State law, **9:20**  
 Tender offer fraud, **9:30**  
 Tipping, **9:36**

**JOINT TORTFEASORS**

Common law fraud, **8:261**

**JP MORGAN/BEAR STEARNS**  
**LITIGATION**

Coordinated investigations following  
 subprime mortgage crisis,  
**13:336**

**JP MORGAN/MADOFF**  
**LITIGATION**

Deferred prosecution agreements,  
**10:5**

**JUDICIAL APPROVAL**

SEC investigations, use of wiretap,  
**13:151**

**JUDICIAL ENFORCEMENT**  
**ACTIONS**

Whistleblower bounty program,  
**22:14**

**JUDICIAL OPINIONS**

See Court Decisions (this index)

**JURISDICTION**

Generally, **11:2 et seq., 12:10**  
 Adviser activities, **11:15**

**JURISDICTION—Cont'd**

Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**  
 Broker-dealer activities, **11:15**  
 Check clearance as interstate activity,  
**11:11**  
 Class actions, **11:42**  
 Cryptocurrencies, CFTC jurisdiction,  
**25:2**  
 Defenses, **11:41**  
 Derivative suits, **11:43**  
 Foreign and International Transac-  
 tions (this index)  
 Fraud, interstate nature of, **11:9**  
 Implied Liability (this index)  
 International transactions. Foreign  
 and International Transactions  
 (this index)  
 Interstate commerce, **11:3**  
 Local telephone use, **11:4**  
 Mails, use of, **11:6**  
 Misconduct, relation of jurisdictional  
 means to  
     Generally, **11:8 et seq.**  
     Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**  
     Check clearances, **11:11**  
     Fraud, **11:9**  
     Plaintiff's interstate activities,  
     **11:14**  
     Transaction, **11:10, 11:12**  
 Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**  
 Pleading, **11:38**  
 Procedure, **11:39 et seq.**  
 Process, **11:40**  
 Scope of commerce, **11:3**  
 Securities exchanges and interstate  
 commerce, **11:7**  
 Service of process, **11:40**  
 Telephone use, **11:4**  
 Transaction, interstate, **11:10, 11:12**  
 Venue, **11:39**

**JURY TRIAL**

Insiders and inside trading, Raj  
 Rajaratnam criminal case, **21:26**

**KICKSTARTER**

Crowdfunding, **14:211**

## INDEX

### KINGATE

Madoff feeder funds, globalization,  
**20:21**

### KNOWLEDGE

Generally, **8:58 et seq.**

Access to information, reliance,  
**8:499**

Actual knowledge

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:244**

Scienter

Generally, **8:165 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:178**

Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**

Direct-impersonal transactions,  
**8:171**

Direct-personal transactions,  
**8:170**

Indirect-impersonal transactions,  
**8:172**

Injunctions, **8:174**

Insufficiency of, **8:177**

Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**

Proof, **8:179**

SEC decisions, **8:175**

Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**

Aider-abettor liability, knowledge of  
violation, **8:356 et seq.**

Broker's knowledge, **14:41**

Burden of proof, **8:66**

Common law, **8:59**

Comparative knowledge, **8:249**

Constructive knowledge

Generally, **8:250**

Burden of proof, **8:189**

Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**

Injunctions, **8:185**

Insufficiency, **8:188**

Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**

Proof, **8:190**

Scienter, **8:180 et seq.**

SEC decisions, **8:186**

Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**

Criminal enforcement, SEC refer-  
ences, **13:128**

Defendant's knowledge

Broker-dealer liability, **14:41**

Burden of proof, **8:66, 8:84**

### KNOWLEDGE—Cont'd

Defendant's knowledge—Cont'd

Common law, **8:59**

Contribution, **9:70**

Criminal context, **8:65**

Joint and several liability, **9:51**

Manipulation, **8:120**

Proof, **8:67, 8:85**

Proportionate liability, **9:51, 9:60**

SA § 12(2), **8:64 et seq.**

SA § 17(a), **8:83 et seq.**

Scienter, **8:83 et seq.**

SEC, false reports to

Generally, **8:147 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:148**

Proof, **8:149**

Defendant's knowledge and belief

Broker-dealer fraud

Burden of proof, scienter, **8:141**

Proof, **8:142**

Scienter, **8:142**

Burden of proof, **8:141**

Proof, **8:142**

Proxy fraud

Generally, **8:126 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:127**

Proof, **8:128**

Scienter

Burden of proof, **8:141**

Proof, **8:142**

Tender offer fraud

Generally, **8:133 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:134**

Proof, **8:135**

Defendant's knowledge and intent

Blue sky laws, **8:61**

Common law, **8:59**

SA § 11, **8:79**

Expertise of plaintiff, reliance, **8:497**

Fraud on the market

Generally, **8:520 et seq.**

See also Reliance (this index)

Intent and scienter

Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**

Injunctions, **8:195**

Long-standing relationships, reliance,  
**8:498**

**KNOWLEDGE—Cont'd**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, “knowing assistance” in fraud, **20:4 to 20:9**
- Manipulation
  - Defendant’s knowledge, **8:120**
  - Plaintiff’s knowledge, **8:122**
- Misrepresentation, plaintiff’s knowledge, **8:246**
- Nondisclosure, plaintiff’s knowledge, **8:245**
- Plaintiff’s knowledge
  - Generally, **8:244 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge, **8:244**
  - Blue sky laws, **8:62**
  - Broker-dealer fraud
    - Generally, **14:40**
    - Scienter, **8:144**
  - Common law, **8:60**
  - Comparative knowledge, **8:249**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:250**
  - Limitation of actions, **8:70, 8:251**
  - Manipulation, **8:122**
  - Misrepresentation, **8:246**
  - Nondisclosure, **8:245**
  - Proxy fraud, **8:130**
  - SA § 11, **8:80**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:69**
  - SA § 17(a), **8:87**
  - Scienter
    - Generally, **8:87**
    - Broker-dealer fraud, **8:144**
    - Manipulation, **8:122**
    - Proxy fraud, **8:130**
    - Tender offers, **8:137**
  - Tender offers, **8:137**
  - Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**
- Privity determinations, **8:315**
- Proxy fraud
  - Generally, **8:126 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:127**
  - Proof, **8:128**
- Purchaser’s knowledge, **14:40**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:484 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:58**

**KNOWLEDGE—Cont'd**

- Scienter—Cont'd
  - See also Scienter (this index)
- Actual knowledge
  - Generally, **8:165 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:178**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**
  - Direct-impersonal transactions, **8:171**
  - Direct-personal transactions, **8:170**
  - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **8:172**
  - Injunctions, **8:174**
  - Insufficiency of, **8:177**
  - Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**
  - Proof, **8:179**
  - SEC decisions, **8:175**
  - Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**
- Constructive knowledge
  - Generally, **8:180 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:189**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**
  - Injunctions, **8:185**
  - Insufficiency, **8:188**
  - Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**
  - Proof, **8:190**
  - SEC decisions, **8:186**
  - Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**
- Criminal prosecutions
  - Actual knowledge, **8:176**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:187**
  - Intent, **8:197**
- Intent
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**
  - Injunctions, **8:195**
- Plaintiff’s knowledge, **8:122**
- SEC, false reports to
  - Generally, **8:147 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:148**
  - Proof, **8:149**
- Sophistication of plaintiff, reliance and, **8:497**
- Tender offer fraud
  - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:134**
  - Proof, **8:135**
- Tender offers fraud actions, **8:137**

## INDEX

### KNOWLEDGE—Cont'd

Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**

### LATEST DEVELOPMENTS

Generally, **2:1 et seq.**

Action for alleged short swing trading by beneficial owners of 10% or more of a public company, **2:7**

Cryptocurrency

SEC enforcement actions, **2:3**

Securities class action, **2:6**

Freeze out mergers

Securities class action, minority shareholders, **2:5**

SEC enforcement actions, **2:2, 2:3**

Securities class action, **2:4, 2:6**

### LAWSON v. FMR LLC

Whistleblowers, **22:18 et seq.**

### LAWYERS

See Attorneys (this index)

### LEGALITY OR ILLEGALITY

Whistleblower bounty program, unlawfully obtained information, **22:12**

### LEGAL TRANSACTIONS

See Transaction Planning (this index)

### LEGISLATIVE INTENT

See Congressional Intent (this index)

### LERNOUT CASE

Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:106**

### LETTERS

Advance letters

Proxy rules, **6:240**

Registration under SA, **6:241**

Cover letters, **6:243**

No-Action Letters (this index)

Transmittal letters, **6:243**

### LIES TO INVESTORS

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

### LIMITATION OF ACTIONS

Generally, **8:251, 11:45 et seq.**

Accrual, one year period, **11:71 et seq.**

### LIMITATION OF ACTIONS

—Cont'd

Actual notice

One year period, **11:71 et seq.**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **11:93**

Administrative enforcement, **13:89, 13:90**

Arbitration, **15:9**

Broker-dealer liability

Generally, **14:17**

SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**

SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**

Class actions

Generally, **11:96 et seq.**

Tolling, **11:97**

Discovery rule, **8:251**

Rejected by SEC, **13:90**

Enforcement actions

Generally, **13:184 to 13:189**

Kokesh case decision, **13:184 to 13:189**

Liu v. SEC, **13:189**

Equitable estoppel, **11:52**

Equitable tolling, **11:100**

Express actions

Generally, **11:46**

Broker-dealer liability, **14:17**

Implied actions

Generally, **11:61 et seq.**

Court cases, **11:63 et seq.**

Cutoff, **11:64**

Retroactivity, **11:66, 11:70**

Rule 10b-5, **3:174**

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **11:92**

Tolling, **11:65**

Injunctions, SEC, **13:99**

Knowledge of violation, **8:251**

Kokesh case decision, **13:184 to 13:189**

Literal application of statute, **11:48**

Misleading prospectus communications, **11:54 et seq.**

Notice, one year period, **11:71 et seq.**

One year period

Generally, **11:71 et seq.**

Accrual, **11:71 et seq.**

Actual notice, **11:71 et seq.**

Court cases, **11:72**

**LIMITATION OF ACTIONS**

—Cont'd

- One year period—Cont'd
  - Misleading registration statements, **11:58**
  - Notice, **11:71 et seq.**
  - Prospectus fraud, **11:48**
  - Registration fraud, **11:48**
  - SEA § 11, **11:58**
  - SEA § 12(1), **11:48**
  - SEA § 12(2), **11:55**
  - Trigger, **11:71 et seq.**
- Oral communications, **11:54 et seq.**
- Plaintiff's knowledge of fraud, **8:70**
- Procedure, **11:60**
- Repose statute, **11:100**
- Retroactivity
  - Implied actions, **11:66, 11:70**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **11:94**
- RICO, **11:103**
- Rule 10b-5 implied liability, **3:174**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act
  - Generally, **3:161, 11:87 et seq.**
  - Actual notice, **11:93**
  - Implied actions, **11:92**
  - Retroactivity, **11:94**
  - Securities Act express actions, **11:90**
  - Securities Exchange Act express actions, **11:91**
  - Tolling, **11:93**
- SEC
  - Administrative enforcement, **13:89, 13:90**
  - Discovery rule rejected for limitation of actions, **13:90**
  - Injunctions, **13:99**
  - Investigations, tolling requirements, **20:13**
- Securities Act
  - Generally, **11:46**
  - Equitable estoppel, **11:52**
  - Equitable tolling, **11:100**
  - Literal application of statute, **11:48**
  - One year statute, **11:48**
  - Prospectus violations, **11:47 et seq.**

**LIMITATION OF ACTIONS**

—Cont'd

- Securities Act—Cont'd
  - Registration violations, **11:47 et seq.**
  - Section 11, **11:57 et seq.**
  - Section 12(1), **11:47 et seq.**
  - Section 12(2), **11:54 et seq.**
  - Three year statute, **11:53**
  - Tolling, **11:49 et seq.**
- Three year period
  - Generally, **11:53, 11:82 et seq.**
  - Accrual, **11:83 et seq.**
  - Misleading registration statements, **11:59**
  - SEA § 11, **11:59**
  - Trigger, **11:83 et seq.**
- Tolling
  - Class actions, **11:97**
  - Implied actions, **11:65**
  - One year statute, **11:49 et seq.**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **11:93**
  - Trigger, one year period, **11:71 et seq.**
- Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:8, 22:12**

**LIQUIDATIONS**

- Buyer-seller requirements, **5:119**

**LIQUIDATION VALUE**

- Value indicators generally, **5:163**

**LODGING EXPENSES**

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:4**

**LOOMI LAMPSHADE**

- Crowdfunding, **14:211**

**LORENZO v. SEC**

- Dissemination of material false information, liability for, *Lorenzo v. SEC*, **8:346**

**LOSS CAUSATION**

- Causation (this index)

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

- Generally, **20:1 et seq.**
- A. Ezra Merkin feeder funds, **20:18**

## INDEX

### MADOFF PONZI SCHEME

#### —Cont'd

Access International, globalized feeder funds, **20:21**  
Accountants. Civil actions against accounts for feeder funds, below  
Accounting firm, **20:9**  
Ad hoc sales force, feeder funds as, **20:16**  
Advertising, **20:2**  
Affiliated individuals  
    Generally, **20:4**  
    Accountant, **20:9**  
    “Back-office” employees, **20:9**  
    Brother’s role in fraud, **20:5**  
    Business associates, **20:6 to 20:8**  
    Director of operations, **20:8**  
    Director of trading, **20:8**  
    Family members, **20:5**  
    Fiduciary liability of Madoff family members, **20:5**  
    Former Chief Financial Officer, **20:8**  
    Frank DiPascali, Jr., business associate, **20:6**  
    Marriage of Madoff niece to SEC regulator viewed as conflict of interest, **20:5**  
    Niece’s role in fraud, **20:5**  
    “Omissions” provision of federal Rule 10b-5(b), **20:5**  
    Perjury, **20:6**  
    Senior executives, **20:5**  
    Sons’ role in fraud, **20:5**  
    Spouse’s role in fraud, **20:5**  
    Supervisors of stock trading desks, **20:5**  
    Technology expert, **20:5**  
    Wife’s role in fraud, **20:5**  
Affinity fraud, **20:3**  
Aggregate accounting, **20:6**  
Aiding and abetting breach of fiduciary duty, **20:5**  
Alternate account statements, **20:6**  
Analysis of tips, complaints and referrals, Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
Appointment of third party custodian for client assets, **20:2**

### MADOFF PONZI SCHEME

#### —Cont'd

Artistic projects, **20:3**  
Asset Management Unit, **20:12**  
Attempt to evade federal income taxes, **20:6**  
Auditor independence forfeiture, **20:9**  
Average annual returns, **20:2**  
“Back-office” employees, **20:9**  
Banco Santander, globalized feeder funds, **20:21**  
Breach of fiduciary duty, **20:5**  
Business associates, **20:6**  
Charitable foundations, **20:3**  
Chief Financial Officer, **20:6**  
Citibank, action against by Trustee Picard  
    Court responses, **20:41**  
    Loans, swaps, and instrument derivatives tied to Madoff, **20:42**  
Civil actions against accountants for feeder funds  
    Generally, **20:25**  
    Claims of negligence and/or negligent misrepresentations, **20:28 to 20:31**  
    Claims under federal securities laws, **20:26**  
    Common law fraud claims, **20:27**  
    GAAS and GAAP violations, **20:32**  
    Lack of privity, **20:29**  
    N.Y. Martin Act preemption, **20:31**  
    Presence of privity, **20:30**  
    Privity, **20:29, 20:30**  
Cohmad Securities Corporation, in-house feeder fund, **20:22**  
Collection of tips, complaints and referrals, Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
Compensation  
    Accounting firm, **20:9**  
    Business associates, **20:6**  
    Certain family members, **20:5**  
    Computation. Investor compensation, methods of computing, below

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

—Cont'd

Complaints, screening by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
 Compliance counsel, **20:5**  
 Computer programmers, **20:7**  
 Computing customer payments.  
     Investor compensation, methods of computing, above  
 Concealment of fraud, **20:2**  
 Conduct of SEC investigations and examinations, **20:10**  
 Conflict of interest, marriage of family member to SEC regulator, **20:5**  
 Consistency of returns, **20:2**  
 Conspiracy, **20:6**  
 Controlling person liability, **20:5**  
 Cooperation agreements, **20:15**  
 Cooperation by target, **20:15**  
 Cover-up, **20:6**  
 Credibility of operation, **20:2**  
 Criminal enforcement authorities, information sharing by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
 Custodian for client assets, **20:2**  
 Customer account statements, misrepresentations, **20:5**  
 “Customer” under Securities Investor Protection Act, **20:3, 20:24**  
 Deferred prosecution agreements, **20:15**  
     JPMorgan, **10:5**  
 Delay of SEC investigations, **20:10**  
 Depository Trust Corporation BMIS account, **20:6**  
 Dereliction of duties  
     Accounting and auditing duties, **20:9**  
     Executive duties, **20:5**  
 Director of operations, **20:8**  
 Distribution of feeder funds losses to investors, **20:23**  
 Dorothy Jo account, **20:6**  
 DTC reports falsified, **20:6**  
 Dual roles, feeder funds investment manager, **20:19**  
 Due diligence failure, **20:17, 20:18**  
 Elements, **20:2**

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

—Cont'd

Enforcement Manual 2010 revisions, **20:15**  
 Evaluation of cooperation by individuals, **20:15**  
 Examinations by SEC, **20:2**  
 Exclusivity of funds, **20:2**  
 Experience of SEC investigative personnel, **20:10**  
 Expertise of SEC investigators, **20:12**  
 Fairfield Greenwich Group, feeder fund, **20:17**  
 Falsified books and records, **20:6**  
 Falsifying records, **20:6**  
 Family members, **20:5**  
 Federal agencies, information sharing by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
 Feeder funds  
     Access International, globalization, **20:21**  
     Ad hoc sales force, **20:16**  
     A.Ezra Merkin, misrepresentation to investors, **20:18**  
     Arbitration awards, **20:18**  
     Banco Santander, globalization, **20:21**  
     Civil actions against accountants for feeder funds, above  
     Cohmad Securities Corporation, **20:22**  
     Concealment of fraud, **20:2**  
     Depth of pocket, **20:20**  
     Dual roles of investment manager, **20:19**  
     Due diligence, failure, **20:17, 20:18**  
     Fairfield Greenwich Group, **20:17**  
     Financial resources, **20:20**  
     Globalization, **20:21**  
     Independent scrutiny, **20:16**  
     Individualized loss treatment, **20:23**  
     In-house feeder fund, **20:22**  
     Insurance policy information, **20:24**  
     Investigation of red flags, failure, **20:17**

INDEX

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

—Cont'd

Feeder funds—Cont'd  
Kingate, globalization, **20:21**  
Losses, passing to investors, **20:23**  
Misrepresentations to investors, **20:18**  
Net investment method, distribution of losses to investors, **20:23**  
Passing losses to investors, **20:23**  
Picower settlement, **20:24**  
Profits raising red flags, **20:19**  
Protection under PSLRA, **20:18**  
Protective buffer, **20:16**  
Red flags, failure to investigate, **20:17**  
Restatement method, distribution of losses to investors, **20:23**  
SIPC, definition of customer, **20:24**  
Sonja Kohn, Austrian banker, **20:21**  
Stanley Chai, **20:19**  
Tremont-Rye, **20:20**  
Valuation method, distribution of losses to investors, **20:23**  
Fees charged by feeder funds, **20:24**  
Fiduciary liability of Madoff family members, **20:5**  
Financial incentives, **20:2**  
Focus of SEC examinations, **20:10**  
Foreign Corrupt Practices Act Unit, **20:12**  
Form ADV, **20:6**  
Former Chief Financial Officer, **20:8**  
Forms 13-F, **20:6**  
Framework for evaluation of cooperation by individuals, **20:15**  
Friedling & Horowitz, auditors, **20:1, 20:9**  
Funding to scientific and medical projects, depletion, **20:3**  
Generation of random numbers, **20:6**  
Global fraud, **20:1 et seq.**  
Globalized feeder funds, **20:21**

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

—Cont'd

HSBC Bank, action against by Trustee Picard, court responses, **20:40**  
In-house feeder fund, **20:22**  
Insurance policy information, **20:24**  
Integration of broker-dealer and investment management examinations within SEC investigations, **20:13**  
Internal communications within SEC investigations, **20:10**  
Internal SEC investigation procedures, streamlining, **20:13**  
International money laundering, **20:6**  
Investment adviser fraud, generally, **20:6**  
Investor compensation, methods of computing  
Clawback claims against investors who withdrew more than they deposited, **20:35**  
Inflation and net equity, **20:36**  
Interest and net equity, **20:36**  
Net losers v. net winners, **20:34**  
Second Circuit decision, net losers v. net winners, **20:34**  
Trustee Picard, generally, **20:33**  
JP Morgan Chase & Co.  
Action against Madoff's primary bank by Trustee Picard, court responses, **20:39**  
Deferred prosecution agreements, **10:5**  
Kingate, globalization of feeder funds, **20:21**  
"Knowing assistance" in fraud, **20:4 to 20:9**  
Lies to investors, **20:6**  
Losses of feeder funds, passing to investors, **20:23**  
Mail fraud, **20:6**  
Mailings to investors, **20:6**  
Market Abuse Unit, **20:12**  
Marriage of family member to SEC regulator, **20:5**  
Material misrepresentations, **20:9**

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

—Cont'd

- Merrill, action against by Trustee Picard, court responses, **20:41**
- Misrepresentations
  - Accounting firm, **20:9**
  - Customer account statements, **20:5**
  - Feeder funds, **20:18**
  - Promotional materials, **20:5**
  - SEC filings, **20:5**
- Monitoring of tips, complaints and referrals, Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**
- Municipal Securities and Public Pensions Unit, **20:12**
- Net investment method, distribution of losses to investors, **20:23**
- Non-investment advisory component of BMIS, **20:8**
- Office of Compliance Inspections and Examinations (OCIE), **20:2, 20:5**
- Office of Market Intelligence
  - Analysis of tips, complaints and referrals, **20:14**
  - Collection of tips, complaints and referrals, **20:14**
  - Criminal enforcement authorities, **20:14**
  - Federal agencies, **20:14**
  - Monitoring of tips, complaints and referrals, **20:14**
  - Priority criteria, **20:14**
  - Risk criteria, **20:14**
  - Screening of tips, complaints and referrals, **20:14**
  - Self-regulatory organizations, **20:14**
  - State agencies, **20:14**
- “Omissions” provision of federal Rule 10b-5(b), **20:5**
- Perjury, **20:6**
- Picower settlement, **20:24**
- Priority criteria, Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**
- Proffer agreements, **20:15**
- Promotional materials, misrepresentations, **20:5**

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

—Cont'd

- Protective buffer, feeder funds as, **20:16**
- Public pension funds, depletion, **20:3**
- Random numbers generation, **20:6**
- Redemptions to investors, **20:2, 20:3, 20:6**
- Red Flags, **20:5, 20:17**
  - Listing, **20:5**
  - During SEC investigations, **20:10**
- Referrals, screening by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**
- Registration as investment adviser, **20:6**
- Regulatory oversight failure, **20:2**
- Resolutions of SEC examiners, **20:10**
- Restatement method, distribution of losses to investors, **20:23**
- Retirement funds, depletion, **20:3**
- Risk criteria, Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**
- Scope of SEC investigations, **20:10**
- SEC filings, misrepresentations, **20:5**
- SEC investigations
  - Accounting firm, **20:9**
  - Adoption of changes, **20:11**
  - Asset Management Unit, **20:12**
  - Assistance provided, **20:15**
  - Bounties to whistleblowers, **20:15**
  - Business associates, **20:6**
  - Changes, **20:11**
  - Collateral horrors, **20:15**
  - Company cooperation, **20:15**
  - Concealment of fraud, **20:2**
  - Conduct of investigations and examinations, **20:6, 20:10**
  - Cooperation, **20:15**
  - Cooperation agreements, **20:15**
  - Deferred prosecution agreements, **20:15**
  - Delay, **20:10**
  - Encouraging cooperation, **20:15**
  - Enforcement Manual 2010 revisions, **20:15**
  - Experience of investigative personnel, **20:10**
  - Expertise of investigator, **20:12**

## INDEX

### MADOFF PONZI SCHEME

#### —Cont'd

SEC investigations—Cont'd  
Feeder funds, **20:16 et seq.**  
Focus of examinations, **20:10**  
Foreign Corrupt Practices Act  
Unit, **20:12**  
Fostering cooperation, **20:15**  
Framework for evaluation of  
cooperation, **20:15**  
Integration of broker-dealer and  
investment management  
examinations, **20:13**  
Internal communications, **20:10**  
Internal procedures, streamlining,  
**20:13**  
Market Abuse Unit, **20:12**  
Municipal Securities and Public  
Pensions Unit, **20:12**  
Nonprosecution agreements, **20:15**  
Office of Market Intelligence,  
**20:14**  
Proffer agreements, **20:15**  
Red flags during investigations,  
**20:10**  
Remediation by target, **20:15**  
Resolutions of examinations,  
**20:10**  
Restricted immunity offers, **20:15**  
Risks of cooperation, **20:15**  
Scope of investigations, **20:10**  
Seaboard Report, **20:15**  
Self-policing by target, **20:15**  
Self-reporting by target, **20:15**  
Sharing information with other  
agencies, etc., **20:14**  
Shortening of Wells process, **20:13**  
Specialization of investigators,  
**20:12**  
Specialized units, **20:12**  
Staffing, **20:10**  
Staff performance evaluation,  
**20:13**  
Streamlining structure and  
procedures, **20:13**  
Structured and New Products Unit,  
**20:12**  
Tips and connections between tips,  
**20:14**

### MADOFF PONZI SCHEME

#### —Cont'd

SEC investigations—Cont'd  
Tolling requirements, **20:13**  
Training, **20:12**  
Web site for post-Madoff reforms,  
**20:13**  
Wells submissions, timeframe,  
**20:13**  
Whistleblowers, **20:14, 20:15**  
SEC staff performance evaluation,  
**20:13**  
Section 10(b) and Rule 10b-5, **20:5**  
Securities Investor Protection Act and  
Corporation, definition of  
“customer,” **20:3, 20:24**  
Self-regulatory organizations, infor-  
mation sharing by Office of  
Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
Senior executives, **20:5**  
703 slush fund, **20:6**  
Shared ethnic and religious bonds,  
**20:3**  
Shifting counterparties, **20:6**  
Shortening of Wells process, **20:13**  
Should have known, **20:5**  
Silence as to investment with firms,  
**20:2**  
SIPC, definition of customer, **20:24**  
‘Social status’ of funds, **20:2**  
Sonja Kohn and global feeder funds,  
**20:21**  
Special accounts, **20:6**  
Specialization of SEC investigators,  
**20:12**  
Specialized SEC investigation units,  
**20:12**  
Split-strike conversion, **20:6**  
Spouse’s role in fraud, **20:5**  
Staffing of SEC investigations, **20:10**  
State agencies, information sharing  
by Office of Market Intelligence,  
**20:14**  
Stature in securities industry, **20:2**  
Streamlining SEC investigation  
structure and procedures, **20:13**  
Structured and New Products Unit,  
**20:12**  
Suicide by investors, **20:3**

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

—Cont'd

- Supervisors of stock trading desks, **20:5**
- Tax evasion, **20:6**
- Tax fraud, **20:9**
- Technical support to falsify documents, **20:7**
- Technology expert, **20:5**
- Third party custodian for client assets, **20:2**
- Third party verification of returns, **20:2**
- Tips and connections between tips, Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**
- Tolling requirements for SEC investigations, **20:13**
- Training of SEC investigators, **20:12**
- Transhumanism project, **20:3**
- Tremont-Rye feeder funds, **20:20**
- Trustee Picard
  - Actions against banks involved with Madoff, **20:38 to 20:41**
  - Citibank
    - Action against, **20:41**
    - Action against banks, **20:42**
  - Compensation for investors, methods of computing, **20:33 to 20:37**
  - Court responses
    - Citibank, action against, **20:41**
    - HSBC Bank, action against, **20:40**
    - JP Morgan Chase & Co., action against Madoff's primary bank, **20:39**
    - Merrill, action against, **20:41**
    - HSBC Bank, action against, **20:40**
    - JP Morgan Chase & Co., action against Madoff's primary bank, **20:39**
    - Merrill, action against banks, **20:41, 20:42**
  - Valuation method, distribution of losses to investors, **20:23**
  - Verification of returns with independent third-parties, **20:2**
  - Victims, **20:3**

**MADOFF PONZI SCHEME**

—Cont'd

- Web site for post-Madoff reforms, **20:13**
- Wells submissions, timeframe, **20:13**
- Whistleblowers, **20:14, 20:15**
- Wire fraud, **20:6**
- Withdrawal of funds in timely manner, **20:2, 20:3**

**MAIL AND WIRE FRAUD**

- Insider trading
  - Generally, **7:171, 7:463**
  - Misappropriation theory, **7:594**
  - Scienter, **7:413**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

**MANAGEMENT**

- Directors, Corporate (this index)
- Mismanagement (this index)
- Mutual fund violations, **17:19**
- Officers, Corporate (this index)

**MANAGEMENT DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS (MD&A)**

- Administrative enforcement, **7:13**
- Private actions, **7:17**

**MANIPULATION**

- Generally, **7:118 et seq., 8:102 et seq.**
- Accumulation of stock, **7:134**
- Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**
- Burden of proof, **8:104**
- Circular trading, **7:135**
- Cornering the market, **7:134**
- Cross trading, **7:135**
- Defendant's intent, **8:119**
- Defendant's knowledge, **8:120**
- Defendant's purpose
  - Generally, **8:103 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:104**
  - Defense of proper purpose, **8:118**
  - Direct evidence, **8:106**
  - Indirect evidence, **8:107**
  - Large blocks, **8:108**
  - Large proportion of trading, **8:109**
  - Painting the tape, **8:110**
  - Playoff of markets, **8:114**
  - Price action, **8:113**

## INDEX

### MANIPULATION—Cont'd

Defendant's purpose—Cont'd  
Profit, **8:115**  
Proof, **8:105**  
Proper purpose as defense, **8:118**  
Stimulating demand, **8:110, 8:111**  
Suppressing supply, **8:112**  
Defendant's willfulness, **8:121**  
Definition, **7:119**  
Depressing prices, **7:124**  
Federal securities laws, **7:120**  
Front running  
Generally, **7:139 et seq.**  
Court cases, **7:142**  
SEC interpretations  
Generally, **7:140**  
Decisions, **7:142**  
SRO interpretations  
Generally, **7:140**  
Criticisms, **7:141**  
Decisions, **7:142**  
Insider trading, **7:168**  
Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:113**  
Joint and several liability, **9:28**  
Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**  
Margin requirements, parking to avoid, **7:148**  
Matched orders, **7:121**  
Materiality, **8:54**  
Painting the tape, **7:132, 8:110**  
Parking  
Generally, **7:143 et seq.**  
Capital requirements, use to avoid, **7:147**  
Control fights, use in, **7:146**  
Definitions, **7:144**  
Margin requirements, parking to avoid, **7:148**  
Record keeping violations, **7:149**  
Tax evasion uses, **7:150**  
Pegging, **7:136**  
Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:122**  
Playoff of markets, **8:114**  
Price action, **8:113**  
Proof, **8:105**  
Raising prices, **7:124**  
Rule 10b-5  
Generally, **7:130 et seq.**

### MANIPULATION—Cont'd

Rule 10b-5—Cont'd  
Accumulation of stock, **7:134**  
Capping, **7:136**  
Circular trading, **7:135**  
Control, **7:138**  
Cornering the market, **7:134**  
Cross trading, **7:135**  
Domination, **7:138**  
Front running, above  
Marking the close, **7:131**  
Painting the tape, **7:132**  
Parking, above  
Pegging, **7:136**  
Short selling, **7:137**  
Successive activity price manipulations, **7:133**  
SEA § 9(a)(1), **7:121**  
SEA § 9(a)(2)  
Generally, **7:122 et seq.**  
Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**  
Depressing prices, **7:124**  
Purpose, **7:125**  
Raising prices, **7:124**  
Series of transactions, **7:123**  
SEA § 9(a)(3), **7:126**  
SEA § 9(a)(4), **7:126**  
SEA § 9(a)(5), **7:126**  
SEA § 9(a)(6), **7:127**  
SEA § 9(b), **7:128**  
SEA § 9(e), **7:129**  
Securities Exchange Act materiality requirement, **8:54**  
Short selling, **7:137**  
Stimulating demand, **8:110**  
Successive activity price manipulations, **7:133**  
Suppressing supply, **8:112**  
Wash sales, **7:121**  
**MARGIN RULES**  
Generally, **14:59**  
Arbitration, use in, **14:61**  
Court cases, **14:60**  
NASD risk disclosure requirements  
for margin trading, **6:286**  
Parking to avoid, **7:148**  
SEA § 7, **14:59**

**MARKET ABUSE UNIT**

SEC investigations, **20:12**

**MARKET IMPACT**

Materiality tests, **8:21**

**MARKET INSIDERS**

Generally, **7:575**

**MARKET MANIPULATION**

See Manipulation (this index)

**MARKETS**

See Exchanges (this index)

**MARKET TIMING**

See Mutual Fund Violations (this index)

**MARKET TRADES**

Indirect-Impersonal Dealing (this index)

**MARKING THE CLOSE**

Manipulation, **7:131**

**MARKUPS AND MARKDOWNS**

See Broker-Dealer Liability (this index)

**MARTHA STEWART CASE**

Generally, **7:403 et seq.**

Acquittal, **7:411**

Background of case, **7:404**

Imclone stock sale, generally, **7:404**

Indictment, **7:405**

Inferences from evidence, **7:409**

Insiders and inside trading, generally, **7:403 et seq.**

Intent inference test, **7:410**

Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**

Misrepresentation, **7:406**

Scienter, generally, **7:403 et seq.**

Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**

**MARTIN ACT SUITS**

Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:336, 13:337**

**MATCHED ORDERS**

Manipulation, **7:121**

**MATERIALITY**

Generally, **6:165 et seq., 6:248 et seq., 8:4 et seq.**

Aggregate, **6:253, 7:225**

Blue sky law, **8:7**

Broker-dealer liability, **14:82**

Burden of proof, **7:226**

Compensation, private actions, **8:43**

Component tests, **8:15**

Contingent information factor, **8:36**

Definition, **8:9**

Enron connection, **8:40**

Evidence inside information, **7:229 et seq.**

Factors

Generally, **8:33 et seq.**

Compensation, interference from, **8:43**

Contingent information, **8:36**

Enron connection, **8:40**

Federal security law, **8:33 et seq.**

GAAP, **8:42, 8:44**

Interference from compensation and profits, **8:43**

Intersection with scienter and GAAP, **8:44**

Miscellaneous factors, **8:48**

Other elements, relation to, **8:39 et seq.**

Profits, interference from, **8:43**

Public information, relation to, **8:38**

Puffery, **8:35**

Quantity, **8:47**

Related party reporting and GAAP, **8:42**

Reliability, **8:34**

Scienter, **8:44, 8:45**

Soft information, **8:37**

Specificity, **8:35**

Time factors, **8:46**

Vagueness, **8:35**

Federal security law

Factors, **8:33 et seq.**

Tests of, **8:8 et seq.**

GAAP, **8:42, 8:44**

Graduations of materiality, **7:224**

## INDEX

### MATERIALITY—Cont'd

- Inside information
  - Generally, **7:218 et seq.**
- Acquisitions
  - Negotiations, **7:262 et seq.**
  - Nonnegotiated, **7:270**
- Actual market impact after release, **7:236**
- Burden of proof, **7:226**
- Dividend information, **7:247**
- Evidence, **7:229 et seq.**
- Expectations, relation to, **7:233**
- Factors, **7:229 et seq.**
- Graduations of materiality, **7:224**
- Law or fact issue, **7:227**
- Magnitude relative to company, **7:230**
- Market release, actual impact of, **7:236**
- Probability relative to company, **7:230**
- Proof, **7:226**
- Public disclosure and materiality, **7:280**
- Public information, relation of inside information to, **7:234**
- Readily available information compared, **7:234**
- Reasonable investor test
  - Generally, **7:221**
  - Substantial market impact test compared, **7:223**
- Regulation FD triggering disclosures, **7:535**
- Relation to expectations, **7:233**
- Reliability, **7:231**
- Specificity, **7:232**
- Standard of proof, **7:228**
- Substantial market impact test
  - Generally, **7:222**
  - Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**
- Tests of materiality
  - Generally, **7:219 et seq.**
  - Aggregate materiality test, **7:225**
  - Graduations of materiality, **7:224**

### MATERIALITY—Cont'd

- Inside information—Cont'd
- Tests of materiality—Cont'd
  - Mosaic theory, **7:225**
  - Reasonable investor test
    - Generally, **7:221**
    - Substantial market impact test compared, **7:223**
  - Significant alteration of total mix, **7:221**
  - Substantial market impact test
    - Generally, **7:222**
    - Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**
  - Use as test of materiality, **7:235**
- Interference from compensation and profits, **8:43**
- Intersection with scienter and GAAP, **8:44**
- Law and fact questions, **8:23**
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:9**
- Magnitude relative to company, **7:230**
- Market impact test, **8:21**
- Merger challenges, **6:165 et seq.**
- Might, use of term, **6:249**
- Might test
  - Mills case, **8:13**
  - Would test compared, **8:12**
- Mosaic theory, **7:225**
- Pleading and proof, **5:107**
- Practical problems, **6:251**
- Private actions
  - Generally, **8:4 et seq.**
  - Accumulation of information, **8:27**
  - Blue sky law, **8:7**
  - Causation, **8:31**
  - Class certification, **8:550**
  - Common law tests, **8:6**
  - Company publicity, **8:28**
  - Component tests, **8:15**
  - Contingent information factor, **8:36**
  - Court's view, **8:26**
  - Definition, **8:9**
  - Dissemination of material false information, liability for, **Lorenzo v. SEC, 8:346**

**MATERIALITY—Cont'd**

- Private actions—Cont'd
  - Enron connection, **8:40**
- Factors
  - Generally, **8:33 et seq.**
  - Compensation, interference from, **8:43**
  - Contingent information, **8:36**
  - Enron connection, **8:40**
  - Federal security law, **8:33 et seq.**
  - GAAP, **8:42, 8:44**
  - Interference from compensation and profits, **8:43**
  - Intersection with scienter and GAAP, **8:44**
  - Miscellaneous factors, **8:48**
  - Other elements, relation to, **8:39 et seq.**
  - Profits, interference from, **8:43**
  - Public information, relation to, **8:38**
  - Puffery, **8:35**
  - Quantity, **8:47**
  - Related party reporting and GAAP, **8:42**
  - Reliability, **8:34**
  - Scienter, **8:44, 8:45**
  - Soft information, **8:37**
  - Specificity, **8:35**
  - Time factors, **8:46**
  - Vagueness, **8:35**
- Federal security law
  - Factors, **8:33 et seq.**
  - Tests of, **8:8 et seq.**
- Flexibility, **8:25**
- GAAP, **8:42, 8:44**
- Individual responses to information, High Court recognition, **8:29**
- Intersection with scienter and GAAP, **8:44**
- Law and fact questions, **8:23**
- Market impact test, **8:21**
- Materiality of alleged misrepresentation, **8:550**
- Might test
  - Mills case, **8:13**

**MATERIALITY—Cont'd**

- Private actions—Cont'd
  - Might test—Cont'd
    - Would test compared, **8:12**
  - Probability-magnitude test, **8:19**
  - Product liability suits, **8:28**
  - Professional views, **8:31**
  - Proxy fraud, **8:56**
  - Puffery, **8:35**
  - Quantitative factors, **8:47**
  - Reasonable investors react like professionals, **8:32**
  - Related party reporting and GAAP, **8:42**
  - Reliability factor, **8:34**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:507**
  - Distinctions, **8:519**
  - Presumptive reliance and materiality of omissions, **8:509**
  - Substitutions of theories, **8:524**
- Reviewed, **8:24**
- Scienter, **8:44, 8:45**
- Securities Act
  - Generally, **8:49 et seq.**
  - Registration fraud, **8:51**
  - Sales fraud, **8:50, 8:52**
  - Section 11, **8:51**
  - Section 12(a)(2), **8:50**
  - Section 17(a), **8:52**
  - Tests of, **8:10**
- Securities Exchange Act
  - Generally, **8:53 et seq.**
  - Market manipulation, **8:54**
  - Proxy fraud, **8:56**
  - Section 9(a), **8:54**
  - Section 10, **8:55**
  - Section 14, **8:57**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:57**
  - Tests of, **8:11**
- Soft information factor, **8:37**
- Specificity factor, **8:35**
- State laws, **8:7**
- Statistics, **8:30, 8:31**
- Tests of
  - Generally, **8:8 et seq.**

## INDEX

### MATERIALITY—Cont'd

#### Private actions—Cont'd

##### Tests of—Cont'd

Accumulation of information,  
**8:27**

Causation, **8:31**

Company publicity, **8:28**

Component tests, **8:15**

Court's view, **8:26**

Definition, **8:9**

Extension to other provisions,  
**8:16**

Fact vs information, **8:20**

Federal security law, **8:8 et seq.**

Flexibility, **8:25**

Individual responses to informa-  
tion, High Court recogni-  
tion, **8:29**

Information vs fact, **8:20**

Law and fact questions, **8:23**

Market impact test, **8:21**

Might test

    Mills case, **8:13**

    Would test compared, **8:12**

Mills case, **8:13**

Parties, nature of, **8:17**

Probability-magnitude test, **8:19**

Product liability suits, **8:28**

Professional views, **8:31**

Reasonable investors react like  
professionals, **8:32**

Reviewed, **8:24**

Securities Act, **8:10**

Securities Exchange Act, **8:11**

Statistics, **8:30, 8:31**

Time of determination, **8:22**

Transaction, nature of, **8:18**

TSC cases, **8:14**

Violation, nature of, **8:17**

Would test

    Might test compared, **8:12**

    TSC cases, **8:14**

Zicam, **8:27, 8:28**

Time factors, **8:46**

Vagueness factor, **8:35**

Would test

    Might test compared, **8:12**

    TSC cases, **8:14**

### MATERIALITY—Cont'd

#### Private actions—Cont'd

    Zicam, **8:27, 8:28**

Probability-magnitude test, **8:19**

Probably would, use of term, **6:250**

Profits, private actions, **8:43**

Proxy fraud, **8:56**

Public disclosure and materiality,  
**7:280**

Puffery, **8:35**

Quantitative factors, **8:47**

Readily available information  
    compared, **7:234**

Reasonable investor test

    Generally, **7:221**

    Substantial market impact test  
    compared, **7:223**

Regulation FD triggering disclosures,  
**7:535**

Related party reporting and GAAP,  
**8:42**

Reliability

    Generally, **8:34**

    Inside information, **7:231**

Reliance

    Generally, **8:507**

    Distinctions, **8:519**

    Presumptive reliance and material-  
    ity of omissions, **8:509**

    Substitutions of theories, **8:524**

Rule 10b-5

    Generally, **6:168**

    Violations, materiality of, **12:2**

Rule 14a-9, **6:166**

Rule 14c-6, **6:167**

Safe harbor for predictions and  
    projections, **7:35, 7:38**

Scienter, **8:44, 8:45**

Securities Act

    Generally, **8:49 et seq.**

    Registration fraud, **8:51**

    Sales fraud, **8:50, 8:52**

    Section 11, **8:51**

    Section 12(a)(2), **8:50**

    Section 17(a), **8:52, 8:442**

    Tests of, **8:10**

Securities Exchange Act

    Generally, **8:53 et seq.**

**MATERIALITY—Cont'd**

Securities Exchange Act—Cont'd

Market manipulation, **8:54**

Proxy fraud, **8:56**

Section 9(a), **8:54**

Section 10, **8:55**

Section 14, **8:57**

Tender offer fraud, **8:57**

Tests of materiality, **8:11**

Selective disclosures, materiality of, **7:535**

Soft information factor, **8:37**

Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**

Specificity

Generally, **8:35**

Inside information, **7:232**

State laws, **8:7**

Substantial market impact test

Generally, **7:222**

Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**

Tests of

Generally, **7:219 et seq.**

Aggregate materiality test, **7:225**

Graduations of materiality, **7:224**

Mosaic theory, **7:225**

Reasonable investor test

Generally, **7:221**

Substantial market impact test compared, **7:223**

Significant alteration of total mix, **7:221**

Substantial market impact test

Generally, **7:222**

Reasonable investor test compared, **7:223**

Time factors, **8:46**

Use of inside information as test of materiality, **7:235**

Vagueness factor, **8:35**

Weiss decision, lawyers issuing improper legal opinions, **8:442**

Would test

Might test compared, **8:12**

TSC cases, **8:14**

Use of term generally, **6:249**

**MATERIAL NONPUBLIC INFORMATION (MNPI)**

Generally, **7:152**

See also Insiders and Insider Trading (this index)

**MCAFEE, INC.**

Backdating of stock options, **18:11**

**MCCARRAN ACT**

Generally, **6:203**

**MCNULTY DECISION**

SEC investigations, **13:48, 13:65**

**MD&A**

See Management Discussion and Analysis (this index)

**MEDIATION**

Generally, **15:69**

**MERCURY INTERACTIVE CORP.**

Backdating of stock options, **18:1, 18:10**

**MERGERS**

Generally, **6:146 et seq.**

See also Acquisitions (this index)

Antifraud provisions

Generally, **6:158 et seq.**

Buyer-seller requirement, **6:182**

Causation

Generally, **6:179 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:181**

Rule 14a-9, **6:179**

Rule 14c-6, **6:180**

Comparative language, **6:164**

Connection requirement

Generally, **6:183 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:185**

Rule 14a-9, **6:183**

Rule 14c-6, **6:184**

Federal laws generally, **6:151**

Jurisdictional means

Generally, **6:188 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:190**

Rule 14a-9, **6:188, 6:189**

Materiality standard

Generally, **6:165 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:168**

## INDEX

### MERGERS—Cont'd

- Antifraud provisions—Cont'd
  - Materiality standard—Cont'd
    - Rule 14a-9, **6:166**
    - Rule 14c-6, **6:167**
  - Operation, areas of, **6:163**
  - Private actions, **6:160 et seq.**
- Privity
  - Generally, **6:172 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:175**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:173**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:174**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **6:176 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:178**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:176**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:177**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Causation, **6:181**
  - Jurisdictional means, **6:190**
  - Materiality standard, **6:168**
  - Private actions, **6:162**
  - Privity, **6:175**
  - Relation of proxy rules to, **6:159 et seq.**
  - Reliance, **6:178**
  - Scienter standard, **6:171**
- Rule 14a-9
  - Causation, **6:179**
  - Jurisdictional means, **6:188, 6:189**
  - Materiality standard, **6:166**
  - Private actions, **6:160**
  - Privity, **6:173**
  - Reliance, **6:176**
  - Scienter standard, **6:169**
- Rule 14c-6
  - Causation, **6:180**
  - Materiality standard, **6:167**
  - Private actions, **6:161**
  - Privity, **6:174**
  - Reliance, **6:177**
  - Scienter standard, **6:170**
- Scienter standard
  - Generally, **6:169 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:171**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:169**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:170**

### MERGERS—Cont'd

- Antifraud provisions—Cont'd
  - SEA § 14(e), **6:186**
  - Securities Act, **6:187**
- State law
  - Generally, **6:191 et seq.**
  - Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**
  - Delaware law, **6:196**
  - Effect of merger or dissolution, **6:194**
  - Equitable approach, **6:197**
  - Standing approach, **6:196**
  - Violations covered, **6:164**
- Appraisal rights, state law, **6:192, 6:193**
- Background, **6:148 et seq.**
- Buyer-seller requirements, **5:118**
- Congressional intent
  - Generally, **6:154 et seq.**
  - Information statement rules, **6:156**
  - Proxy rules, **6:155**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:157**
  - SEA § 14(a), **6:155**
  - SEA § 14(c), **6:156**
- Cybersecurity, **26:2**
- Definition, **6:147**
- Federal laws
  - Generally, **6:149**
  - Antifraud provisions, **6:151**
  - Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), mitigation of risks, **19:15**
  - Proxy rules, **6:150**
  - SA registration requirements, **6:152**
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), mitigation of risks, **19:15**
- Freeze out, minority shareholders, **2:5**
- Investment Bankers (this index)
- Private actions
  - Generally, **6:160 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **6:162**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:160**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:161**

**MERGERS—Cont'd**

- Proxy solicitations
  - Generally, **6:146 et seq., 6:198 et seq.**
- See also Proxy Fraud (this index)
- Securities covered
  - Generally, **6:199 et seq.**
  - Insurance companies
    - Generally, **6:201**
    - Antifraud provisions, federal, **6:204**
    - Federal and state rules, **6:202**
    - McCarran Act, **6:203**
  - Investment companies, **6:205**
  - Public utility holding companies, **6:206**
- Roles of bankers, **5:174**
- SA registration requirements, **6:152**
- State laws, **6:153**
- Tender Offer Fraud (this index)
- Types of direct-impersonal dealings, **6:1**

**MERRILL LYNCH v. CURRAN**

- Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:562**

**MILLS DECISION**

- Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:558**

**MISAPPROPRIATION**

- Cybersecurity (this index)
- Fiduciary breach, **7:315**
- Insider liabilities
  - Generally, **7:577**
  - Agreed confidentiality, **7:589**
  - Close family relationships, **7:587**
  - Connection element, **7:597**
  - Connection with transaction, **7:680**
  - Court cases, **7:582 et seq.**
  - Enforcement actions, **7:578**
  - Family relationships, **7:587**
  - Fiduciary breach, **7:315**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:594**
  - Private actions, **7:579, 7:603**
  - Rule 10b5-2, **7:585 et seq.**
  - SEC v. Mark Cuban, stress test for misappropriation theory, generally, **7:604 to 7:622**

**MISAPPROPRIATION—Cont'd**

- Insider liabilities—Cont'd
  - Shared confidences, **7:590**

**MISMANAGEMENT**

- Generally, **5:72 et seq.**
- Abuse of trading process, **5:76**
- Fraud as part of, **5:75**
- Meaning, **5:73**
- Pleading, **5:78**
- Policies, **5:77**
- Public, effect of trading abuse on, **5:76**
- Reasons, **5:77**
- Strict view, **5:74**

**MISPRICING FUND SHARES**

- Mutual fund violations, sales practices, **17:16**

**MISREPRESENTATION**

- Indirect-Impersonal Dealing (this index)
- Madoff Ponzi Scheme (this index)

**MISREPRESENTATION, COMMON LAW**

- See Common Law Fraud (this index)

**MITIGATION**

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), risks in mergers and acquisitions, **19:15**

**MNPI**

- See Material Nonpublic Information (this index)

**MODELS**

- Crowdfunding, **14:210**

**MODIFICATION**

- Arbitration, challenging awards, **15:58**

**MONETARY CIVIL PENALTIES**

- See Civil Penalties (this index)

**MONEY LAUNDERING**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

**MONSTER WORLDWIDE INC.**

- Backdating of stock options, **18:7, 18:11**

## INDEX

### **MORGAN STANLEY PROCEEDING**

Mutual fund violations, **17:14, 17:15**

### **MORRISON CASE**

Jurisdiction, foreign cubed case,  
**11:16 to 11:37**

### **MORTGAGE-BACKED SECURITIES (MBSS)**

Coordinated investigations following  
subprime mortgage crisis,  
**13:332**

### **MOTIVE**

Generally, **8:203 et seq.**

Absence, effect of, **8:207**

Burden of proof, **8:208**

Pleading, **11:139**

Presence, effect of, **8:207**

Proof, **8:209**

Scienter

Generally, **8:203 et seq.**

Absence, effect of, **8:207**

Burden of proof, **8:208**

Necessity, **8:205, 8:206**

Presence, effect of, **8:207**

Proof, **8:209**

Versions of scienter, relations among,  
**8:204**

### **MUNICIPAL SECURITIES**

Suitability rules, **14:193**

### **MUNICIPAL SECURITIES AND PUBLIC PENSIONS UNIT**

SEC investigations, **20:12**

### **MUTUAL FUND VIOLATIONS**

Generally, **17:1 et seq.**

Breakpoint discounts, sales charges,  
**17:15**

Broker fraud, **17:8**

Canary complaint, generally, **17:2**

Charges, sales practices, **17:15**

Directors, **17:20**

Disclosure, misleading prospectuses,  
**17:7**

Fund distribution payments, sales  
practices, **17:14**

Governance rules, SEC's, **17:20**

### **MUTUAL FUND VIOLATIONS**

—Cont'd

Hedge funds, **17:21**

Injunctions, ancillary relief, **13:114**

Inside information, trading on, **17:9**

Intermediaries, **17:18**

Late trading, **17:3, 17:4, 17:10, 17:11**

Managements, **17:19**

Market timing

Generally, **17:5 to 17:12**

Broker fraud, **17:8**

Inside information, trading on,  
**17:9**

Misleading prospectuses, **17:7**

Misleading prospectuses, **17:7**

Mispricing fund shares, sales prac-  
tices, **17:16**

Morgan Stanley proceeding, **17:14,**  
**17:15**

Parties' roles and responsibilities in  
mutual fund scandal, generally,  
**17:17 to 17:21**

Prospectus disclosure, misleading  
prospectuses, **17:7**

Responsibilities in mutual fund  
scandal, generally, **17:17 to**  
**17:21**

Sales practice issues

Generally, **17:13 to 17:17**

Breakpoint discounts, sales  
charges, **17:15**

Charges, **17:15**

Fund distribution payments, **17:14**

Mispricing fund shares, **17:16**

SEC governance rules, **17:20**

Senior management, **17:19**

Solutions proposed by SEC, **17:11,**  
**17:12**

### **NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF SECURITIES DEALERS (NASD)**

See also Self Regulatory Organiza-  
tions (this index)

Broker-dealer supervision require-  
ments, **14:172**

Day trading risk disclosure require-  
ments, **6:284**

**NATIONAL ASSOCIATION OF  
SECURITIES DEALERS**

**(NASD)—Cont'd**

- Extended hour trading, risk disclosure requirements, **6:285**
- Implied liabilities under SRO rules
  - Generally, **14:62 et seq.**
  - See also Self Regulatory Organizations (this index)
- Margin trading risk disclosure requirements, **6:286**
- Markup and markdown practices
  - Generally, **14:157 et seq.**
  - Contemporaneous defined, **14:161**
  - Customers, comparative frequency of purchases from, **14:158**
  - Five percent policy, **14:162**
  - Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**
  - Non dominating market makers, **14:160**
- Risk disclosure requirements
  - Generally, **6:283 et seq.**
  - Day trading, **6:284**
  - Extended hour trading, **6:285**
  - Margin trading, **6:286**
  - Short selling, **6:287**
  - Uninsured products, **6:288**
- Short selling risk disclosure requirements, **6:287**
- Suitability rules
  - Generally, **14:185**
  - Inquiry duties of brokers, **14:189**
  - NASD IM-2320-3, **14:190**
- Uninsured products, risk disclosure requirements, **6:288**

**NATIONAL SECURITIES  
MARKETS IMPROVEMENT  
ACT (NSMIA)**

- Generally, **3:187 et seq.**
- Administrative enforcement, **3:199**
- Enactment, **3:32**
- Federal preemption of registration
  - Generally, **3:187 et seq.**
  - Buyer characteristics, **3:193**
  - Exemptions, **3:195 et seq.**
  - Government enforcement, **3:199**
  - Mutual funds, **3:191**

**NATIONAL SECURITIES  
MARKETS IMPROVEMENT  
ACT (NSMIA)—Cont'd**

- Federal preemption of registration
  - Cont'd
  - Nationally traded securities, **3:190**
  - Private rights, effects on, **3:198**
  - Qualified purchasers, **3:192**
  - Regulation preemption, **3:188**
  - Remaining state jurisdiction, **3:197**
  - Scope of act, **3:189 et seq.**
  - Securities characteristics, **3:194**
  - Securities covered, **3:189 et seq.**
  - Securities exemptions, **3:196**
  - Transaction exemptions, **3:195**
- Government enforcement, **3:199**
- Mutual funds registration, **3:191**
- Qualified purchasers, **3:192**
- Regulation preemption, **3:188**
- Remaining state jurisdiction, **3:197**
- Scope of act, **3:189 et seq.**
- SLUSA scope compared, **3:207**

**NEGATIVE IMPLICATION**

- Contraction era, **3:87**
- Expansion era, **3:65**

**NEGLIGENCE**

- Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
- Burden of proof, **8:238**
- Criminal cases, **8:236**
- Injunctions, **8:234**
- Insufficiency, **8:237**
- Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:52**
- Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
- Proof, **8:239**
- Scienter, **8:234**
- SEC decisions, **8:235**
- Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
- Suitability claims, **14:203**
- Versions of scienter, relations among, **8:230**
- Weiss decision, SEC action against bond counsel issuing improper legal opinion, **8:442**

**NEGOTIATED TRANSACTIONS**

- See Transaction Planning (this index)

## INDEX

### NEGOTIATIONS

See also Compromise and Settlement  
(this index)

Acquisition negotiation disclosures.  
See Acquisitions (this index)

SEC investigations

Generally, **13:161 et seq., 13:266**

Advantages and disadvantages,  
**13:163**

Authority of staff, **13:162**

Considerations, **13:165**

Objectives, **13:164**

SRO investigations

Generally, **13:308 et seq.**

Advantages and disadvantages,  
**13:310**

Considerations, **13:312**

Objectives, **13:311**

Procedures, **13:309**

### NEWMAN/CHIASSON CASES

Court decisions, **7:387 et seq.**

### NEW YORK STOCK EXCHANGE (NYSE)

Broker-dealer supervision require-  
ments, **14:173**

Disclosure rules, **App F**

Implied liabilities under SRO rules

Generally, **14:62 et seq.**

See also Self Regulatory Organiza-  
tions (this index)

Insider trading rules, **App F**

### 1933 ACT

See Securities Act (this index)

### 1934 ACT

See Securities Exchange Act (this  
index)

### NO-ACTION LETTERS

SEC, **1:12**

### NONDISCLOSURE LIABILITY

See Disclosure (this index)

Broker-dealer liability, **14:75 et seq.**

Concealment of fraud, **8:501**

Conspirators, **8:306**

Fact or opinion as subject of, **8:2**

### NONDISCLOSURE LIABILITY

—Cont'd

Fraud on the market

Generally, **8:520 et seq.**

See also Reliance (this index)

Insiders and Insider Trading (this  
index)

Opinion or fact as subject of, **8:2**

Pleading, **11:131**

Predictions, **8:2**

Reliance

Generally, **8:484 et seq.**

See also Reliance (this index)

Concealment of fraud, **8:501**

Rule 10b-5 elements generally, **8:2**

Rule 10b-5 liability, **14:75 et seq.**

### NON-INVESTMENT ADVISORY COMPONENT

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:8**

### NONPUBLIC INFORMATION

See Insiders and Insider Trading (this  
index)

Cybersecurity, **26:2, 26:3**

### NOTATIONS

Generally, **1:2**

### NYSE

See New York Stock Exchange (this  
index)

### OFF-BALANCE SHEET TRANSACTIONS

Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **8:413**

### OFFICE OF COMPLIANCE INSPECTIONS AND EXAMINATIONS (OCIE)

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2, 20:5**

### OFFICE OF MARKET INTELLIGENCE

SEC investigations, **20:14**

### OFFICERS, CORPORATE

Actions in concert, **8:294**

Backdating of stock options,  
ramifications, **18:3, 18:7**

Bar orders against individuals, **13:87**

**OFFICERS, CORPORATE—Cont'd**

- Blackout periods
  - Generally, **8:475**
  - Trading prohibitions, **8:472**
- Collateral bar orders against individuals, **13:87, 13:88**
- Conflict of interest, **8:417**
- Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**
- Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**
- Corporate governance, **8:414**
- Correction of violations, responsibility for, **8:418**
- Ethics codes, **8:483**
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Injunctions against, **13:117**
- Insider reports, **8:471**
- Insider trading liability, **7:648**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Internal controls, **8:466**
- Loan prohibitions, **8:481**
- Market, responsibilities to inform
  - Generally, **8:421**
  - Business changes, **8:422**
  - Grace case, **8:423**
  - National Telephone case, **8:422**
  - Second-guessing disclosure counsel, **8:423**
- Parties and privity
  - Generally, **8:413 et seq.**
  - See also Private Actions (this index)
- Prevention of violations, responsibility for, **8:418**
- Responsibilities, **8:413**
- Rule 10b-5 liability
  - Generally, **8:413 et seq.**
  - Actions in concert, **8:294**
  - Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**
  - Backdating of stock options, **18:3, 18:10**
  - Concerted action, **8:294**
  - Conflict of interest, **8:417**
  - Conspiracies, **8:304 et seq.**
  - Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**
  - Cooper case, **8:419**
  - Corporate governance, **8:414**

**OFFICERS, CORPORATE—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5 liability—Cont'd
  - Correction of violations, responsibility for, **8:418**
  - Court cases, **8:415 et seq.**
  - Gould case, **8:417**
  - Gutfreund case, **8:420**
  - Inducement, **8:295**
  - Informed, responsibility to be, **8:415 et seq.**
  - Injunction suits, **8:303**
  - Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**
  - Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**
  - Market, responsibilities to inform
    - Generally, **8:421**
    - Business changes, **8:422**
    - Grace case, **8:423**
    - National Telephone case, **8:422**
    - Second-guessing disclosure counsel, **8:423**
  - Participants generally, **8:292**
  - Participants in violations generally, **8:294**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **8:319 et seq.**
  - Affirmative conduct, **8:321**
  - Aiding-abetting, **8:324**
  - Choice of parties, **8:320**
  - Conspiracy, **8:325**
  - No affirmative conduct, **8:322**
  - Participation, **8:323**
  - Special elements, **8:326**
- Prevention of violations, responsibility for, **8:418**
- Stirling Homex case, **8:416**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act
  - Backdating of stock options, **18:3**
- Blackout periods
  - Generally, **8:475**
  - Trading prohibitions, **8:472**
- Certification, **8:462**
- Ethics codes, **8:483**
- Inside trading reports, **8:471**
- Liabilities, **3:169**
- Loan prohibitions, **8:481**
- Regulation
  - Generally, **8:461 et seq.**
  - Acquisition method, **8:474**

## INDEX

### **OFFICERS, CORPORATE—Cont'd**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act—Cont'd
  - Regulation—Cont'd
    - Bar from office, **8:482**
    - Blackout periods, **8:475**
    - Blackout trading prohibitions, **8:472**
    - Certification, **8:462**
    - Disclosure controls, **8:466**
    - Enforcement, **8:476**
    - Ethics codes, **8:483**
    - Evaluations, **8:468**
    - Exemptions, **8:479**
    - Fair presentation, **8:465**
    - Forfeiture on accounting restatement, **8:480**
    - Inside trading reports, **8:471**
    - Internal controls, **8:466**
    - Liability, **8:476**
    - Loan prohibitions, **8:481**
    - Non-financial information, **8:467**
    - Notice, **8:478**
    - Profit measure, **8:477**
    - Regulation BTR, **8:473**
    - Response to evidence of violations, **8:470**
    - SEC implementation, **8:464, 8:473**
    - Section 302 legislation, **8:463**
    - Section 906, **8:469**
    - Regulation BTR, **8:473**
    - Whistleblower bounty program, original information, **22:9**

### **OGRE**

- Crowdfunding, **14:211**

### **O'HAGAN CASE**

- Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:568**

### **OMISSIONS**

- Accountants, **8:408**
- Insiders and Insider Trading (this index)
- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

### **OPEN-MARKET TRADES**

- Indirect-Impersonal Dealing (this index)

### **OPINIONS**

- See also Court Decisions (this index)
- Broker-dealer liability, **14:81**

### **OPPOSITE SIDE TRADERS**

- Damages, **7:522**
- Definition, **7:494**
- Elements of action, **7:518**

### **ORIGINAL INFORMATION**

- Whistleblowers (this index)

### **OVER THE COUNTER (OTC) MARKET**

- Defined, **1:2**
- Direct-personal transactions distinguished, **1:2**
- Doorstep sales, **1:2**

### **PAINTING THE TAPE**

- Manipulation, **7:132**

### **PARKING**

- Generally, **7:143 et seq.**
- Capital requirements, use to avoid, **7:147**
- Control fights, use in, **7:146**
- Definitions, **7:144**
- Margin requirements, use to avoid, **7:148**
- Record keeping violations, **7:149**
- Tax evasion uses, **7:150**

### **PARMALAT CASE**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:111**

### **PARTIES**

- Generally, **8:258 et seq.**
- See also Private Actions (this index)
- Accountants, liability of
  - Generally, **8:404 et seq.**
  - See also Accountants (this index)
- Aider-abettors
  - Generally, **8:327 et seq.**
  - See also Aider-Abettors (this index)
- Attorneys
  - Generally, **8:409 et seq.**

**PARTIES—Cont’d**

- Attorneys—Cont’d
  - See also Attorneys (this index)
- Broker-dealer supervisory liabilities
  - Generally, **14:164 et seq.**
  - Amex requirements, **14:174**
  - Branch office managers, **14:178**
  - Chief executive officers, **14:180**
  - Compliance officers, **14:181**
  - Court cases, **14:176**
  - Deficiencies, **14:175**
  - General counsel, **14:182**
  - Heads of functional areas, **14:179**
  - Individual responsibilities, **14:177 et seq.**
- Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**
- NASD requirements, **14:172**
- NYSE requirements, **14:173**
- Rule 14e-3(b), **14:169**
- Safe harbor programs, **14:175**
- Sanctions, **14:175**
- SEA § 15(b)(4)(D), **14:166**
- SEA § 15(b)(4)(E), **14:165**
- SEA § 15(b)(6), **14:165**
- SEA § 19, **14:170**
- SEA § 20(a), **14:167**
- SRO requirements, **14:171 et seq.**
- Conspirators
  - Generally, **8:304 et seq.**
  - See also Conspiracies and Conspirators (this index)
- Contribution (this index)
- Control persons
  - Generally, **8:373 et seq.**
  - See also Control Person Liability (this index)
- Corporate officers and directors
  - Generally, **8:413 et seq.**
  - See also Directors, Corporate; Officers, Corporate (this index)
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Joint and Several Liability (this index)
- Mutual Fund Violations (this index)

**PARTIES—Cont’d**

- Proportionate Liability (this index)

**PAYMENTS**

- Arbitration, disciplinary sanctions for failure to pay arbitral award, **15:64**
- Foreign government officials.
  - Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA) (this index)

**PEGGING**

- Manipulation, **7:136**

**PENALTIES**

- See Civil Penalties (this index)

**PENNY STOCK SALES**

- Generally, **14:141 et seq.**
- Blank check companies, **14:145**
- Criticisms of Reform Act, **14:146**
- Pre-quotation requirements, **14:147**
- Pre-sale requirements, **14:142**
- Reform Act of 1990 generally, **14:143**
- Rule 3a51-1, **14:144**
- Rule 15c2-11, **14:147**
- Rule 15g-1, **14:144**
- Rule 15g-8, **14:145**
- Rule 15g-9, **14:142**
- Rule 174, **14:145**
- Rule 419, **14:145**
- Secondary market trading, **14:144**

**PENSIONS**

- Employee Benefit Plans (this index)
- Employee interests in as securities, **5:27**

**PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF CHINA**

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:11**

**PERJURY**

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

**PICOWER**

- Madoff feeder funds, **20:24**

**PIPER CASE**

- Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:561**

## INDEX

### “PIPE” SCHEMES

SEC actions against attorneys, **8:443**

### PLAIN ENGLISH

Generally, **6:278**

See also Disclosure (this index)

### PLANNING

See Transaction Planning (this index)

### PLEA BARGAINING

See Criminal Enforcement (this index)

### PLEADING

Generally, **11:104 et seq., 11:133 et seq.**

See also Private Actions (this index)

Analysts' statements, **11:127**

Broker-dealer fraud, scienter, **8:145**

Buyer-seller requirements, **5:126**

Causation

Acceptance of loss causation pleading, **8:571 to 8:574**

Rejection of loss causation pleading, **8:575 to 8:577**

Circumstantial evidence of recklessness, **11:162**

Company as buyer seller, **5:126**

Connection requirement, **5:140**

Conscious behavior, **11:162**

Contents, **11:120**

Deception, **5:88**

Fact statements, **11:120 et seq.**

Failure to anticipate, **11:131**

Falsity, **11:116**

Forward looking statements, **11:132**  
Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:546**

Group statements, **11:123**

Hindsight cases, **11:130 et seq.**

Implied liability, **8:257**

Information and belief, **11:128**

Insider trading charges, **7:364**

Jurisdiction, **11:38**

Loss causation. Causation, above

Manipulation, **8:123**

Materiality, **5:107**

Misleading character, **11:118**

Mismanagement, **5:78**

### PLEADING—Cont'd

Modified causation, **5:105 et seq.**

Motive, **11:139**

Nondisclosure, **11:131**

Opportunity, **11:139**

Particularity

Generally, **11:104 et seq., 11:115 et seq.**

Analysts' statements, **11:127**

Conflicting concerns, **11:109, 11:110**

Contents, **11:120**

Discovery stays, **11:120 et seq.**

Fact statements, **11:120 et seq., 11:122**

Failure to anticipate, **11:131**

Falsity, **11:116, 11:117**

Forward looking statements, **11:132**

FRCP Rule 9(b)

Conflicting concerns, **11:109**

Purposes, **11:107**

Tactical importance, **11:105**

Group statements, **11:123, 11:124**

Hindsight cases, **11:130 et seq.**

Implied liability, **11:114**

Information and belief, **11:128**

Misleading character, **11:118, 11:119**

Motive, **11:139**

Nondisclosure, **11:131**

Parties, **11:120**

Place, **11:120**

Predictions, **11:132**

Private Securities Litigation Reform Act, **11:104 et seq.**

Purposes of rule, **11:107, 11:108**

Registration fraud, **11:112**

Rule 10b-5 liability

Generally, **11:115 et seq.**

Analysts' statements, **11:127**

Fact statements, **11:120 et seq., 11:122**

Failure to anticipate, **11:131**

Falsity, **11:116, 11:117**

Forward looking statements, **11:132**

**PLEADING—Cont'd**

- Particularity—Cont'd
  - Rule 10b-5 liability—Cont'd
    - Group statements, **11:123, 11:124**
    - Hindsight cases, **11:130 et seq.**
    - Information and belief, **11:128, 11:129**
    - Misleading character, **11:118, 11:119**
    - Nondisclosure, **11:131**
    - Predictions, **11:132**
    - Scienter, **11:133 et seq.**
    - Third party statements, **11:127**
    - Unattributed statements, **11:125, 11:126**
  - SA § 11, **11:112**
  - SA § 12(2), **11:111**
  - Sales fraud, **11:111**
  - Scienter
    - Generally, **11:133 et seq.**
    - Bases for inferring, **11:135**
    - Circumstantial evidence of recklessness, **11:162**
    - Conscious behavior, **11:162**
    - Motive, **11:139**
    - Opportunity, **11:139**
    - Recklessness
      - Generally, **11:141**
      - Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**
    - Securities Exchange Act, **11:134**
  - SEA § 21D(b)
    - Conflicting concerns, **11:110**
    - Purposes, **11:108**
    - Tactical importance, **11:106**
  - Securities Act
    - Registration fraud, **11:112**
    - Sales fraud, **11:111**
  - Securities Exchange Act, **11:113**
  - Tactical importance, **11:105, 11:106**
  - Third party statements, **11:127**
  - Time, **11:120**
  - Unattributed statements, **11:125, 11:126**
  - Parties, **11:120**
  - Place, **11:120**

**PLEADING—Cont'd**

- Predictions, **11:132**
- Privity
  - Generally, **8:319 et seq.**
  - Affirmative conduct, **8:321**
  - Aiding-abetting, **8:324**
  - Choice of parties, **8:320**
  - Conspiracy, **8:325**
  - No affirmative conduct, **8:322**
  - Participation, **8:323**
  - Special elements, **8:326**
- Proportionate liability, **9:58**
- Proxy fraud, scienter, **8:131**
- Recklessness
  - Generally, **11:141**
  - Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**
- SA § 11 requirements, **8:81**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **8:81**
  - Bases for inferring, **11:135**
  - Broker-dealer fraud, **8:145**
  - Manipulation, **8:123**
  - Particularity, **11:133 et seq.**
  - Proxy fraud, **8:131**
  - SEC, false reports to, **8:152**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:138**
- SEA § 21D(b) requirements, **11:134**
- Strict causation, **5:99 et seq.**
- Tender offer fraud scienter, **8:138**
- Third party statements, **11:127**
- Time, **11:120**
- Unattributed statements, **11:125**
- Unfair terms, **5:152**

**PONZI SCHEME**

- Madoff Ponzi Scheme (this index)

**PORTALS**

- Crowdfunding, **14:217**
- Description, **14:223**

**PREDICTIONS**

- Generally, **7:5 et seq.**
- See also Forward Looking Information (this index)
- Broker-dealer liability, **14:81**
- Broker predictions, **7:7**
- Brokers, **7:7**

## INDEX

### **PREDICTIONS—Cont'd**

- Disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:10 et seq.**
  - Capital resources, **7:15**
  - Liquidity, **7:14**
  - With MD&A requirement
    - Administrative enforcement, **7:13**
    - Private actions, **7:17**
  - Operation results, **7:16**
  - Private actions on MD&A requirements, **7:17**
  - Restrictions on disclosures, **7:18**
- Safe harbor
  - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
  - Background, **7:20**
  - Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
- PSLRA
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Corrections, **7:45**
  - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Eligible makers, **7:37**
  - Exclusions, **7:40**
  - Expandability, **7:41**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
  - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
  - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
  - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
  - Scope of Act, **7:24**
  - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
  - Update duty, **7:45**

### **PREDICTIONS—Cont'd**

- Disclosure obligations—Cont'd
  - Safe harbor—Cont'd
    - Readily available cautionary statements
      - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
      - SEC filings, **7:33**
      - Timing, **7:32**
    - SA Rule 175, **7:21**
    - SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
    - SEC, traditional position, **7:18**
    - With SEC encouragement, **7:12**
    - Without SEC rule, **7:11**
- Earnings
  - Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**
  - Insider use, **7:204**
  - Misrepresentations, **6:255**
  - Nondisclosure, **6:257**
- Forecasts distinguished, **7:5**
- Forward looking information generally, **7:5**
- Fraud, predictions and projections as, **7:6**
- Inherently misleading earnings statements, **6:256**
- Misrepresentations, **7:46**
- Nondisclosure
  - Generally, **8:2**
  - Earnings information, **6:257**
- Pleading particularity, **11:132**
- Projections distinguished, **7:5**
- Safe harbor
  - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Background, **7:20**
  - Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
  - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
- PSLRA
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Corrections, **7:45**

**PREDICTIONS—Cont'd**

- Safe harbor—Cont'd
- PSLRA—Cont'd
  - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Eligible makers, **7:37**
  - Exclusions, **7:40**
  - Expandability, **7:41**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
  - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
  - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
  - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
  - Scope of Act, **7:24**
  - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
  - Update duty, **7:45**
- Readily available cautionary statements
  - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
  - SEC filings, **7:33**
  - Timing, **7:32**
- SA Rule 175, **7:21**
- SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**

**PREEMPTION**

- Federal
  - See also Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act; State Law (this index)
  - Employee benefit plans, **5:43**
  - ERISA, **5:43**
  - Mutual funds registration, **3:191**
  - Nationally traded securities, **3:190**
  - NSMIA preemption of registration
    - Generally, **3:187 et seq.**
    - Buyer characteristics, **3:193**
    - Exemptions, **3:195 et seq.**
    - Government enforcement, **3:199**
    - Mutual funds, **3:191**
    - Nationally traded securities, **3:190**
    - Private rights, effects on, **3:198**

**PREEMPTION—Cont'd**

- Federal—Cont'd
  - NSMIA preemption of registration—Cont'd
    - Qualified purchasers, **3:192**
    - Regulation preemption, **3:188**
    - Remaining state jurisdiction, **3:197**
    - Scope of act, **3:189 et seq.**
    - Securities characteristics, **3:194**
    - Securities covered, **3:189 et seq.**
    - Securities exemptions, **3:196**
    - Transaction exemptions, **3:195**

**PRE-PURCHASE MODEL**

- Crowdfunding, **14:210**

**PRESS RELEASES**

- Disclosures by, **7:283**

**PRESUMPTIONS**

- Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:521**
- Materiality, presumptive reliance and, **8:509**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:508 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
- Ute presumption, **8:484**

**PRICE**

- Market based price determinations, **8:525**
- Retroactive pricing of stock option grants. See Backdating of Stock Options (this index)

**PRICE DROP**

- Private actions, correction and price drop, Proposition 2, **8:580**

**PRICE INFLATION**

- Private actions, Proposition 1, **8:579**

**PRIVACY**

- SEC investigations, use of wiretap in enforcement, **13:149, 13:150**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS**

- Generally, **8:1 et seq.**
- Absolute liability, **8:243**
- Actions in concert, **8:294**

## INDEX

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Admission of wrongdoing, compromise and settlement, **13:176 to 13:181**
- Aider-abettor liability
  - Generally, **8:327 et seq.**
  - Absence of benefit, **8:366**
  - Benefit, **8:364 et seq.**
  - Court cases, **8:328 et seq.**
  - Definitions, **8:349**
  - Dissemination of material false information, liability for, *Lorenzo v. SEC*, **8:346**
  - Elements, **8:352**
  - Extent of benefit, **8:367**
  - High conscious intent, **8:358**
  - Janus Capital
    - Federal securities laws, applicability, **8:336 to 8:345**
    - Impact of Janus decision, **8:337**
    - Insiders, liability for statements of their corporations, **8:339, 8:340**
    - Legal entity, liability for statements of another, **8:338**
    - Observations and tentative conclusions, **8:342 et seq.**
    - Preparation for or assistance to another, **8:336 et seq.**
    - Rule 10b-5(a) and (c), **8:345**
    - SEC enforcement actions, applicability, **8:343**
    - Shield function, **8:341**
    - State law, applicability to, **8:344**
  - Knowledge of violation, **8:356 et seq.**
  - Legal entity, liability for statements of another, Janus Capital, **8:338**
  - Nature of benefit, **8:367**
  - Origins of doctrine, **8:351**
  - Preparation for or assistance to another, Janus Capital, **8:336 et seq.**
  - Presence of benefit, **8:365**
  - Primary violations, **8:355**
  - PSLRA, **8:347**
  - Requirements, **8:352**

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Aider-abettor liability—Cont'd
  - Rule 10b-5(a) and (c), Janus Capital, **8:345**
  - SEA § 20(f), **8:348**
  - SEC enforcement actions, applicability, Janus Capital, **8:343**
  - State law, applicability to, Janus Capital, **8:344**
  - Substantial assistance
    - Generally, **8:359 et seq.**
    - Extraordinary actions, **8:362**
    - Inaction, **8:363**
    - Ordinary actions, **8:362**
    - Proximate cause, **8:360**
    - Silence, **8:363**
    - Timing, **8:361**
- Amicus curiae participation by agencies
  - CFTC, **13:234**
  - SEC, **13:79**
  - SROs, **13:293**
- Ancillary remedies, **9:17**
- Arbitration compared, **15:6**
- Backdating stock options, **18:10**
- Basic case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:565**
- Blue Chip case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:560**
- Bonds, actions on, SLUSA limitations, **3:211**
- Borak, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:557**
- Broker-dealer liability
  - Generally, **14:1 et seq.**
  - See also Broker-Dealer Liability (this index)
  - Attorneys' fees, express actions, **14:53**
  - Broker's knowledge, express actions, **14:41**
  - Burden of proof, SA § 12(a)(2), **14:42**
  - Causation, **14:91 et seq.**
  - Churning (this index)
  - Class actions
    - SA § 11, **14:18**
    - SA § 12, **14:57**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd  
 Costs, express actions, **14:53**  
 Damages  
     Express actions, **14:46, 14:51**  
     Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**  
 Debt securities markups, **14:163**  
 Due diligence defense  
     Generally, **14:5**  
     SEC view, **14:9**  
 Express actions  
     Generally, **14:2 et seq.**  
     Attorneys' fees, **14:53**  
     Broker's knowledge, **14:41**  
 Class actions  
     SA § 11, **14:18**  
     SA § 12, **14:57**  
 Costs, **14:53**  
 Damages, **14:46, 14:51**  
 Due diligence defense  
     Generally, **14:5**  
     SEC view, **14:9**  
 Integrated disclosure systems,  
     **14:7**  
 Interest, **14:48**  
 Limitation of actions, **14:17**  
     SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**  
     SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**  
 Misrepresentations, **14:39**  
 Offerors, brokers as  
     SA § 12(a)(1), **14:22**  
     SA § 12(a)(2), **14:29 et seq.**  
 Omissions, **14:39**  
 In pari delicto defense, **14:21**  
 Privity, **14:34**  
 Proximate cause, **14:35**  
 Punitive damages, **14:54**  
 Purchaser, plaintiff as  
     SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**  
     SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**  
 Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**  
 Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**  
 Rescission, **14:46, 14:50**  
 SA § 11  
     Generally, **14:2 et seq., 14:3 et seq.**  
     Court cases, **14:6**  
     Damages, **14:15**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd  
 Express actions—Cont'd  
     SA § 11—Cont'd  
         Due diligence defense  
             Generally, **14:5**  
             SEC view, **14:9**  
         Integrated disclosure systems,  
             **14:7**  
         Later filings, effect of, **14:10**  
         Non-managing underwriters,  
             **14:13**  
         Participating underwriters,  
             **14:13**  
         Policy considerations, **14:12**  
         Reasonable investigation  
             defense  
                 Generally, **14:5**  
                 Integrated disclosure  
                 systems, **14:7**  
                 SEC Rule 176, **14:8**  
                 Reasonable investigation  
                 requirement, **14:11**  
                 SEC Rule 176, **14:7**  
                 SEC Rule 412, **14:7**  
                 SEC view of due diligence  
                 techniques, **14:9**  
         Underwriters  
             Generally, **14:4**  
             Due diligence, **14:14**  
     SA § 12(a)(1)  
         Generally, **14:19 et seq.**  
         Broker as defendant, **14:20**  
         Class actions, **14:57**  
         Exemptions from SA § 5,  
             **14:24**  
         Limitation of actions, **14:25**  
         Offerors, brokers as, **14:22**  
         In pari delicto defense, **14:21**  
         Purchaser, plaintiff as, **14:23**  
         Sellers, brokers as, **14:22**  
         Violations of SA § 5, **14:26**  
     SA § 12(a)(2)  
         Generally, **14:27 et seq.**  
         Attorneys' fees, **14:53**  
         Broker as defendant, **14:28**  
         Broker's knowledge, **14:41**  
         Burden of proof, **14:42**

INDEX

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd

Express actions—Cont'd

SA § 12(a)(2)—Cont'd

Class actions, **14:57**

Costs, **14:53**

Damages, **14:46, 14:51**

Interest, **14:48**

Limitation of actions, **14:56**

Misrepresentations, **14:39**

Offerors, brokers as, **14:29 et seq.**

Omissions, **14:39**

Pinter case, **14:30, 14:38**

Privity, **14:34**

Proximate cause, **14:35**

Punitive damages, **14:54**

Purchaser, plaintiff as, **14:44**

Purchaser's knowledge, **14:40**

Reasonable care, **14:43**

Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:43**

Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**

Rescission, **14:46, 14:50**

SEA § 10(b) and, overlap between, **14:55**

Sellers, brokers as, **14:29 et seq.**

Substantial factor in sale, broker as, **14:35**

Tax considerations, **14:48**

Tender, **14:49**

Transactional coverage, **14:58**

Sellers, brokers as

SA § 12(a)(1), **14:22**

SA § 12(a)(2), **14:29 et seq.**

Substantial factor in sale, broker as, **14:35**

Tax considerations, **14:48**

Violations of SA § 5, **14:26**

Implied actions

Margin rules

Generally, **14:59**

Arbitration, use in, **14:61**

Court cases, **14:60**

SEA § 7, **14:59**

Rule 10b-5

Generally, **14:73 et seq.**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd

Implied actions—Cont'd

Rule 10b-5—Cont'd

Causation, **14:91 et seq.**

Connection requirement, **14:94**

Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**

Damages, **14:95 et seq.**

Elements of action, **14:74**

Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**

Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**

Justifiable reliance, **14:89**

Market misrepresentations, **14:78**

Market nondisclosures, **14:79**

Materiality, **14:82**

Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**

Mitigation of damages, **14:102**

Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**

Opinions, **14:81**

Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**

Predictions, **14:81**

Proximate cause, **14:92**

Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**

Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**

Recommendations, **14:81**

Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**

Rescission

Chasins measure, **14:97**

Lost profits, **14:101**

Nye measure, **14:101**

Rolf measure, **14:100**

Restitution, **14:104**

Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**

SRO rules

Generally, **14:62 et seq.**

Arbitration, **14:72**

Buttrey doctrine, **14:65**

Colonial Realty doctrine, **14:64**

Contraction era, **14:71**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd
  - Implied actions—Cont'd
    - SRO rules—Cont'd
      - Court cases, **14:64 et seq.**
      - Expansion era, **14:63 et seq.**
  - Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**
  - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
  - Limitation of actions
    - Generally, **14:17**
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:25**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:56**
  - Lost profits, rescission and, **14:101**
  - Margin rules
    - Generally, **14:59**
    - Arbitration, use in, **14:61**
    - Court cases, **14:60**
    - SEA § 7, **14:59**
  - Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
  - Markup and markdown practices
    - Generally, **14:148 et seq.**
  - Basis
    - Generally, **14:150 et seq.**
    - Contemporaneous defined, **14:156**
    - Customers, comparative frequency of purchases from, **14:158**
    - Dominating market makers, **14:154**
    - Inter-dealer prices, availability of, **14:155**
    - Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**
    - Market-makers, retail, **14:153**
    - Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
    - NASD criteria, **14:157 et seq.**
    - Non dominating market makers, **14:160**
    - Non market makers
      - NASD criteria, **14:159**
      - SEC criteria, **14:152**
    - Retailer market makers, **14:153**
  - Debt securities markups, **14:163**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd
  - Markup and markdown practices
    - Cont'd
      - Disclosure, **14:149**
      - Five percent policy, **14:162**
      - Inter-dealer prices, availability of, **14:155**
      - Inter-dealer trades, frequency of, **14:158**
      - Market maker status, **14:152 et seq.**
  - Materiality, **14:82**
  - Misrepresentations, **14:39**
  - Offerors, brokers as, express actions, **14:22, 14:29 et seq.**
  - Omissions, **14:39**
  - Opinions, **14:81**
  - Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**
  - In pari delicto defense, **14:21**
  - Penny Stock Sales (this index)
  - Predictions, **14:81**
  - Privity, **14:34**
  - Proximate cause
    - Generally, **14:92**
    - Express actions, **14:35**
  - Punitive damages, **14:54**
  - Purchaser, plaintiff as
    - SA § 12(a)(1), **14:23**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:44**
  - Reasonable investigation defense
    - Generally, **14:5**
    - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
    - SEC Rule 176, **14:8**
  - Reasonable investigation requirement
    - SA § 11, **14:11**
    - SA § 12(a)(2), **14:43**
  - Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**
  - Recommendations, **14:81**
  - Recovery, **14:45 et seq.**
  - Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**
  - Rescission
    - Chasins measure, **14:97**
    - Express actions, **14:46, 14:50**
    - Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**
    - Lost profits, **14:101**

## INDEX

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

#### Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd

##### Rescission—Cont'd

Nye measure, **14:101**

Rolf measure, **14:100**

##### Rule 10b-5

Generally, **14:73 et seq.**

Causation, **14:91 et seq.**

Connection requirement, **14:94**

Contraction era, compensatory damages in, **14:105**

Damages, **14:95 et seq.**

Elements of action, **14:74**

Issuer misrepresentations, **14:76**

Issuer nondisclosures, **14:77**

Justifiable reliance, **14:89**

Market misrepresentations, **14:78**

Market nondisclosures, **14:79**

Materiality, **14:82**

Misrepresentation, **14:75 et seq.**

Mitigation of damages, **14:102**

Nondisclosure, **14:75 et seq.**

Opinions, **14:81**

Out-of-pocket damages, **14:103**

Predictions, **14:81**

Proximate cause, **14:92**

Punitive damages, **14:106 et seq.**

Recklessness, **14:83 et seq.**

Recommendations, **14:81**

Reliance, **14:86 et seq.**

##### Rescission

Chasins measure, **14:97**

Lost profits, **14:101**

Nye measure, **14:101**

Rolf measure, **14:100**

Restitution, **14:104**

Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**

SA § 11, reasonable investigation requirement, **14:11**

SA § 12(a)(1), broker as defendant, **14:20**

SA § 12(a)(2)

Broker as defendant, **14:28**

Burden of proof, **14:42**

Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:43**

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

#### Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd

Scienter, **14:83 et seq.**

Sellers, brokers as, **14:22, 14:29 et seq.**

Substantial factor in sale, broker as, express actions, **14:35**

Suitability (this index)

##### Supervisory duties

Generally, **14:164 et seq.**

Amex requirements, **14:174**

Branch office managers, **14:178**

Chief executive officers, **14:180**

Compliance officers, **14:181**

Court cases, **14:176**

Deficiencies, **14:175**

General counsel, **14:182**

Heads of functional areas, **14:179**

Individual responsibilities, **14:177 et seq.**

Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**

NASD requirements, **14:172**

NYSE requirements, **14:173**

Rule 14e-3(b), **14:169**

Safe harbor programs, **14:175**

Sanctions, **14:175**

SEA § 15(b)(4)(D), **14:166**

SEA § 15(b)(4)(E), **14:165**

SEA § 15(b)(6), **14:165**

SEA § 19, **14:170**

SEA § 20(a), **14:167**

SRO requirements, **14:171 et seq.**

Burden of Proof (this index)

##### Causation

Generally, **8:555 et seq.**

Basic case, **8:565**

Blue Chip case, **8:560**

Borak decision, **8:557**

Correction and price drop, Proposition 2, **8:580**

Dirks case, **8:563**

Dura Pharmaceuticals case, **8:569**

8th Circuit, cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:574**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Causation—Cont'd  
 11th Circuit, cases rejecting loss causation pleading, **8:577**  
 Halliburton, **8:570**  
 Holmes case, **8:567**  
 Insider trading, **7:517**  
 Merrill Lynch v. Curran, **8:562**  
 Mills decision, **8:558**  
 9th Circuit, cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:571**  
 O'Hagan, **8:568**  
 Piper case, **8:561**  
 Pleading  
   Acceptance of loss causation pleading, **8:571 to 8:574**  
   Rejection of loss causation pleading, **8:575 to 8:577**  
 Price inflation, Proposition 1, **8:579**  
 Procedural aspects, **8:581**  
 Randall case, **8:564**  
 Resolution of issues, **8:578 to 8:581**  
 2nd Circuit  
   Cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:572**  
   Cases rejecting loss causation pleading, **8:575**  
 7th Circuit, cases rejecting loss causation pleading, **8:576**  
 Supreme Court decisions, **8:556 to 8:570**  
 3rd Circuit, cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:573**  
 Transaction causation, **8:484**  
 Ute Indians, **8:484, 8:559**  
 Virginia bankshares, **8:566**  
 CFTC, amicus curiae participation, **13:234**  
 Churning (this index)  
 Class Actions (this index)  
 Compromise and settlement, admission of wrongdoing, **13:176 to 13:181**  
 Congressional intent, **3:16**  
 Conspirators, common law fraud, **8:261**  
 Constructive fraud, **8:242**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Continuation of criminal proceedings, **13:140**  
 Contribution (this index)  
 Control person liability  
   Generally, **8:373 et seq.**  
   Broker-dealers, **8:394 et seq.**  
   Corporate policy of affairs, control over, **8:382 et seq.**  
 Court cases, **8:380 et seq.**  
 Culpable participation, **8:378, 8:388 et seq.**  
 Element of control, **8:379**  
 Good faith defense  
   Generally, **8:393 et seq.**  
   Broker-dealers, **8:394 et seq.**  
   SA § 15, **8:393 et seq.**  
   SEA § 20(a), **8:393 et seq.**  
   Law and fact questions, **8:381**  
   Legislative history, **8:375**  
   Participation, culpable, **8:378, 8:388 et seq.**  
   Standard of participation, **8:377**  
   Statutory language, **8:374**  
 Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:327, 13:328**  
 Correction and price drop, Proposition 2, **8:580**  
 Defenses, interrelations of fraud rules generally, **3:51**  
 Direct-Impersonal Dealing (this index)  
 Direct-Personal Dealing (this index)  
 Dirks case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:563**  
 Dura Pharmaceuticals case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:569**  
 8th Circuit, cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:574**  
 Elements of actions under fraud rules, **3:50**  
 11th Circuit, cases rejecting loss causation pleading, **8:577**  
 Equitable fraud, **8:242**  
 Expert testimony, churning, **14:132**  
 Express actions. Implied and express actions, below

## INDEX

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Federal security law
  - Materiality factors, **8:33 et seq.**
  - Materiality tests, **8:8 et seq.**
- Federal vs state private actions, relative advantages, **3:200**
- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), allegations and settlements, **19:12, 19:13**
- Fraud on the market. Reliance, below
- Good faith of plaintiff, **8:254**
- Halliburton, loss causation, **8:570**
- Holmes case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:567**
- Implied and express actions
  - Generally, **3:54 et seq., 8:242 et seq.**
  - See also Implied Liability (this index)
  - Absolute liability, **8:243**
  - Actual knowledge of plaintiff, **8:244**
  - Broker-dealer liability, above
  - Burden of proof, **8:255**
  - Constructive fraud, **8:242**
  - Contributory negligence, **8:253**
  - Cort v Ash, **3:95 et seq.**
  - Current status of 10b-5 actions, **3:146 et seq.**
  - Elements, **3:50**
  - Equitable fraud, **8:242**
  - Good faith of plaintiff, **8:254**
  - Innocent defendants, **8:243**
  - Insider trading, express causes of action, **7:491 et seq., 7:493 et seq.**
  - Interrelations of fraud rules generally, **3:50**
  - Limitation of actions, **11:46**
  - Misrepresentation, plaintiff's knowledge, **8:246**
  - Negligence of plaintiff, **8:253**
  - Nondisclosure, plaintiff's knowledge, **8:245**
  - Overlapping remedies in contraction era, **3:102 et seq.**
  - Overlapping remedies in expansion era, **3:69 et seq.**

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Implied and express actions—Cont'd
  - Plaintiff's knowledge
    - Generally, **8:244 et seq.**
    - Actual knowledge, **8:244**
    - Comparative knowledge, **8:249**
    - Constructive knowledge, **8:250**
    - Limitation of actions, **8:251**
    - Misrepresentation, **8:246**
    - Nondisclosure, **8:245**
    - Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**
  - Pleading, **8:257**
  - Proof, **8:256**
  - Reliance, **8:484**
  - Strict liability, **8:243**
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Indirect-Impersonal Dealing (this index)
- Injunctions, scienter requirement
  - Actual knowledge, **8:174**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:185**
  - Intent, **8:195**
- Innocent defendants, **8:243**
- Insider trading
  - Generally, **7:160, 7:478 et seq., 7:491 et seq.**
  - Amount of liability, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**
  - Ancillary relief, **7:490, 7:525**
  - Background, **7:501**
  - Burden of proof
    - Generally, **7:366**
    - Defenses, **7:369**
    - Institutions, **7:367**
- Causation
  - Generally, **7:517**
  - Implied liability, **7:517**
- Connection with requirement
  - Market transactions, **7:370**
  - Rule 10b-5, **7:370**
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:371**
  - Tender offers, **7:371**
- Contemporaneous traders, actions by, **7:503 et seq.**
- Control persons, actions against, **7:486, 7:512**
- Convertibles traders, suits by, **7:508**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Insider trading—Cont'd  
 Damages, **7:488, 7:521 et seq.**  
 Defenses  
     Generally, **7:350**  
     Amount defined, **7:355**  
     Binding contract defense, **7:351**  
     Burden of proving, **7:369**  
     Common terms and issues,  
         **7:355 et seq.**  
     Date defined, **7:357**  
     Delegation alternative to  
         amount, price and date,  
         **7:358**  
     Exclusiveness of defenses,  
         **7:360**  
     Institutional defenses, **7:361**  
     Instructions defense, **7:352**  
     Overriding limitations, **7:359**  
     Price defined, **7:356**  
     Relation to other laws, **7:362**  
     Systematic plans defense, **7:353**  
     Tracking plans defense, **7:354**  
 Elements of action, **7:514 et seq.**  
 Express actions  
     Generally, **7:478 et seq.**  
     Amount of liability, **7:488**  
     Ancillary relief, **7:490**  
     Control persons, actions against,  
         **7:486**  
     Damages, **7:488**  
     Other liabilities, relation to,  
         **7:489**  
     Parties defendant, **7:483**  
     Parties plaintiff  
         Express causes of action,  
             **7:480 et seq.**  
         Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**  
     Relation to other liabilities,  
         **7:489**  
     Same class of securities, actions  
         by traders in, **7:482, 7:506**  
     Tippers, actions against, **7:485**  
     Traders  
         Actions against, **7:484**  
         Contemporaneous, suits by,  
             **7:481**  
         Who can be sued, **7:483**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Insider trading—Cont'd  
 Express actions—Cont'd  
     Who may sue  
         Express causes of action,  
             **7:480 et seq.**  
         Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**  
 Fiduciary theory  
     Generally, **7:498**  
     Scienter, **7:385**  
 Implied liability  
     Generally, **7:491 et seq.**  
     Amount of liability, **7:521 et**  
         **seq.**  
     Ancillary relief, **7:525**  
     Background, **7:501**  
     Causation, **7:517**  
     Contemporaneous traders,  
         actions by, **7:503 et seq.**  
     Control persons, actions against,  
         **7:512**  
     Convertibles traders, suits by,  
         **7:508**  
     Damages, **7:521 et seq.**  
     Elements of action, **7:514 et**  
         **seq.**  
     Fiduciary theory, **7:498**  
     Market, relation of parties to,  
         **7:493 et seq.**  
     Misappropriation theory, **7:499**  
     Opposite side traders  
         Damages, **7:522**  
         Elements of action, **7:518**  
         Relations of parties to market,  
             **7:494**  
         Suits by, **7:504**  
     Option traders, suits by, **7:507**  
     Parties defendant, **7:509**  
     Relation to other liabilities,  
         **7:524**  
     Reliance, **7:516**  
     Rule 10b-5, **7:497 et seq.**  
     Rule 14e-3, **7:500**  
     Same side traders  
         Damages, **7:523**  
         Elements of action, **7:519**  
         Relations of parties to market,  
             **7:495**

## INDEX

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - Implied liability—Cont'd
    - Same side traders—Cont'd
      - Suits by, **7:505**
    - Standing, **7:520**
    - Tipplers, actions against, **7:511**
    - Traders, actions against, **7:510**
    - Who can be sued, **7:509**
    - Who can sue, **7:502**
  - Institutional defenses, **7:361**
  - Institutions, burden of proof, **7:367**
  - Janus Capital, liability for statements of their corporations, **8:339, 8:340**
  - Market, relation of parties to, **7:493 et seq.**
  - Misappropriation theory
    - Generally, **7:499**
    - Scienter, **7:386**
  - Motion practice, **7:365**
  - Opposite side traders
    - Damages, **7:522**
    - Elements of action, **7:518**
    - Relations of parties to market, **7:494**
    - Suits by, **7:504**
  - Option traders, suits by, **7:507**
  - Other liabilities, relation to, **7:489**
  - Parties, **7:363**
  - Parties defendant, **7:483, 7:509**
  - Parties plaintiff
    - Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**
    - Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**
  - Pleading
    - Generally, **7:364**
    - Scienter, **7:398**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:363 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:368**
  - Quantum of proof, **7:366, 7:367**
  - Relation to other liabilities, **7:489, 7:524**
  - Reliance
    - Generally, **7:516**
    - Implied liability, **7:516**
  - RICO, **7:414, 7:464**
  - Rule 10b-5, **7:497 et seq.**

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Insider trading—Cont'd
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:500**
  - Same class of securities, actions by traders in, **7:482, 7:506**
  - Same side traders
    - Damages, **7:523**
    - Elements of action, **7:519**
    - Relations of parties to market, **7:495**
    - Suits by, **7:505**
- Scienter
  - Generally, **7:372 et seq.**
  - Fiduciary theory
    - Tipplers, **7:381**
    - Trading insiders, **7:377**
    - Trading tippees, **7:385**
  - Mail and wire fraud, **7:413**
  - Misappropriation theory
    - Tipplers, **7:382**
    - Trading insiders, **7:378**
    - Trading tippees, **7:386**
  - Pleading, **7:398**
  - Proof, **7:399 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**
  - Rule 14e-3, **7:412**
- Tipplers
  - Generally, **7:379 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:401**
- Trading insiders
  - Generally, **7:375 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:400**
- Trading tippees
  - Generally, **7:383 et seq.**
  - Proof, **7:402**
- Standing, **7:520**
- Tipplers
  - Actions against, **7:485, 7:511**
  - Scienter, **7:379 et seq.**
- Traders
  - Actions against, **7:484, 7:510**
  - Contemporaneous, suits by, **7:481**
- Who can be sued, **7:483, 7:509**
- Who can sue
  - Generally, **7:502**
  - Express causes of action, **7:480 et seq.**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Insider trading—Cont'd  
 Who can sue—Cont'd  
     Implied actions, **7:502 et seq.**  
 Insurance, **9:76**  
 Joint and Several Liability (this index)  
 Joint tortfeasors, common law fraud, **8:261**  
 Jurisdiction  
     Generally, **11:2 et seq.**  
     Adviser activities, **11:15**  
     Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**  
     Broker-dealer activities, **11:15**  
     Check clearance as interstate activity, **11:11**  
     Class actions, **11:42**  
     Defenses, **11:41**  
     Derivative suits, **11:43**  
     Foreign transactions, **11:16**  
     Fraud, interstate nature of, **11:9**  
     International transactions, **11:16**  
     Interstate commerce, **11:3**  
     Local telephone use, **11:4**  
     Mails, use of, **11:6**  
     Misconduct, relation of jurisdictional means to  
         Generally, **11:8 et seq.**  
         Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**  
         Check clearances, **11:11**  
         Fraud, **11:9**  
         Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**  
         Transaction, **11:10, 11:12**  
     Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**  
     Pleading, **11:38**  
     Procedure, **11:39 et seq.**  
     Process, **11:40**  
     Scope of commerce, **11:3**  
     Securities exchanges and interstate commerce, **11:7**  
     Service of process, **11:40**  
     Telephone use, **11:4**  
     Transaction, interstate nature of, **11:10, 11:12**  
     Venue, **11:39**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Limitation of Actions (this index)  
 Loss causation. Causation, above  
 Manipulation  
     Generally, **8:102 et seq.**  
     Burden of proof, **8:104**  
     Defendant's purpose  
         Generally, **8:103 et seq.**  
         Burden of proof, **8:104**  
         Direct evidence, **8:106**  
         Indirect evidence, **8:107**  
         Large blocks, **8:108**  
         Large proportion of trading, **8:109**  
         Painting the tape, **8:110**  
         Playoff of markets, **8:114**  
         Price action, **8:113**  
         Profit, **8:115**  
         Proof, **8:105**  
         Stimulating demand, **8:110**  
         Suppressing supply, **8:112**  
     Indirect evidence of purpose, **8:107**  
     Materiality, **8:54**  
     Painting the tape, **8:110**  
     Playoff of markets, **8:114**  
     Price action, **8:113**  
     Proof, **8:105**  
 Martha Stewart case  
     Generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
     Acquittal, **7:411**  
     Background of case, **7:404**  
     Imclone stock sale, **7:404**  
     Indictment, **7:405**  
     Inferences from evidence, **7:409**  
     Insiders and insider trading, generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
     Intent inference test, **7:410**  
     Limits on argument and evidence, **7:407**  
     Misrepresentation, **7:406**  
     Scienter, generally, **7:403 et seq.**  
     Sufficiency of evidence test, **7:408**  
 MD&A predictions and projections, disclosure requirements, **7:17**  
 Merger challenges  
     Rule 10b-5, **6:162**  
     Rule 14a-9, **6:160**

INDEX

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Merger challenges—Cont'd
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:161**
- Merrill Lynch v. Curran, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:562**
- Mills, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:558**
- Misappropriation theory of insider liabilities, **7:579, 7:603**
- Misrepresentations
  - Fact or opinion as subject of, **8:2**
  - Omnicare decision, fact vs. opinion standard, **8:3**
  - Opinion or fact as subject of, **8:2**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:246**
  - Rule 10b-5 elements generally, **8:2**
- Motion practice
  - Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:547**
  - Insider trading charges, **7:365**
  - Proportionate liability, **9:59**
- Negligence of plaintiff, **8:253**
- 9th Circuit, cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:571**
- Nondisclosure
  - Fact or opinion as subject of, **8:2**
  - Omnicare decision, fact vs. opinion standard, **8:3**
  - Opinion or fact as subject of, **8:2**
  - Rule 10b-5 elements generally, **8:2**
- NSMIA preemption, **3:198**
- Observations, **13:182**
- O'Hagan case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:568**
- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings
  - Generally, **13:133 et seq.**
  - Battle over discovery, **13:135**
  - CFTC references, **13:263**
  - Civil-criminal flow of information, **13:139**
  - Continuation of criminal proceedings, **13:140**
  - Continuations of civil proceedings, **13:137, 13:138**
  - Criminal-civil flow of information, **13:141, 13:143**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Parallel civil and criminal proceedings—Cont'd
  - Criteria for stay of discovery, **13:136**
  - Discovery, **13:139, 13:142, 13:143**
    - Continuation of civil proceedings with, **13:138**
  - Failure to warn of criminal proceeding in civil proceeding, **13:142**
  - Reasons for concern, **13:134**
  - SEC references, **13:133 et seq.**
- Parallel criminal proceedings, **13:143**
- Parties
  - Generally, **8:258 et seq.**
- Aider-abettors
  - Implied liability, **8:279**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:269**
- Blue sky law, **8:262**
- Brokers
  - Implied liability, **8:276**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:266**
- Buyers, **8:265**
- Common law, **8:259**
- Conspirators
  - Generally, **8:261**
  - Implied liability, **8:280**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:270**
- Contribution (this index)
- Control persons, **8:271**
- Distinctions, **8:258**
- Implied liability
  - Generally, **8:274 et seq.**
  - Aider-abettors, **8:279**
  - Brokers, **8:276**
  - Buyers, **8:275**
  - Conspirators, **8:280**
  - Control persons, **8:281**
  - Insiders, **8:277**
  - Participants, **8:278**
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Insiders
  - Implied liability, **8:277**
  - SA § 12(2), **8:267**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Joint and Several Liability (this index)

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Parties—Cont'd

- Joint tortfeasors, **8:261**
- Participants, **8:268**
- Proportionate Liability (this index)
- Proxy fraud, **8:284**
- Registration fraud, **8:273**
- SA § 11, **8:273**
- Sales fraud
  - Generally, **8:263 et seq.**
  - Aider-abettors, **8:269**
  - Brokers, **8:266**
  - Buyers, **8:265**
  - Conspirators, **8:270**
  - Control persons, **8:271**
  - Implied liability, **8:274 et seq.**
  - Insiders, **8:267**
  - Others, **8:272**
  - Participants, **8:268**
  - SA § 17(a), **8:274 et seq.**
  - Sellers, **8:264**
- SEA § 9, **8:282**
- SEA § 10, **8:283**
- SEA § 14
  - Proxy fraud, **8:284**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:285**
- SEA § 15(c)(1), **8:286**
- SEA § 18, **8:287**
- Securities Act, **8:263 et seq.**
- Securities Exchange Act, **8:282 et seq.**
- Sellers, **8:264**
- Tender offer fraud, **8:285**
- Penny Stock Sales (this index)
- Piper case, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:561**
- Plaintiff's knowledge
  - Generally, **8:244 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge, **8:244**
  - Comparative knowledge, **8:249**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:250**
  - Limitation of actions, **8:251**
  - Misrepresentation, **8:246**
  - Nondisclosure, **8:245**
  - Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**
- Pleading (this index)
- Price drop, Proposition 2, **8:580**
- Price inflation, Proposition 1, **8:579**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Privity

- Generally, **8:288 et seq.**
- Accountants, liability of, **8:404**
- Actions in concert, **8:294**
- Agreement, **8:314**
- Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**
- Aider-abettors, **8:327 et seq.**
- Aiding and abetting generally, **8:292**
- Attorneys, **8:409**
- Benefit, **8:317**
- Combination, **8:314**
- Concerted action, **8:294**
- Conspiracy generally, **8:292**
- Conspirators, **8:304 et seq.**
- Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**
- Distinctions, **8:258**
- Extent of liability, **8:318**
- Implied liability, **8:288 et seq.**
- Inducement, **8:295**
- Injunction suits, **8:303**
- Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**
- Intent, **8:316**
- Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**
- Knowledge, **8:315**
- Liability, extent of, **8:318**
- Limits, **8:291**
- Officers and directors, **8:413**
- Participants generally, **8:292**
- Participants in violations generally, **8:294**
- Participation generally, **8:292**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **8:319 et seq.**
  - Affirmative conduct, **8:321**
  - Aiding-abetting, **8:324**
  - Choice of parties, **8:320**
  - Conspiracy, **8:325**
  - No affirmative conduct, **8:322**
  - Participation, **8:323**
  - Special elements, **8:326**
- Policies, **8:289**
- Reasons, **8:289**
- Rescission, availability of, **8:290**
- Rule 10b-5, **8:288 et seq.**

## INDEX

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Privity—Cont'd
  - Suability, meaning of generally, **8:293**
  - Theory of action, **8:290**
- Procedural aspects, **8:581**
- Process, **11:40**
- Proof (this index)
- Proportionate Liability (this index)
- Quantum of proof
  - Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:548**
  - Insider trading charges, **7:366**
  - Proportionate liability, **9:63**
- Randall case, loss causation in
  - Supreme Court decision, **8:564**
- Reduction in price, Proposition 2, **8:580**
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:484 et seq.**
  - Access to information, **8:499**
  - Anti-reliance devices, **8:511 et seq.**
  - Blue sky law, **8:488**
  - Buyer-seller requirement, **8:582**
  - Causation as substitute for reliance, **8:524**
  - Class actions
    - Generally, **8:515 et seq.**
    - Desirability of class actions, **8:526**
    - Utility of class actions, **8:526**
  - Common law, **8:487**
  - Concealment of fraud, **8:501**
  - Damages
    - Causation, **8:553**
    - Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:552**
  - Disclaimers, **8:514**
  - Due diligence, **8:506**
  - Expertise of plaintiff, **8:497**
  - Fiduciary relationships, **8:500**
  - Fraud on the market theory (FOMT)
    - Generally, **8:520 et seq.**
    - Background, **8:521**
    - Burden of proof, **8:548**

### PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd

- Reliance—Cont'd
  - Fraud on the market theory (FOMT)—Cont'd
    - Causation as substitute for reliance, **8:524**
    - Class certification, **8:550**
    - Common law, **8:531**
    - Damages measure, **8:552**
    - Desirability of class actions, **8:526**
    - Disclosure policy and, **8:533**
    - Fairness, **8:527**
    - Indirect or presumed reliance, **8:539 et seq.**
    - Indirect reliance, **8:521**
    - Market based price determinations, **8:525**
    - Materiality as substitute for reliance, **8:524**
    - Materiality of alleged misrepresentation, **8:550**
    - Motion practice, **8:547**
    - Nature of market, **8:536 et seq.**
    - Novelty of theory, **8:529**
    - Parties, **8:545**
    - Pleading, **8:546**
    - Policies, **8:523, 8:528 et seq.**
    - Presumption, treatment as, **8:521**
    - Presumptions, **8:510**
    - Price determinations, market based, **8:525**
    - Procedural aspects of theory, **8:545 et seq.**
    - Proof, **8:549, 8:550**
    - Quantum of proof, **8:548**
    - Reasons, **8:523, 8:528 et seq.**
    - Rebuttal of theory, **8:542 et seq.**
    - Scope of theory, **8:522**
    - Statutory bases, **8:532**
    - Utility of class actions, **8:526**
  - Fraud to enter the market theory (FEMT)
    - Indirect or presumed reliance, **8:541**
    - Nature of market, **8:538**
    - Rebuttal of theory, **8:544**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Reliance—Cont'd  
 Generality of misrepresentation, **8:504**  
 Indirect reliance, **8:521**  
 Insider trading, **7:516**  
 Integration clauses, **8:513**  
 Justifiable, **8:496**  
 Long-standing relationships, **8:498**  
 Materiality  
     Generally, **8:507**  
     Distinctions, **8:519**  
     Presumptive reliance and materiality of omissions, **8:509**  
     Substitutions of theories, **8:524**  
 No-reliance clauses, **8:512**  
 Opportunity to detect fraud, **8:502**  
 Plaintiff initiation, **8:503**  
 Presumptions  
     Generally, **8:508 et seq.**  
     Fraud on the market, above  
     Material omissions, **8:509**  
     Ute presumption, **8:484**  
 Proof of subjective reliance, **8:485**  
 Registration fraud, **8:491**  
 Rule 10b-5, **8:493 et seq.**  
 SA § 11, **8:491**  
 SA § 12(a)(2), **8:490**  
 SA § 17(a), **8:492**  
 SA generally, **8:489 et seq.**  
 Sales fraud  
     Generally, **8:489 et seq.**  
     Express liability, **8:490**  
     Implied liability, **8:492**  
 Sophistication of plaintiff, **8:497**  
 Specificity of misrepresentation, **8:504**  
 State law, **8:488**  
 Subjective reliance, **8:485**  
 Transaction planning, **8:511 et seq.**  
 Ute presumption, **8:484**  
 Remedies (this index)  
 Residue, **8:583**  
 Restitution to defrauded investors,  
     SEC role in  
     In court, **10:3**  
     Out of court, **10:2**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Sales fraud  
     Generally, **8:489 et seq.**  
     Aider-abettors, **8:269**  
     Brokers, **8:266**  
     Buyers, **8:265**  
     Conspirators, **8:270**  
     Control persons, **8:271**  
     Insiders, **8:267**  
     Others, **8:272**  
     Participants, **8:268**  
     Parties, **8:263 et seq.**  
     SA § 17(a), **8:274 et seq.**  
     Sellers, **8:264**  
 Same side traders  
     Damages, **7:523**  
     Elements of action, **7:519**  
     Relations of parties to market, **7:495**  
     Suits by, **7:505**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act liability, **8:476**  
 Scioner  
     Generally, **8:58 et seq.**  
 Actual knowledge  
     Generally, **8:165 et seq.**  
     Burden of proof, **8:178**  
     Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**  
     Direct-impersonal transactions, **8:171**  
     Direct-personal transactions, **8:170**  
     Indirect-impersonal transactions, **8:172**  
     Injunctions, **8:174**  
     Insufficiency of, **8:177**  
     Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**  
     Proof, **8:179**  
     SEC decisions, **8:175**  
     Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**  
 Bad faith  
     Generally, **8:210 et seq.**  
     Burden of proof, **8:219**  
     Effect of good or bad faith generally, **8:216 et seq.**  
     Good reputation, effect of, **8:218**  
     Insufficiency, **8:215**  
     Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**

INDEX

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Scienter—Cont'd
  - Bad faith—Cont'd
    - Proof, **8:220**
    - Sufficiency, **8:214**
  - Belief of defendant, **8:240**
  - Blue sky law
    - Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:61**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:62**
  - Broker-dealer fraud
    - Generally, **8:139 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:141**
    - Defendant's intent, **8:143**
    - Defendant's knowledge and belief
      - Generally, **8:140 et seq.**
      - Burden of proof, **8:141**
      - Proof, **8:142**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:144**
    - Pleading, **8:145**
    - Proof, **8:142**
  - Burden of proof, **8:66**
  - Common law
    - Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:59**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:60**
  - Constructive knowledge
    - Generally, **8:180 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:189**
    - Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**
    - Injunctions, **8:185**
    - Insufficiency, **8:188**
    - Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**
    - Proof, **8:190**
    - SEC decisions, **8:186**
    - Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**
  - Defendant's knowledge and intent
    - Blue sky laws, **8:61**
    - Common law, **8:59**
  - Defendant standards, **8:164**
  - Definitions, **8:155 et seq.**
  - Diligence, lack of
    - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:238**
    - Criminal cases, **8:236**
    - Injunctions, **8:234**
    - Insufficiency, **8:237**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Scienter—Cont'd
  - Diligence, lack of—Cont'd
    - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
    - Proof, **8:239**
  - SEC decisions, **8:235**
  - Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
- Intent
  - Generally, **8:191 et seq.**
  - Absence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
  - Burden of proof, **8:201**
  - Criminal cases, **8:197**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**
  - Injunctions, **8:195**
  - Insufficiency, **8:199**
  - Necessity, **8:193 et seq.**
  - Presence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
  - Proof, **8:202**
  - SEC decisions, **8:196**
  - Sufficiency, **8:198**
- Limitation of actions, plaintiff's knowledge of fraud, **8:70**
- Manipulation
  - Generally, **8:102 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:104**
  - Defendant's intent, **8:119**
  - Defendant's knowledge, **8:120**
  - Defendant's purpose
    - Generally, **8:103 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:104**
    - Defense of proper purpose, **8:118**
  - Direct evidence, **8:106**
  - Indirect evidence, **8:107**
  - Large blocks, **8:108**
  - Large proportion of trading, **8:109**
  - Painting the tape, **8:110**
  - Playoff of markets, **8:114**
  - Price action, **8:113**
  - Profit, **8:115**
  - Proof, **8:105**
  - Proper purpose as defense, **8:118**
  - Stimulating demand, **8:110, 8:111**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Scienter—Cont'd
  - Manipulation—Cont'd
    - Defendant's purpose—Cont'd
      - Suppressing supply, **8:112**
    - Defendant's willfulness, **8:121**
    - Direct evidence, **8:106**
    - Indirect evidence of purpose, **8:107**
    - Large block trades, **8:108**
    - Large proportion of trading, **8:109**
    - Painting the tape, **8:110**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:122**
    - Playoff of markets, **8:114**
    - Pleading, **8:123**
    - Price action, **8:113**
    - Proof, **8:105**
    - Stimulating demand, **8:110**
    - Suppressing supply, **8:112**
  - Materiality, **8:44, 8:45**
  - Motive
    - Generally, **8:203 et seq.**
    - Absence, effect of, **8:207**
    - Burden of proof, **8:208**
    - Necessity, **8:205, 8:206**
    - Presence, effect of, **8:207**
    - Proof, **8:209**
  - Negligence
    - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:238**
    - Criminal cases, **8:236**
    - Injunctions, **8:234**
    - Insufficiency, **8:237**
    - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
    - Proof, **8:239**
    - SEC decisions, **8:235**
    - Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
  - Other elements, relation of scienter to, **8:163**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge
    - Blue sky laws, **8:62**
    - Common law, **8:60**
  - Plaintiff standards, **8:164**
  - Pleading
    - Particularity
      - Generally, **11:133 et seq.**
      - Bases for inferring, **11:135**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Scienter—Cont'd
  - Pleading—Cont'd
    - Particularity—Cont'd
      - Circumstantial evidence of recklessness, **11:162**
      - Conscious behavior, **11:162**
      - Motive, **11:139**
      - Opportunity, **11:139**
      - Recklessness, **11:141, 11:162**
      - SEA § 21D(b), **11:134**
      - SEC, false reports to, **8:152**
  - Proof
    - Actual knowledge, **8:179**
  - Proxy fraud
    - Generally, **8:125 et seq., 8:126 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:127**
    - Intent, **8:129**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:130**
    - Pleading, **8:131**
    - Proof, **8:128**
  - Recklessness
    - Generally, **8:221 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:227**
    - Insufficiency, **8:226**
    - Necessity, **8:223, 8:224**
    - Proof, **8:228**
    - Sufficiency, **8:225**
  - Registration statement fraud, **8:72 et seq.**
  - Reputation, **8:218**
  - Rule 10b-5 fraud
    - Generally, **8:154 et seq.**
    - Actual knowledge
      - Generally, **8:165 et seq.**
      - Burden of proof, **8:178**
      - Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**
    - Direct-impersonal transactions, **8:171**
    - Direct-personal transactions, **8:170**
    - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **8:172**
    - Injunctions, **8:174**
    - Insufficiency of, **8:177**
    - Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**
    - Proof, **8:179**

INDEX

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Scienter—Cont'd  
Rule 10b-5 fraud—Cont'd  
Actual knowledge—Cont'd  
SEC decisions, **8:175**  
Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**  
Bad faith  
Generally, **8:210 et seq.**  
Burden of proof, **8:219**  
Effect of good or bad faith  
generally, **8:216 et seq.**  
Good reputation, effect of,  
**8:218**  
Insufficiency, **8:215**  
Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**  
Proof, **8:220**  
Sufficiency, **8:214**  
Belief of defendant, **8:240**  
Breadth of rule, **8:160**  
Congressional intent, **8:158**  
Constructive knowledge  
Generally, **8:180 et seq.**  
Burden of proof, **8:189**  
Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**  
Injunctions, **8:185**  
Insufficiency, **8:188**  
Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**  
Proof, **8:190**  
SEC decisions, **8:186**  
Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**  
Defendant standards, **8:164**  
Diligence, lack of  
Generally, **8:229 et seq.**  
Injunctions, **8:234**  
Flexibility, need for, **8:162**  
Formulations, **8:155**  
Intent  
Generally, **8:191 et seq.**  
Absence of intent, effect of,  
**8:200**  
Burden of proof, **8:201**  
Criminal cases, **8:197**  
Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**  
Injunctions, **8:195**  
Insufficiency, **8:199**  
Necessity, **8:193 et seq.**  
Presence of intent, effect of,  
**8:200**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

Scienter—Cont'd  
Rule 10b-5 fraud—Cont'd  
Intent—Cont'd  
Proof, **8:202**  
SEC decisions, **8:196**  
Sufficiency, **8:198**  
Motive  
Generally, **8:203 et seq.**  
Absence, effect of, **8:207**  
Burden of proof, **8:208**  
Necessity, **8:205, 8:206**  
Presence, effect of, **8:207**  
Proof, **8:209**  
Negligence  
Generally, **8:229 et seq.**  
Injunctions, **8:234**  
Other elements, relation of sci-  
enter to, **8:163**  
Plaintiff standards, **8:164**  
Policy, **8:161**  
Reasons, **8:161**  
Recklessness, **8:221 et seq.**  
Reputation, **8:218**  
Scope of rule, **8:160**  
Semantic confusion, **8:156,**  
**8:157**  
Unreasonable conduct  
Generally, **8:229 et seq.**  
Injunctions, **8:234**  
Willfulness, **8:241**  
SEA § 15(c)(1), **8:139 et seq.**  
SEC, false reports to  
Generally, **8:146**  
Defendant's intent, **8:150**  
Defendant's knowledge  
Generally, **8:147 et seq.**  
Burden of proof, **8:148**  
Proof, **8:149**  
Good faith, **8:150**  
Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:151**  
Pleading, **8:152**  
Privity, **8:287**  
Quantitative factors, **8:153**  
Securities Exchange Act  
Generally, **8:101 et seq.**  
Rule 10b-5 fraud, **8:154 et seq.**  
Section 9(a), **8:102 et seq.**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- Scienter—Cont'd
  - Securities Exchange Act—Cont'd
    - Section 10, **8:124**
    - Section 14, **8:125, 8:132 et seq.**
    - Section 15(c)(1), **8:139 et seq.**
    - Section 18, **8:146 et seq.**
  - Stimulating demand, **8:110**
  - Tender offer fraud
    - Defendant's intent, **8:136**
    - Defendant's knowledge and belief
      - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
      - Burden of proof, **8:134**
      - Proof, **8:135**
    - Intent, **8:136**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:137**
    - Pleading, **8:138**
  - Unreasonable conduct
    - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:238**
    - Criminal cases, **8:236**
    - Injunctions, **8:234**
    - Insufficiency, **8:237**
    - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
    - Proof, **8:239**
    - SEC decisions, **8:235**
    - Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
  - Versions of scienter, relations among
    - Actual knowledge, **8:166**
    - Bad faith, **8:211**
    - Constructive knowledge, **8:181**
    - Diligence, lack of, **8:230**
    - Intent, **8:192**
    - Motive, **8:204**
    - Negligence, **8:230**
    - Purpose, **8:204**
    - Recklessness, **8:222**
    - Unreasonable conduct, **8:230**
    - Willfulness, **8:241**
- Scienter (this index)
- 2nd Circuit
  - Cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:572**
  - Cases rejecting loss causation pleading, **8:575**

**PRIVATE ACTIONS—Cont'd**

- SEC role in restitution to defrauded investors
    - Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, **13:324**
    - In court, **10:3**
    - Out of court, **10:2**
  - SEC, amicus curiae participation, **13:79**
  - Service of process, **11:40**
  - 7th Circuit, cases rejecting loss causation pleading, **8:576**
  - SROs, amicus curiae participation, **13:293**
  - Standing
    - Distinctions, **8:258**
    - Implied liability, **7:520**
    - Insider trading, **7:520**
  - Strict liability, **8:243**
  - Suitability (this index)
  - Supreme Court, loss causation, **8:556 to 8:570**
  - 3rd Circuit, cases accepting loss causation pleading, **8:573**
  - Ute Indians, **8:484, 8:559**
  - Venue, **11:39**
  - Virginia bankshares, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:566**
  - Whistleblowers, employers, **22:16**
- PRIVATE CLASS ACTIONS**
- ESG, **29:3**
- PRIVATE COMPANIES**
- Whistleblowers, employees, **22:17**
- PRIVATE INFORMATION**
- See Insiders and Insider Trading (this index)
- PRIVATE SECURITIES LITIGATION REFORM ACT (PSLRA)**
- Aider-abettor liability, **8:347**
  - Congressional intent, **3:214**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**
  - Feeder fund protection, **20:18**
  - Forward looking statement defined, **7:25**
  - Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:86, 7:97**

## INDEX

### PRIVATE SECURITIES LITIGATION REFORM ACT (PSLRA)—Cont'd

- Pleading (this index)
- Predictions and projections
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Corrections, **7:45**
  - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Eligible makers, **7:37**
  - Exclusions, **7:40**
  - Expandability, **7:41**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
  - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
  - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
  - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
  - Readily available cautionary statements
    - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
    - SEC filings, **7:33**
    - Timing, **7:32**
  - Scope of Act, **7:24**
  - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
  - Update duty, **7:45**
- Proportionate Liability (this index)
- Rule 10b-5 and, **3:1**
- Scope of Act, **7:24**
- SLUSA and, **3:214**

### PRIVATE TRANSACTIONS

- See Direct-Personal Dealing (this index)

### PRIVILEGES

- Generally, **13:31 et seq.**
- Attorney-client
  - Generally, **13:36**

### PRIVILEGES—Cont'd

- Attorney-client—Cont'd
  - Filip era
    - Changes in policy, **13:54**
    - Cooperation, **13:51, 13:52**
    - Internal investigations, **13:52**
    - Investor recovery, **13:55**
    - Joint defense, **13:54**
    - Relief from pressure to waive, **13:50**
    - Sharing agreements, **13:54**
    - Waiver request, **13:53**
    - Work product, **13:54**
  - Waiver
    - Generally, **13:37 et seq.**
    - CFTC, **13:57**
    - Constitutional analysis, **13:42**
    - Constitutional violations, **13:43**
    - District Court reconsideration (Stein IV), **13:46**
    - Fee claims, **13:45**
    - Filip Era, **13:50**
    - Findings, **13:41**
    - KPMG's actions, **13:40**
    - Legal fee payment, **13:39**
    - McNulty era, **13:48**
    - Pressure not to pay legal fees, **13:58**
    - Pressure to waive, **13:38**
    - Proffers under threat of nonpayment of legal fees, **13:44**
    - Relief from pressure to waive, **13:48 et seq.**
    - SEC, **13:56**
    - Second Circuit (Stein V), **13:47**
    - Specter Bill, **13:49**
    - US v. Stein, **13:39 et seq.**
- CFTC investigations, **13:223**
- Claiming, strategic considerations, **13:61 to 13:65**
- SEC investigations, **13:31 et seq.**
- Self incrimination
  - Generally, **13:32**
  - Waiver, **13:33**
- SRO investigations, **13:285**
- Waiver, **13:33**
- Work product, **13:59**

**PRIVITY**

- Generally, **6:172 et seq., 8:258 et seq.**
- See also Private Actions (this index)
- Actions in concert, **8:294**
- Agreement, **8:314**
- Benefit, **8:317**
- Combination, **8:314**
- Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**
- Extent of liability, **8:318**
- Implied liability, Rule 10b-5, **3:176**
- Intent, **8:316**
- Knowledge, **8:315**
- Liability, extent of, **8:318**
- Merger challenges, **6:172 et seq.**
- Participation, pleading, **8:323**
- Pleading
  - Generally, **8:319 et seq.**
  - Affirmative conduct, **8:321**
  - Aiding-abetting, **8:324**
  - Choice of parties, **8:320**
  - Conspiracy, **8:325**
  - No affirmative conduct, **8:322**
  - Participation, **8:323**
  - Special elements, **8:326**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **6:175**
  - Actions in concert, **8:294**
  - Aider-abettor liability, **8:327 et seq.**
  - Concerted action, **8:294**
  - Control person liability, **8:373 et seq.**
  - Implied liability, **3:176**
  - Inducement, **8:295**
  - Injunction suits, **8:303**
  - Insiders, inducement by, **8:299**
  - Issuers, inducement by, **8:297**
  - Participants generally, **8:292**
  - Participants in violations generally, **8:294**
- Rule 14a-9, **6:173**
- Rule 14c-6, **6:174**
- Suability, meaning of generally, **8:293**

**PROBABLE CAUSE**

- Insiders and inside trading, Raj Rajaratnam case, **21:15**

**PROCESS**

- Generally, **11:40**

**PROFITS**

- Madoff feeder funds, **20:19**
- Private actions, materiality, **8:43**

**PRO FORMA FINANCIAL INFORMATION**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act liabilities based on, **3:170**

**PROJECTIONS**

- Generally, **7:5, 7:5 et seq.**
- See also Forward Looking Information (this index)
- Analyst projections, **7:9**
- Company projections, **7:8**
- Disclosure obligations
  - Generally, **7:10 et seq.**
  - Capital resources, **7:15**
  - Liquidity, **7:14**
  - With MD&A requirement
    - Administrative enforcement, **7:13**
    - Private actions, **7:17**
  - Operation results, **7:16**
  - Private actions on MD&A requirements, **7:17**
  - Restrictions on disclosures, **7:18**
- Safe harbor
  - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
  - Background, **7:20**
  - Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
  - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
  - PSLRA
    - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
    - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**
    - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
    - Caution prong, **7:26**
    - Corrections, **7:45**
    - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
    - Discovery stays, **7:44**

## INDEX

### PROJECTIONS—Cont'd

- Disclosure obligations—Cont'd
- Safe harbor—Cont'd
- PSLRA—Cont'd
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Eligible makers, **7:37**
  - Exclusions, **7:40**
  - Expandability, **7:41**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
  - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
  - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
  - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
  - Scope of Act, **7:24**
  - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
  - Update duty, **7:45**
- Readily available cautionary statements
  - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
  - SEC filings, **7:33**
  - Timing, **7:32**
- SA Rule 175, **7:21**
- SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
- SEC, traditional position, **7:18**
- With SEC encouragement, **7:12**
- Without SEC rule, **7:11**
- Forecasts distinguished, **7:5**
- Fraud, predictions and projections as, **7:6**
- Predictions distinguished, **7:5**
- Safe harbor
  - Generally, **7:19 et seq.**
  - Background, **7:20**
  - Bespeaks caution doctrine, **7:22**
  - Immateriality, **7:35, 7:38**
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
  - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
- PSLRA
  - Generally, **7:23 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge prong, **7:36**

### PROJECTIONS—Cont'd

- Safe harbor—Cont'd
- PSLRA—Cont'd
  - Attacking cautionary statements, **7:29**
  - Caution prong, **7:26**
  - Corrections, **7:45**
  - Definition of forward looking statement, **7:25**
  - Discovery stays, **7:44**
  - Drafting cautionary statements, **7:28**
  - Eligible makers, **7:37**
  - Exclusions, **7:40**
  - Expandability, **7:41**
  - Falsity, actual knowledge of, **7:36**
  - Later disclosures, **7:30**
  - Motion practice, **7:43**
  - Nonexclusiveness, **7:41**
  - Oral statements referencing caution, **7:31, 7:39**
  - Procedural aspects, **7:42**
  - Prohibited uses, **7:40**
  - Scope of Act, **7:24**
  - Statements with cautions, **7:27**
  - Update duty, **7:45**
- Readily available cautionary statements
  - Generally disseminated, **7:34**
  - SEC filings, **7:33**
  - Timing, **7:32**
- SA Rule 175, **7:21**
- SEA Rule 3b-6, **7:21**

### PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

### PROOF

- Bad faith, scienter, **8:220**
- Broker-dealer fraud
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief, **8:142**
  - Scienter, **8:142**
- Churning, **14:132**
- Class certification, materiality of alleged misrepresentation, **8:550**
- Constructive knowledge, **8:190**

**PROOF—Cont'd**

Defendant's knowledge and belief, **8:142**  
 Diligence, lack of, **8:239**  
 Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:549, 8:550**  
 Implied liability  
   Generally, **8:256**  
   Rule 10b-5, **3:177**  
 Insiders and Insider Trading (this index)  
 Intent, **8:202**  
 Motive, **8:209**  
 Negligence, **8:239**  
 Proportionate liability, **9:64**  
 Proxy fraud, **8:128**  
 Recklessness, **8:228**  
 Reliance, **8:485**  
 Retaliatory intent under Sarbanes-Oxley Act, UBS Securities decision, **22:24**  
 Rule 10b-5 implied liability, **3:177**  
 Scienter  
   Generally, **8:67**  
   Actual knowledge, **8:179**  
   Bad faith, **8:220**  
   Broker-dealer fraud, **8:142**  
   Constructive knowledge, **8:190**  
   Defendant's knowledge and belief, **8:142**  
   Diligence, lack of, **8:239**  
   Intent, **8:202**  
   Motive, **8:209**  
   Negligence, **8:239**  
   Proxies and proxy solicitations, **8:128**  
   Recklessness, **8:228**  
   SEC, false reports to, **8:149**  
   Tender offer fraud, **8:135**  
   Unreasonable conduct, **8:239**  
 SEC, false reports to, **8:149**  
 Securities Act  
   Scienter, **8:67**  
   Section 11, **8:78**  
   Section 17(a), **8:85**  
 Subjective reliance, **8:485**  
 Tender offer fraud, **8:135**  
 Unreasonable conduct, **8:239**

**PROPORTIONATE LIABILITY**

Generally, **9:47 et seq., 9:57**  
 See also Joint and Several Liability (this index)  
 Additions to, **9:54**  
 Apportionment determinations, **9:61**  
 Background, **9:48**  
 Burden of proof, **9:63**  
 Contribution and, **9:69**  
 Control persons, **9:53**  
 Damage limitations, effect of, **9:55**  
 Fair share liability, **9:52**  
 Indemnification, **9:76**  
 Insurance, **9:76**  
 Joint and several liability compared, **9:47**  
 Knowing violators  
   Generally, **9:51**  
   Determinations, **9:60**  
 Legislative history, **9:48**  
 Measure of liability, **9:49 et seq.**  
 Motion practice, **9:59**  
 Nature of liability, **9:49 et seq.**  
 Nondisclosures to jury, **9:62**  
 Nonknowing violators, **9:52**  
 Parties, **9:57**  
 Pleadings, **9:58**  
 Private Securities Litigation Reform Act, **9:48**  
 Procedural aspects, **9:56 et seq.**  
 Proof, **9:64**  
 Quantum of proof, **9:63**  
 Scope of liability, **9:50**  
 Securities Act provisions, **9:48**  
 Securities Exchange Act provisions, **9:48**  
 Settlement, effect of, **9:65**

**PROSPECTUS DISCLOSURE**

Mutual fund violations, misleading prospectuses, **17:7**

**PROSPECTUS FRAUD**

Contextual definitions, **3:43**  
 Disclosure by, **7:286**  
 Issuer disclosure by, **7:286**  
 Limitation of actions, **11:47 et seq.**  
 Meanings of, **3:41 et seq.**  
 Penny Stock Sales (this index)

## INDEX

### **PROSPECTUS FRAUD—Cont'd**

Statutory definition, **3:42**

Suitability (this index)

### **PROXIMATE CAUSE**

See also Causation (this index)

Aider-abettor liability, substantial assistance, **8:360**

Broker-dealer liability, **14:92**

### **PROXY FRAUD**

Generally, **6:198 et seq.**

See also Direct-Impersonal Dealing (this index)

Antifraud provisions

Backdating of stock options, **18:3**

Causation

Generally, **6:179 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:181**

Rule 14a-9, **6:179**

Rule 14c-6, **6:180**

Connection requirement

Generally, **6:183 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:185**

Rule 14a-9, **6:183**

Rule 14c-6, **6:184**

Jurisdictional means

Generally, **6:188 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:190**

Rule 14a-9, **6:188, 6:189**

Materiality standard

Generally, **6:165 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:168**

Rule 14a-9, **6:166**

Rule 14c-6, **6:167**

Mergers

Generally, **6:158 et seq.**

Buyer-seller requirement, **6:182**

Causation

Generally, **6:179 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:181**

Rule 14a-9, **6:179**

Rule 14c-6, **6:180**

Comparative language, **6:164**

Connection requirement

Generally, **6:183 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:185**

Rule 14a-9, **6:183**

Rule 14c-6, **6:184**

### **PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

Antifraud provisions—Cont'd

Mergers—Cont'd

Jurisdictional means

Generally, **6:188 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:190**

Rule 14a-9, **6:188, 6:189**

Materiality standard

Generally, **6:165 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:168**

Rule 14a-9, **6:166**

Rule 14c-6, **6:167**

Operation, areas of, **6:163**

Private actions, **6:160 et seq.**

Privity

Generally, **6:172 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:175**

Rule 14a-9, **6:173**

Rule 14c-6, **6:174**

Reliance

Generally, **6:176 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:178**

Rule 14a-9, **6:176**

Rule 14c-6, **6:177**

Rule 10b-5, relation of proxy rules to, **6:159 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5 private actions, **6:162**

Rule 14a-9 private actions, **6:160**

Rule 14c-6 private actions, **6:161**

Scienter standard

Generally, **6:169 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:171**

Rule 14a-9, **6:169**

Rule 14c-6, **6:170**

SEA § 14(e), **6:186**

Securities Act, **6:187**

State law

Generally, **6:191 et seq.**

Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**

Delaware law, **6:196**

Effect of merger or dissolution, **6:194**

Equitable approach, **6:197**

Standing approach, **6:196**

Violations covered, **6:164**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

Antifraud provisions—Cont'd

Privity

Generally, **6:172 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:175**

Rule 14a-9, **6:173**

Rule 14c-6, **6:174**

Proxy rules, **6:24**

Reliance

Generally, **6:176 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:178**

Rule 14a-9, **6:176**

Rule 14c-6, **6:177**

Rule 10b-5

Causation, **6:181**

Materiality standard, **6:168**

Privity, **6:175**

Proxy rules, relation to, **6:159 et seq.**

Reliance, **6:178**

Scienter standard, **6:171**

Rule 14a-9

Causation, **6:179**

Materiality standard, **6:166**

Privity, **6:173**

Reliance, **6:176**

Scienter standard, **6:169**

Rule 14c-6

Causation, **6:180**

Materiality standard, **6:167**

Privity, **6:174**

Reliance, **6:177**

Scienter standard, **6:170**

Scienter standard

Generally, **6:169 et seq.**

Rule 10b-5, **6:171**

Rule 14a-9, **6:169**

Rule 14c-6, **6:170**

SEA § 14(e), **6:186**

Securities Act, **6:187**

State law

Generally, **6:191 et seq.**

Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**

Delaware law, **6:196**

Effect of merger or dissolution, **6:194**

Equitable approach, **6:197**

Standing approach, **6:196**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

Antifraud provisions—Cont'd

Tender offers

Generally, **6:22 et seq.**

Connection, **6:26**

Jurisdictional means, **6:27**

Opposition, applicability to, **6:23**

Proxy rules, **6:24**

SEA § 14(e), **6:24**

Conflict of interest transactions, **5:108**

Definitions, **6:208, 6:209**

Direct-personal dealing, **5:108**

Disclosures

Generally, **6:212 et seq., 6:267**

Advance letters

Proxy rules, **6:240**

Registration under SA, **6:241**

Aggregate materiality, **6:253**

Annual reports, **6:242**

Application of funds, **6:260**

Assets

Generally, **6:261 et seq.**

Existence of, **6:262**

Reasons, **6:273**

Value of assets, below

Balance, **6:229**

Buried facts, **6:232**

Cash flow, **6:260**

Clarity, **6:225**

Comparative tables, **6:219**

Consistency, **6:228**

Conspicuity. Prominence, below

Context, **6:235**

Corrections, **6:302**

Generally, **6:290 et seq.**

See also Supplementary communications, below

Another's statements, correction of, **6:319**

Blue sky laws, **6:292**

Broker-dealer fraud, **6:312**

Common law, **6:291**

False reports to SEC, **6:313**

Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**

INDEX

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

Disclosures—Cont'd  
Corrections, **6:302—Cont'd**  
How long correction is necessary  
Rule 14a-9, **6:304**  
Rule 14c-6, **6:308**  
SA § 11, **6:296**  
How long is correction necessary  
Generally, **6:323**  
Direct-impersonal transactions, **6:325**  
Direct-personal transactions, **6:324**  
Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:326**  
How must correction be made  
Rule 10b-5, **6:328**  
Rule 14a-9, **6:306**  
Rule 14c-6, **6:310**  
SA § 11, **6:298**  
Market manipulation, **6:300**  
Proxy fraud, **6:302**  
Registration fraud, **6:294 et seq.**  
Rule 10b-5 requirements  
Fraud in general, **6:314 et seq.**  
How long is correction necessary, **6:323 et seq.**  
How must correction be made, **6:328**  
What makes correction necessary, **6:319 et seq.**  
What must be corrected, **6:327**  
Who entitled to correction, **6:328**  
Rule 14a-9, **6:303 et seq.**  
Rule 14c-6, **6:307 et seq.**  
SA § 11, **6:294 et seq.**  
SA § 12(2), **6:293**  
SA § 17(a), **6:299**  
Sales fraud  
Express liability, **6:293**  
Implied liability, **6:299**  
SEA § 9(a), **6:300**  
SEA § 10, **6:301**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

Disclosures—Cont'd  
Corrections, **6:302—Cont'd**  
SEA § 14, **6:302**  
State law, **6:292**  
Tender offer fraud, **6:311**  
What makes correction necessary  
Generally, **6:319**  
Direct-impersonal transactions, **6:321**  
Direct-personal transactions, **6:320**  
Indirect-impersonal transactions, **6:322**  
Rule 14a-9, **6:303**  
Rule 14c-6, **6:307**  
SA § 11, **6:295**  
What must be corrected  
Rule 10b-5, **6:327**  
Rule 14a-9, **6:305**  
Rule 14c-6, **6:309**  
SA § 11, **6:297**  
Who entitled to correction  
Rule 10b-5, **6:328**  
Rule 14a-9, **6:306**  
Rule 14c-6, **6:310**  
SA § 11, **6:298**  
Cross references, **6:233**  
Detail, **6:234**  
Distribution, **6:214 et seq.**  
Earnings  
Generally, **6:254**  
Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**  
Interim, **6:259**  
Misrepresentations, **6:255**  
Nondisclosure of, **6:257**  
Predictions, **6:255**  
Form and substance, **6:235**  
Interim earnings, **6:259**  
Interpretation, **6:236**  
Level, **6:227**  
Locus, **6:214 et seq.**  
Materiality  
Generally, **6:248 et seq.**  
Aggregate, **6:253**  
Might, use of term, **6:249**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Disclosures—Cont'd
  - Materiality—Cont'd
    - Practical problems, **6:251**
    - Probably would, use of term, **6:250**
    - Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**
    - Would, use of term, **6:249**
  - Misrepresentations
    - Earnings, **6:255**
    - Value of assets
      - Generally, **6:270**
      - Defenses, **6:271**
      - Precautions, **6:272**
  - Numerical information, **6:237**
  - Opposition communications, **6:247**
  - Organization, **6:226**
  - Overall effect, **6:238**
  - Predictions, earning, **6:255**
  - Presentation, **6:224 et seq.**
  - Prominence
    - Generally, **6:230 et seq.**
    - Buried and scattered facts, **6:232**
    - Similar emphasis, **6:231**
  - Repetition, **6:233**
  - Risk
    - Generally, **6:275 et seq.**
    - CFTC requirements, **6:289**
    - Context, **6:275**
    - Court cases, **6:281**
    - Day trading, **6:284**
    - Extended hour trading, **6:285**
    - Margin trading, **6:286**
    - NASD requirements, **6:283 et seq.**
    - Plain English requirements, **6:278**
    - Safe harbor, **6:282**
    - SA filings, **6:279**
    - SEA filings, **6:280**
    - Short selling, **6:287**
    - Specific requirements, **6:277**
    - Uninsured products, **6:288**
  - Rule 10b-5 requirements, **6:218**
  - SA § 5 requirements, **6:217**
  - Scattered facts, **6:232**
  - SEA § 14(a) requirements, **6:215**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Disclosures—Cont'd
  - SEA § 14(c) requirements, **6:216**
  - Sources of funds, **6:260**
  - Sources of requirements
    - Generally, **6:220 et seq.**
    - Antifraud provisions, **6:222**
    - Specific items, **6:221**
    - Timing, **6:223**
  - Style, **6:224 et seq.**
  - Supplementary communications
    - Generally, **6:239 et seq.**
    - See also Corrections, above
    - Advance letters
      - Proxy rules, **6:240**
      - Registration under SA, **6:241**
    - Annual reports, **6:242**
    - Cover letters, **6:243**
    - Followup solicitations, **6:244**
    - Generally available information, **6:246**
    - Other communications, **6:245**
    - Transmittal letters, **6:243**
  - Timing requirements, **6:223**
  - Value of assets
    - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
    - Firm offers, **6:265**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
    - Misrepresentation
      - Defenses, **6:271**
      - Precautions, **6:272**
    - Misrepresentations, generally, **6:270**
  - Modified view
    - Disposition plans, **6:266**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
    - Other situations, **6:268**
  - Policies, **6:269**
  - Reasons, **6:269**
  - Replacement costs, **6:267**
  - Traditional view, **6:263**
- Disclosures of nonpublic information through, **7:287**
- Federal laws generally, **6:150**
- Joint and several liability, **9:29**
- Materiality, private actions, **8:56**

## INDEX

### PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd

Mergers  
Generally, **6:146 et seq., 6:198 et seq.**  
See also Mergers (this index)

Disclosures  
Generally, **6:212 et seq., 6:267**  
Advance letters  
Proxy rules, **6:240**  
Registration under SA, **6:241**  
Aggregate materiality, **6:253**  
Annual reports, **6:242**  
Application of funds, **6:260**

Assets  
Generally, **6:261 et seq.**  
Existence of, **6:262**  
Reasons, **6:273**

Balance, **6:229**  
Buried facts, **6:232**  
Cash flow, **6:260**  
Clarity, **6:225**  
Comparative tables, **6:219**  
Consistency, **6:228**  
Conspicuity. Prominence, below  
Context, **6:235**  
Cross references, **6:233**  
Detail, **6:234**  
Distribution, **6:214 et seq.**

Earnings  
Generally, **6:254**  
Inherently misleading statements, **6:256**  
Interim, **6:259**  
Misrepresentations, **6:255**  
Nondisclosure of, **6:257**  
Predictions, **6:255**

Form and substance, **6:235**  
Interim earnings, **6:259**  
Interpretation, **6:236**  
Level, **6:227**  
Locus, **6:214 et seq.**

Materiality  
Generally, **6:248 et seq.**  
Aggregate, **6:253**  
Might, use of term, **6:249**  
Practical problems, **6:251**  
Probably would, use of term, **6:250**

### PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd

Mergers—Cont'd  
Disclosures—Cont'd  
Materiality—Cont'd  
Specific items, materiality of, **6:252**  
Would, use of term, **6:249**

Misrepresentations  
Earnings, **6:255**  
Value of assets  
Generally, **6:270**  
Defenses, **6:271**  
Precautions, **6:272**

Numerical information, **6:237**

Opposition communications, **6:247**

Organization, **6:226**  
Overall effect, **6:238**  
Predictions, earning, **6:255**  
Presentation, **6:224 et seq.**

Prominence  
Generally, **6:230 et seq.**  
Buried and scattered facts, **6:232**  
Similar emphasis, **6:231**

Repetition, **6:233**  
Rule 10b-5 requirements, **6:218**  
SA § 5 requirements, **6:217**  
Scattered facts, **6:232**  
SEA § 14(a) requirements, **6:215**  
SEA § 14(c) requirements, **6:216**

Sources of funds, **6:260**  
Sources of requirements  
Generally, **6:220 et seq.**  
Antifraud provisions, **6:222**  
Specific items, **6:221**  
Timing, **6:223**

Style, **6:224 et seq.**

Supplementary communications  
Generally, **6:239 et seq.**  
Advance letters  
Proxy rules, **6:240**  
Registration under SA, **6:241**  
Annual reports, **6:242**  
Cover letters, **6:243**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Mergers—Cont'd
- Disclosures—Cont'd
  - Supplementary communications—Cont'd
    - Followup solicitations, **6:244**
    - Generally available information, **6:246**
    - Other communications, **6:245**
    - Transmittal letters, **6:243**
  - Timing requirements, **6:223**
  - Value of assets
    - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
    - Firm offers, **6:265**
    - Hard data, **6:264**
    - Misrepresentations
      - Generally, **6:270**
      - Defenses, **6:271**
      - Precautions, **6:272**
    - Modified view
      - Disposition plans, **6:266**
      - Hard data, **6:264**
      - Other situations, **6:268**
    - Policies, **6:269**
    - Reasons, **6:269**
    - Replacement costs, **6:267**
    - Traditional view, **6:263**
- Private actions, **6:160 et seq.**
- Scope of regulations
  - Generally, **6:207 et seq.**
  - Annual reports, **6:211**
  - Excluded solicitations, **6:210**
  - Proxy defined, **6:208**
  - Solicitation defined, **6:209**
- Securities covered
  - Generally, **6:199 et seq.**
  - Insurance companies
    - Generally, **6:201**
    - Antifraud provisions, federal, **6:204**
    - Federal and state rules, **6:202**
    - McCarran Act, **6:203**
    - Investment companies, **6:205**
    - Public utility holding companies, **6:206**
  - Nonmerger solicitations, **6:274**
  - Nonpublic information disclosures through, **7:287**

**PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Private actions
  - Materiality, **8:56**
  - Merger challenges, **6:160 et seq.**
  - Scienter
    - Generally, **8:125 et seq., 8:126 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:127**
    - Intent, **8:129**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:130**
    - Pleading, **8:131**
    - Proof, **8:128**
  - Privity, **8:284**
  - Risk disclosures. Disclosures, above Rule 10b-5, relation of proxy rules to, **6:159 et seq.**
  - Scienter
    - Generally, **8:125 et seq., 8:126 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:127**
    - Intent, **8:129**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:130**
    - Pleading, **8:131**
    - Proof, **8:128**
  - Scope of regulations
    - Generally, **6:207 et seq.**
    - Annual reports, **6:211**
    - Excluded solicitations, **6:210**
    - Proxy defined, **6:208**
    - Solicitation defined, **6:209**
- SEA § 14(e)
  - Generally, **6:186**
  - Proxy rules, relation to, **6:24**
- SEC rules, Congressional intent, **6:155**
- Securities covered
  - Generally, **6:199 et seq.**
  - Insurance companies
    - Generally, **6:201**
    - Antifraud provisions, federal, **6:204**
    - Federal and state rules, **6:202**
    - McCarran Act, **6:203**
    - Investment companies, **6:205**
    - Public utility holding companies, **6:206**
- Tender Offer Fraud (this index)

## INDEX

### **PROXY FRAUD—Cont'd**

Types of direct-impersonal dealings,  
**6:1**

### **PUBLIC ACCESS**

SEC investigations, use of wiretap in  
enforcement, **13:149**

### **PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

Whistleblower bounty program, orig-  
inal information from employ-  
ees, **22:10**

### **PUBLIC COMPANIES**

Whistleblowers, employees, **22:17**

### **PUBLIC COMPANY**

#### **ACCOUNTING OVERSIGHT BOARD (PCAOB)**

Indirect-impersonal dealing, GAAP  
violations, **7:61**

### **PUBLIC INFORMATION**

See Insiders and Insider Trading (this  
index)

### **PUBLIC PENSION FUNDS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:3**

### **PUBLIC SALES**

See also Direct-Impersonal Dealing  
(this index)

Disclosure, **6:12**

Interrelations of fraud rules, **3:40**

Types of direct-impersonal dealings,  
**6:1**

### **PUBLIC UTILITY HOLDING COMPANIES**

Proxy rules, applicability to, **6:206**

### **PUFFERY**

Materiality factors, **8:35**

### **“PUMP-AND-DUMP” SCHEMES**

SEC actions against attorneys, **8:443**

### **PUNITIVE DAMAGES**

Generally, **9:12**

Arbitration

Generally, **15:36, 15:37, 15:74**

Broker-dealer liability, **14:111**

Broker-dealer liability

Generally, **14:106 et seq., 15:74**

### **PUNITIVE DAMAGES—Cont'd**

Broker-dealer liability—Cont'd

Arbitration, **14:111**

Federal securities law, **14:106**

State law, **14:107 et seq.**

State law, **14:107 et seq.**

### **PURPOSE**

Generally, **8:203**

Defense of proper purpose, **8:118**

Intent (this index)

Knowledge (this index)

Manipulation, defendant's purpose

Generally, **8:103 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:104**

Defense of proper purpose, **8:118**

Direct evidence, **8:106**

Indirect evidence, **8:107**

Large blocks, **8:108**

Large proportion of trading, **8:109**

Painting the tape, **8:110**

Playoff of markets, **8:114**

Price action, **8:113**

Profit, **8:115**

Proof, **8:105**

Proper purpose as defense, **8:118**

Stimulating demand, **8:110, 8:111**

Suppressing supply, **8:112**

Motive (this index)

Proper purpose as defense, **8:118**

Scienter (this index)

Versions of scienter, relations among,  
**8:204**

### **RANDALL CASE**

Private actions, loss causation in  
Supreme Court decision, **8:564**

### **REASONABLE INVESTIGATION DEFENSE**

SA § 11

Generally, **14:5**

Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**

SEC Rule 176, **14:8**

### **REASONABLE INVESTOR STANDARD**

Misrepresentation claims,  
consideration of, **7:51**

**REASONABLENESS OF CONDUCT**

See Unreasonable Conduct (this index)

**RECKLESSNESS**

Generally, **8:221 et seq., 11:141**  
 Broker-dealer liability, **14:83 et seq.**  
 Burden of proof, **8:227**  
 Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**  
 Court cases, **11:141 et seq., 11:162 et seq., 14:83 et seq.**  
 Insufficiency, **8:226**  
 Necessity, **8:223, 8:224**  
 Pleading  
     Generally, **11:141**  
     Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**  
 Proof, **8:228**  
 Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act (SLUSA), **3:214**  
 Sufficiency, **8:225**  
 Versions of scienter, relations among, **8:222**

**RECORDS AND RECORD KEEPING**

CFTC inspection of records, **13:195**  
 Parking rule violations, **7:149**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act actions, **3:171**

**REDEMPTIONS**

Issuer tender offers, **6:145**  
 Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2, 20:3, 20:6**

**RED FLAGS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5, 20:17**

**REDUCTION IN PRICE**

Private actions, correction and price drop, Proposition 2, **8:580**

**REFERENCES**

Jurisdiction, foreign cubed cases, **11:28**

**REFORM ACT**

See Private Securities Litigation Reform Act (this index)

**REGISTRATION AS INVESTMENT ADVISER**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

**REGISTRATION OF SECURITIES**

Crowdfunding, **14:216**  
 Fraud rules applicable to registered offerings generally, **3:39, 3:45**  
 Limitation of actions, **11:47 et seq.**  
 Mutual funds, **3:191**  
 Nationally traded securities, **3:190**  
 NSMIA preemption  
     Generally, **3:187 et seq.**  
     Buyer characteristics, **3:193**  
     Exemptions, **3:195 et seq.**  
     Government enforcement, **3:199**  
     Mutual funds, **3:191**  
     Nationally traded securities, **3:190**  
     Private rights, effects on, **3:198**  
     Qualified purchasers, **3:192**  
     Regulation preemption, **3:188**  
     Remaining state jurisdiction, **3:197**  
     Scope of act, **3:189 et seq.**  
     Securities characteristics, **3:194**  
     Securities covered, **3:189 et seq.**  
     Securities exemptions, **3:196**  
     Transaction exemptions, **3:195**  
 Regulation FD disclosures, **7:547**  
 Regulation preemption, NSMIA, **3:188**

**REGULATION A**

Crowdfunding, application of law, **14:215**

**REGULATION D**

Crowdfunding, application of law, **14:215**

**REGULATION G**

Indirect-impersonal dealing, GAAP violations, **7:73**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act liabilities, **3:170**

**REGULATION S-P**

Cybersecurity, **26:4, 26:5**

**RELEASE OF INFORMATION**

See also Disclosure (this index)  
 Dividend actions, materiality, **7:247**

## INDEX

### RELEASE OF INFORMATION

#### —Cont'd

- Inside information, timely disclosure
  - Generally, **7:238 et seq.**
- Acquisition information
  - Generally, **7:248 et seq.**
- Agreements
  - Disclosure not required, **7:261**
  - Disclosure required, **7:260**
- Company, trading by, **7:256**
- Definitions, **7:250**
- Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**
- Leaks, **7:255**
- Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**
- Preliminary negotiations
  - Misleading statements, **7:253**
  - No statement made, **7:252**
  - Other situations, **7:254**
- Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**
- Rumors, **7:255**
- Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**
- Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
- When disclosure of agreement required, **7:260**
- When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq.**
- Business judgment considerations, **7:241**
- Corporate purpose considerations, **7:242**
- Delays, justifications for, **7:240**
- Dividend actions
  - Evolving information, **7:245**
  - Materiality, **7:247**
  - When disclosure required, **7:246**
- Justification for delay, **7:240**
- Law violations and timeliness considerations, **7:244**
- Ripeness and timing, **7:243**
- Tender offers
  - Generally, **7:267**
  - Materiality, **7:270**

### RELEASE OF INFORMATION

#### —Cont'd

- Inside information, timely disclosure
  - Cont'd
  - Tender offers—Cont'd
    - Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**
    - When disclosure required, **7:269**
- Ripeness and timely disclosure, **7:243**

### RELEVANCY

- SEC investigations, use of wiretap, **13:152**

### RELIANCE

- Generally, **6:176 et seq., 8:484 et seq.**
- Access to information, **8:499**
- Administrative enforcement actions, **10:1**
- Anti-reliance devices, **8:511 et seq.**
- Blue sky law, **8:488**
- Broker-dealer liability
  - Generally, **14:86 et seq.**
  - Justifiable reliance, **14:89**
- Buyer-seller requirement, **8:582**
- Causation as substitute for reliance, **8:524**
- Class actions
  - Desirability of class actions, **8:526**
  - Utility of class actions, **8:526**
- Common law, **8:487**
- Concealment of fraud, **8:501**
- Damages
  - Causation, **8:553**
  - Fraud on the market theory (FOMT), **8:552**
- Disclaimers, **8:514**
- Due diligence, **8:506**
- Expertise of plaintiff, **8:497**
- Fiduciary relationships, **8:500**
- Fraud on the market theory (FOMT)
  - Generally, **8:520 et seq.**
  - Background, **8:521**
  - Causation as substitute for reliance, **8:524**
  - Common law, **8:531**
  - Damages measure, **8:552**

**RELIANCE—Cont'd**

- Fraud on the market theory (FOMT)
  - Cont'd
  - Desirability of class actions, **8:526**
  - Disclosure policy and, **8:533**
  - Fairness, **8:527**
  - Indirect or presumed reliance, **8:539 et seq.**
  - Indirect reliance, **8:521**
  - Market based price determinations, **8:525**
  - Materiality as substitute for reliance, **8:524**
  - Nature of market, **8:536 et seq.**
  - Novelty of theory, **8:529**
  - Parties, **8:545**
  - Policies, **8:523, 8:528 et seq.**
  - Presumptions, **8:510**
    - Treatment as, **8:521**
  - Price determinations, market based, **8:525**
  - Procedural aspects of theory, **8:545 et seq.**
  - Reasons, **8:523, 8:528 et seq.**
  - Rebuttal of theory, **8:542 et seq.**
  - Scope of theory, **8:522**
  - Statutory bases, **8:532**
  - Utility of class actions, **8:526**
- Fraud to enter the market theory (FEMT)
  - Indirect or presumed reliance, **8:541**
  - Nature of market, **8:538**
  - Rebuttal of theory, **8:544**
- Generality of misrepresentation, **8:504**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, curtailing scheme to defraud, **7:76 to 7:78, 7:80**
- Indirect reliance, **8:521**
- Integration clauses, **8:513**
- Justifiable
  - Generally, **14:89**
  - Rule 10b-5, **8:496**
- Long-standing relationships, **8:498**
- Materiality
  - Generally, **8:507**
  - Distinctions, **8:519**

**RELIANCE—Cont'd**

- Materiality—Cont'd
  - Presumptive reliance and materiality of omissions, **8:509**
  - Substitutions of theories, **8:524**
- Merger challenges, **6:176 et seq.**
- No-reliance clauses, **8:512**
- Opportunity to detect fraud, **8:502**
- Overview, **8:486**
- Plaintiff initiation, **8:503**
- Presumptions
  - Generally, **8:508 et seq.**
  - Fraud on the market, **8:510**
  - Material omissions, **8:509**
  - Ute presumption, **8:484**
- Proof, subjective reliance, **8:485**
- Registration fraud, **8:491**
- SA § 11, **8:491**
- SA § 12(a)(2), **8:490**
- SA § 17(a), **8:492**
- SA generally, **8:489 et seq.**
- Sales fraud, **8:489 et seq.**
- Sophistication of plaintiff, **8:497**
- Specificity of misrepresentation, **8:504**
- State law, **8:488**
- Subjective reliance, **8:485**
- Transaction planning, **8:511 et seq.**
- Ute presumption, **8:484**

**RELIEF IN PRIVATE ACTIONS**

See Remedies (this index)

**REMEDIES**

- Generally, **9:1 et seq.**
- Ancillary relief
  - Generally, **9:17**
  - Insider trading, **7:419, 7:437, 7:490**
- Attorneys' fees, **9:18**
- Contribution (this index)
- Damages (this index)
- Disgorgement (this index)
- Fraud on the market
  - Generally, **8:520 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
- Implied liability, **3:178**
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Injunctions (this index)

## INDEX

### REMEDIES—Cont'd

- Insider trading charges
  - Ancillary relief, **7:419, 7:437**
  - Disgorgement, **7:418, 7:425 et seq., 7:465**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Interest, prejudgment, **9:16**
- Interpretation, flexibility to achieve remedial purpose
  - Contraction era, **3:88**
  - Expansion era, **3:66**
- Joint and Several Liability (this index)
- Multiple recoveries, **9:15**
- Penalty actions
  - Generally, **7:438 et seq.**
  - See also Civil Penalties (this index)
- Prejudgment interest, **9:16**
- Proportionate Liability (this index)
- Reliance
  - Generally, **8:484 et seq.**
  - See also Reliance (this index)
- Rescission (this index)
- Restitution (this index)
- Rule 10b-5 implied liability, **3:178**
- Sanctions. See Administrative Enforcement (this index)

### REMOTENESS

- Indirect-impersonal dealing, curtailing scheme to defraud, **7:76**

### REPORTING

- See also Securities and Exchange Commission (this index)
- Foreign accounts, use of, **7:177**
- Insider and Insider Trading (this index)
- Whistleblowers, preservation of employee's right to report, **22:33**

### REPUTATION

- Scienter, aspects of, **8:218**

### RESCISSION

- Broker-dealer liability
  - Express actions, **14:46, 14:50**
  - Implied actions, **14:95 et seq.**

### RESCISSION—Cont'd

- Chasins measure, **14:97**
- Damages, rescissional, **14:51**
- Lost profits, **14:101**
- Nye measure, **14:101**
- Privity, **8:290**
- Rolf measure, **14:100**

### RESIDENTIAL

#### MORTGAGE-BACKED SECURITIES

- Coordinated investigations, investor litigation against creators, **13:335**

#### RESIDENTIAL MORTGAGES FAILURES

- Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:332**

### RESIDUE

- Private actions, **8:583**

### RESPONDEAT SUPERIOR

- See also Control Person Liability (this index)
- Insider trading, **7:450**

### RESTITUTION

- Broker-dealer liability, **14:104**
- Criminal prosecutions, **7:465**
- Insiders, **7:465**
- Joint and several liability, **9:44**

### RETALIATORY INTENT

- UBS Securities decision, Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **22:24**

### RETIREMENT ACCOUNTS

- Suitability and fiduciary duty, **14:206**

### RETIREMENT FUNDS

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:3**

### RETROACTIVE PRICING OF STOCK OPTION GRANTS

- Generally, **18:1 et seq.**
- See also Backdating of Stock Options (this index)

### REVIEW

- SEC investigations, use of wiretap in enforcement, **13:147**

**REWARD MODEL**

Crowdfunding, **14:210**

**RICO VIOLATIONS**

Arbitration of RICO claims, **15:66**

Insider trading violations, **7:414, 7:464**

Limitation of actions, **11:103**

**RIGHT TO COUNSEL**

See Attorneys (this index)

**RISK DISCLOSURES**

Generally, **6:275 et seq.**

See also Disclosure (this index)

**RISK MANAGEMENT**

Final rule, cybersecurity, **26:9**

**RISK MITIGATION**

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), mergers and acquisitions, **19:15**

**SA**

See Securities Act (this index)

**SAFECAST GEIGER COUNTER**

Crowdfunding, **14:211**

**SALE-LEASEBACKS FOR FIXED RETURNS**

SEC v. Edwards case, **5:31**

**SALES OF ASSETS**

See Mergers (this index)

**SALES PRACTICES**

Feeder funds in Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2, 20:16**

Mutual Fund Violations (this index)

**SAME SIDE TRADERS**

Generally, **7:519**

Damages, **7:523**

Definition, **7:495**

**SANCTIONS**

See also Administrative Enforcement (this index)

Arbitration (this index)

Collateral bars against individuals

Generally, **13:87**

Corporate office orders, **13:88**

**SANCTIONS—Cont'd**

Collateral bars against individuals

—Cont'd

Injunctions including, **13:117**

Criminal Enforcement (this index)

SEC, **13:81**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT**

Generally, **3:156 et seq.**

Analysts' certifications, IPA based on, **3:168**

Attorneys

Generally, **8:424 et seq.**

Follow-up reporting obligations, **8:427**

Implied private actions against, **3:165**

Reporting obligations, **8:426**

SEC, reporting to, **8:432 et seq.**

SEC actions against

Generally, **8:436 et seq.**

Auditors, furnishing false information to, **8:440**

Financial or accounting fraud, **8:440**

Form 8-K, **8:439**

Form 10, **8:439**

Form 10-K, **8:439**

Form 10-Q, **8:439**

Form 13D, **8:439**

Form ADV, **8:439**

Form BD, **8:439**

Forms 12b-25, **8:445**

Manipulating stock option exercise dates, **8:444**

Offering circulars, **8:439**

Participating in preparation and filing of false and misleading forms, **8:439**

“PIPE” schemes, **8:443**

Prospectuses, **8:439**

Proxy statements, **8:439**

“Pump-and-dump” schemes, **8:443**

Reflections, **8:448**

Trading on inside information, **8:447**

Unethical and obstructive professional conduct, **8:446**

INDEX

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

Attorneys—Cont'd  
SEC actions against—Cont'd  
Unregistered distributions of securities, activities in connection with, **8:441**  
Audit committee financial experts, **3:166**  
Audit committee standards  
Generally, **8:450 et seq.**  
Administrative implementation, **8:451**  
Advisers, **8:455**  
Auditor, oversight of, **8:453**  
Complaint procedures, **8:454**  
Enforcement, **8:458**  
Exemptions, **8:457**  
Financial experts, **8:459**  
Funding, **8:456**  
Independence requirements, **8:452**  
Auditor, oversight of, **8:453**  
Audit records, actions based on, **3:171**  
Backdating of stock options, violations of federal securities laws, **18:2, 18:3**  
Blackout periods  
Generally, **8:475**  
Trading prohibitions, **8:472**  
Certification, **8:462**  
Director and officer regulation  
Generally, **8:461 et seq.**  
Acquisition method, **8:474**  
Backdating of stock options, **18:2, 18:3**  
Bar from office, **8:482**  
Blackout periods, **8:475**  
Blackout trading prohibitions, **8:472**  
Certification, **8:462**  
Disclosure controls, **8:466**  
Enforcement, **8:476**  
Ethics codes, **8:483**  
Evaluations, **8:468**  
Exemptions, **8:479**  
Fair presentation, **8:465**  
Forfeiture on accounting restatement, **8:480**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

Director and officer regulation  
—Cont'd  
Inside trading reports, **8:471**  
Internal controls, **8:466**  
Liability, **8:476**  
Loan prohibitions, **8:481**  
Non-financial information, **8:467**  
Notice, **8:478**  
Option grant reporting, **18:1**  
Profit measure, **8:477**  
Regulation BTR, **8:473**  
Response to evidence of violations, **8:470**  
SEC implementation, **8:464, 8:473**  
Section 302 legislation, **8:463**  
Section 906, **8:469**  
Disclosure controls, **8:466**  
Enforcement, **8:476**  
Ethics codes, **8:483**  
Exemptions, **8:479**  
Financial experts, **3:166, 8:459**  
Financial report certifications, **3:169**  
History of enactment, **3:159**  
Implied private actions (IPA)  
Generally, **3:156 et seq.**  
Analysts' certifications, actions based on, **3:168**  
Attorneys, implied private actions against, **3:165**  
Audit committee financial experts, **3:166**  
Audit records, actions based on, **3:171**  
Express actions negating, **3:162**  
Financial report certifications, **3:169**  
History of enactment, **3:159**  
Legislative intent, **3:158**  
Limitation of actions, **3:161**  
Off-balance sheet transactions, **3:167**  
Officers' certifications of financial reports, **3:169**  
Overview, **3:157**  
Pro forma financial information, liabilities based on, **3:170**

**SARBANES-OXLEY ACT—Cont'd**

- Implied private actions (IPA)
  - Cont'd
  - Provisions adversely impacting, **3:163**
  - Regulation G liabilities, **3:170**
  - Rejection of, **3:161**
  - SEC rules and releases, **3:164 et seq.**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, restrictions on pro forma or non-GAAP financial information, **7:72**
- Inside general counsel, backdating of stock options, **8:471**
- Inside trading reports, **8:471**
- Internal controls, **8:466**
- Legislative intent, **3:158**
- Liability, **8:476**
- Limitation of actions
  - Generally, **3:161, 11:87 et seq.**
  - Actual notice, **11:93**
  - Retroactivity, **11:94**
  - Securities Act express actions, **11:90**
  - Securities Exchange Act express actions, **11:91**
  - Tolling, **11:93**
- Loan prohibitions, **8:481**
- Notice, **8:478**
- Off-balance sheet transactions, **3:167**
- Officers' certifications of financial reports, **3:169**
- Pro forma financial information, liabilities based on, **3:170**
- Regulation BTR, **8:473**
- Regulation G liabilities, **3:170**
- Rule 10b-5 IPA compared, **3:172**
- Whistleblowers (this index)

**SARS-COV-2**

- Covid-19 Pandemic (this index)

**SCALPING**

- Generally, **12:3**

**SCIENTER**

- Generally, **6:169 et seq., 8:58 et seq.**
- Actual knowledge
  - Generally, **8:165 et seq.**

**SCIENTER—Cont'd**

- Actual knowledge—Cont'd
  - Burden of proof, **8:178**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**
  - Direct-impersonal transactions, **8:171**
  - Direct-personal transactions, **8:170**
  - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **8:172**
  - Injunctions, **8:174**
  - Insufficiency of, **8:177**
  - Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**
  - Proof, **8:179**
  - SEC decisions, **8:175**
  - Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**
- Bad faith
  - Generally, **8:210 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:219**
  - Effect of good or bad faith generally, **8:216 et seq.**
  - Good reputation, effect of, **8:218**
  - Insufficiency, **8:215**
  - Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**
  - Proof, **8:220**
  - Sufficiency, **8:214**
- Belief of defendant, **8:240**
- Blue sky laws
  - Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:61**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:62**
- Broker-dealer fraud
  - Generally, **8:139 et seq., 14:83 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:141**
  - Churning, **14:129**
  - Defendant's intent, **8:143**
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:140 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:141**
    - Proof, **8:142**
- Implied liability
  - Generally, **8:139 et seq.**
  - Defendant's intent, **8:143**
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:140 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:141**
    - Proof, **8:142**

## INDEX

### SCIENTER—Cont'd

- Broker-dealer fraud—Cont'd
  - Implied liability—Cont'd
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:144**
    - Pleading, **8:145**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:144**
  - Pleading, **8:145**
  - Proof, **8:142**
  - SEA § 15(c)(1), **8:139 et seq.**
- Burden of proof, **8:74, 8:77**
- CFTC
  - Enforcement actions, **13:237**
  - Injunctions, **13:247**
- Churning, **14:129**
- Common law
  - Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:59**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:60**
- Constructive knowledge
  - Generally, **8:180 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:189**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**
  - Injunctions, **8:185**
  - Insufficiency, **8:188**
  - Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**
  - Proof, **8:190**
  - SEC decisions, **8:186**
  - Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**
- Court cases, **14:83 et seq.**
- Criminal enforcement
  - Actual knowledge, **8:176**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:187**
  - Intent, **8:197**
  - SEC references, **13:127**
- Defendant's knowledge and intent
  - Blue sky laws, **8:61**
  - Common law, **8:59**
  - SA § 11, **8:79**
- Defendant standards, **8:164**
- Definitions, **8:155 et seq.**
- Diligence, lack of
  - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:238**
  - Criminal cases, **8:236**
  - Injunctions, **8:234**
  - Insufficiency, **8:237**
  - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
  - Proof, **8:239**

### SCIENTER—Cont'd

- Diligence, lack of—Cont'd
  - SEC decisions, **8:235**
  - Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
- Fiduciary theory, insider trading charges
  - Tippers, **7:381**
  - Trading insiders, **7:377**
  - Trading tippees, **7:385**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:69, 7:99**
- Injunctions
  - Actual knowledge, **8:174**
  - CFTC, **13:247**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:185**
  - Intent, **8:195**
  - SEC, **13:102**
- Insiders, tippee violations, **7:672**
- Insider trading charges
  - Generally, **7:372 et seq.**
- Fiduciary theory
  - Tippers, **7:381**
  - Trading insiders, **7:377**
  - Trading tippees, **7:385**
- Misappropriation theory
  - Tippers, **7:382**
  - Trading insiders, **7:378**
  - Trading tippees, **7:386**
- Rule 10b-5, **7:374 et seq.**
- Rule 14e-3, **7:412**
- Tippers
  - Generally, **7:379 et seq.**
  - Fiduciary theory, **7:381**
  - Misappropriation theory, **7:382**
  - Trading insiders, **7:375 et seq.**
  - Trading tippees, **7:383 et seq.**
- Intent
  - Generally, **8:191 et seq.**
  - See also Intent (this index)
  - Absence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
  - Burden of proof, **8:201**
  - Criminal cases, **8:197**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**
  - Injunctions, **8:195**
  - Insufficiency, **8:199**
  - Necessity, **8:193 et seq.**
  - Presence of intent, effect of, **8:200**

**SCIENTER—Cont'd**

## Intent—Cont'd

Private actions, necessity of proving intent in, **8:194**

Proof, **8:202**

SEC decisions, **8:196**

Sufficiency, **8:198**

## Knowledge

See also Knowledge (this index)

## Manipulation

Generally, **8:102 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:104**

Defendant's intent, **8:119**

Defendant's knowledge, **8:120**

Defendant's purpose

Generally, **8:103 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:104**

Defense of proper purpose, **8:118**

Direct evidence, **8:106**

Indirect evidence, **8:107**

Large blocks, **8:108**

Large proportion of trading, **8:109**

Painting the tape, **8:110**

Playoff of markets, **8:114**

Price action, **8:113**

Profit, **8:115**

Proof, **8:105**

Proper purpose as defense, **8:118**

Stimulating demand, **8:110, 8:111**

Suppressing supply, **8:112**

Defendant's willfulness, **8:121**

Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:122**

Proof, **8:105**

Merger challenges, **6:169 et seq.**

Misappropriation theory insider trading charges

Tippers, **7:382**

Trading insiders, **7:378**

Trading tippees, **7:386**

Misrepresentation claims, consideration of, **7:53**

## Motive

Generally, **8:203 et seq.**

Absence, effect of, **8:207**

**SCIENTER—Cont'd**

## Motive—Cont'd

Burden of proof, **8:208**

Necessity, **8:205, 8:206**

Pleading, **11:139**

Presence, effect of, **8:207**

Proof, **8:209**

## Negligence

Generally, **8:229 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:238**

Criminal cases, **8:236**

Injunctions, **8:234**

Insufficiency, **8:237**

Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**

Proof, **8:239**

SEC decisions, **8:235**

Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**

Opportunity, **11:139**

Plaintiff's knowledge

Blue sky laws, **8:62**

Common law, **8:60**

SA § 11, **8:80**

Plaintiff standards, **8:164**

## Pleading

Motive, **11:139**

Opportunity, **11:139**

Particularity

Generally, **11:133 et seq.**

Bases for inferring, **11:135**

Circumstantial evidence of recklessness, **11:162**

Conscious behavior, **11:162**

Motive, **11:139**

Opportunity, **11:139**

Recklessness

Generally, **11:141**

Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**

SEA § 21D(b), **11:134**

Recklessness

Generally, **11:141**

Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**

Proof, **8:75, 8:78**

## Proxy fraud

Generally, **8:125 et seq., 8:126 et seq.**

Burden of proof, **8:127**

Intent, **8:129**

## INDEX

### SCIENTER—Cont'd

- Proxy fraud—Cont'd
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:130**
  - Pleading, **8:131**
  - Proof, **8:128**
- PSLRA and section 21D(b),
  - Recklessness, **11:44.10**
- Recklessness
  - Generally, **8:221 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:227**
  - Insufficiency, **8:226**
  - Necessity, **8:223, 8:224**
  - Pleading
    - Generally, **11:141**
    - Circumstantial evidence, **11:162**
  - Proof, **8:228**
  - PSLRA and section 21D(b),
    - 11:44.10**
  - Sufficiency, **8:225**
- Registration statement fraud, **8:72 et seq.**
- Reputation, **8:218**
- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **6:171, 8:154 et seq.**
  - Actual knowledge
    - Generally, **8:165 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:178**
    - Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**
    - Direct-impersonal transactions,
      - 8:171**
    - Direct-personal transactions,
      - 8:170**
    - Indirect-impersonal transactions,
      - 8:172**
    - Injunctions, **8:174**
    - Insufficiency of, **8:177**
    - Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**
    - Proof, **8:179**
    - SEC decisions, **8:175**
    - Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**
  - Bad faith
    - Generally, **8:210 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:219**
    - Effect of good or bad faith generally, **8:216 et seq.**
    - Good reputation, effect of,
      - 8:218**
    - Insufficiency, **8:215**

### SCIENTER—Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Bad faith—Cont'd
    - Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**
    - Proof, **8:220**
    - Sufficiency, **8:214**
  - Belief of defendant, **8:240**
  - Breadth of rule, **8:160**
  - Congressional intent, **8:158**
  - Constructive knowledge
    - Generally, **8:180 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:189**
    - Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**
    - Injunctions, **8:185**
    - Insufficiency, **8:188**
    - Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**
    - Proof, **8:190**
    - SEC decisions, **8:186**
    - Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**
  - Criminal prosecutions
    - Actual knowledge, **8:176**
    - Constructive knowledge, **8:187**
    - Intent, **8:197**
  - Defendant standards, **8:164**
  - Diligence, lack of
    - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:238**
    - Criminal cases, **8:236**
    - Injunctions, **8:234**
    - Insufficiency, **8:237**
    - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
    - Proof, **8:239**
    - SEC decisions, **8:235**
    - Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
  - Flexibility, need for, **8:162**
  - Formulations, **8:155**
  - Intent
    - Generally, **8:191 et seq.**
    - Absence of intent, effect of,
      - 8:200**
    - Burden of proof, **8:201**
    - Criminal cases, **8:197**
    - Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**
    - Injunctions, **8:195**
    - Insufficiency, **8:199**
    - Necessity, **8:193 et seq.**
    - Presence of intent, effect of,
      - 8:200**

**SCIENTER—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Intent—Cont'd
    - Private actions, necessity of proving intent in, **8:194**
    - Proof, **8:202**
    - SEC decisions, **8:196**
    - Sufficiency, **8:198**
  - Motive
    - Generally, **8:203 et seq.**
    - Absence, effect of, **8:207**
    - Burden of proof, **8:208**
    - Necessity, **8:205, 8:206**
    - Presence, effect of, **8:207**
    - Proof, **8:209**
  - Negligence
    - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:238**
    - Criminal cases, **8:236**
    - Injunctions, **8:234**
    - Insufficiency, **8:237**
    - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
    - Proof, **8:239**
    - SEC decisions, **8:235**
    - Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
  - Other elements, relation of scienter to, **8:163**
  - Plaintiff standards, **8:164**
  - Policy, **8:161**
  - Reasons, **8:161**
  - Recklessness
    - Generally, **8:221 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:227**
    - Insufficiency, **8:226**
    - Necessity, **8:223, 8:224**
    - Proof, **8:228**
    - Sufficiency, **8:225**
  - Reputation, **8:218**
  - Scope of rule, **8:160**
  - Semantic confusion, **8:156, 8:157**
  - Touting, SA § 17(b), **8:95**
  - Unreasonable conduct
    - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:238**
    - Criminal cases, **8:236**
    - Injunctions, **8:234**
    - Insufficiency, **8:237**
    - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**

**SCIENTER—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Unreasonable conduct—Cont'd
    - Proof, **8:239**
    - SEC decisions, **8:235**
    - Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
    - Willfulness, **8:241**
  - Rule 14a-9, **6:169**
  - Rule 14c-6, **6:170**
  - SEC
    - False reports to
      - Generally, **8:146**
      - Defendant's intent, **8:150**
      - Defendant's knowledge
        - Generally, **8:147 et seq.**
        - Burden of proof, **8:148**
        - Proof, **8:149**
      - Good faith, **8:150**
      - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:151**
      - Pleading, **8:152**
      - Privity, **8:287**
      - Quantitative factors, **8:153**
    - Injunctions, **13:102**
  - Securities Act
    - Burden of proof, **8:66**
    - Registration statement fraud, **8:72 et seq.**
    - Sales fraud, **8:63 et seq., 8:82 et seq.**
  - Section 11
    - Generally, **8:72 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:74 et seq.**
    - Defendant's knowledge and intent, **8:79**
    - Expert parts, **8:76 et seq.**
    - Nonexpert parts, **8:73 et seq.**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:80**
    - Pleading, **8:81**
    - Proof, **8:75, 8:78**
  - Section 12(2)
    - Generally, **8:63 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:66**
    - Defendant's intent, **8:68**
    - Defendant's knowledge
      - Generally, **8:64 et seq.**
      - Burden of proof, **8:66**
      - Criminal context, **8:65**
      - Proof, **8:67**

## INDEX

### SCIENTER—Cont'd

- Securities Act—Cont'd
  - Section 12(2)—Cont'd
    - Limitation of actions, plaintiff's knowledge of fraud, **8:70**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:69, 8:70**
    - Pleading, **8:71**
    - Proof, **8:67**
  - Section 17(a)
    - Generally, **8:82**
    - Bond counsel issuing improper legal opinion, **8:442**
    - Burden of proof, **8:84**
    - Defendant's intent, **8:86**
    - Defendant's knowledge, **8:83 et seq.**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:87**
    - Pleading, **8:88**
    - Proof, **8:85**
  - Section 17(b), touting
    - Generally, **8:89 to 8:71.22**
    - Class action complaints, undisclosed touting, **8:90**
    - Criminal context, **8:99**
    - Dismissal motions, legal standard, **8:91**
    - Janus case, **8:94**
    - Loss causation, **8:93**
    - Requirements, **8:92, 8:96**
    - Rule 10b-5, **8:95**
    - Scheme liability, reliance on, **8:97**
    - SEC enforcement, **8:98**
- Securities Exchange Act
  - Generally, **8:101 et seq.**
  - Rule 10b-5 fraud, **8:154 et seq.**
  - Section 9(a), **8:102 et seq.**
  - Section 10, **8:124**
  - Section 14, **8:125, 8:132 et seq.**
  - Section 18, **8:146 et seq.**
- Securities Litigation Uniform Standards Act (SLUSA), **3:214**
- Semantic confusion, **8:156, 8:157**
- Strong inference, **11:136.10**
- Tellabs, **11:137, 11:138**
- Tender offer fraud
  - Defendant's intent, **8:136**

### SCIENTER—Cont'd

- Tender offer fraud—Cont'd
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:134**
    - Proof, **8:135**
  - Intent, **8:136**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:137**
  - Pleading, **8:138**
- Tippers, insider trading charges, **7:379 et seq.**
- Unreasonable conduct
  - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
  - Burden of proof, **8:238**
  - Criminal cases, **8:236**
  - Injunctions, **8:234**
  - Insufficiency, **8:237**
  - Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
  - Proof, **8:239**
  - SEC decisions, **8:235**
  - Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
- Versions of scienter, relations among
  - Actual knowledge, **8:166**
  - Bad faith, **8:211**
  - Constructive knowledge, **8:181**
  - Diligence, lack of, **8:230**
  - Intent, **8:192**
  - Motive, **8:204**
  - Negligence, **8:230**
  - Purpose, **8:204**
  - Recklessness, **8:222**
  - Unreasonable conduct, **8:230**
  - Willfulness, **8:241**

### SEA

- See Securities Exchange Act (this index)

### SEARCH AND SEIZURE

- SEC investigations, **13:34**

### SEC

- See Securities and Exchange Commission (this index)

### SECONDARY LIABILITY

- Parties (this index)
- Proportionate Liability (this index)
- Vicarious Liability (this index)

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

Generally, **1:14**  
 Administrative intent, **3:19**  
 Antifraud provisions and Regulation  
     FD disclosure, **7:546**  
 Authority of SEC  
     Generally, **3:5**  
     Regulation FD, **7:550**  
 Caption changes, 10b-5, **3:22**  
 Comparative language, **3:1**  
 Connection requirement  
     10b-5, **6:185**  
     14c-6, **6:184**  
 Crowdfunding, **14:215**  
 Depression rules, **3:24**  
 Integration proposals, **3:52**  
 Interrelations of fraud rules  
     Generally, **3:37 et seq.**  
     Birnbaum rule, **3:50**  
     Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**  
     Causation, **3:48**  
     Defenses to private actions, **3:51**  
     Displacing provisions, **3:53**  
     Elements of private cause of  
         action, **3:50**  
     Exempt offerings, **3:46**  
     Implied and express private  
         actions, **3:50**  
     Implied Liability (this index)  
     Integration proposals, **3:52**  
     Joint use of multiple provisions,  
         **3:53**  
     Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et**  
         **seq.**  
     Parties subject to rule, **3:49**  
     Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**  
     Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**  
     Public offerings, **3:40**  
     Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**  
     Relationship of conduct to transac-  
         tion, **3:48**  
     Transactions covered, **3:38**  
     Types of violations proscribed,  
         **3:47**  
     Unregistered offerings, **3:46**  
 Mergers, 14a-9 connection require-  
     ment, **6:183**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

Numbering  
     10b-5 changes, **3:21**  
     Generally, **1:2**  
 Organization, **1:2**  
 Parties subject to rules  
     10b-5, **3:49**  
     15c1-2, **3:49**  
 Private transactions, application of  
     10b-5 to  
         Generally, **3:26**  
         Broker-dealer transactions, **3:27**  
 Proposed ESG regulations, **29:4**  
 Prosperity rules, **3:24**  
 Proxy rules  
     10b-5, relation to, **6:159 et seq.**  
     14a-9  
         Privity, **6:173**  
         Scienter standard, **6:169**  
     14c-6, causation, **6:180**  
     Congressional intent, **6:155**  
     SEA § 14(e), relation to, **6:24**  
 Registered offerings, fraud rules  
     applicable to, **3:39, 3:45**  
 Registration provisions and Regula-  
     tion FD disclosure, **7:547**  
 Regulation BTR, **8:473**  
 Regulation FD disclosure  
     Generally, **7:526 et seq.**  
     Analysts' roles, **7:528**  
     Antifraud provisions and, **7:546**  
     Avoiding selective disclosure,  
         **7:553**  
     Companies covered, **7:545**  
     Compliance, **7:551 et seq.**  
     Curing violations, **7:554**  
     Eliminating nonpublic information,  
         **7:552**  
     Enforcement, **7:549**  
     Exemption provisions and, **7:548**  
     Filing with SEC, compliance by,  
         **7:555**  
     Information, triggering, **7:534**  
     Intentional and nonintentional  
         partial disclosures, **7:538 et**  
         **seq.**

## INDEX

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

- Regulation FD disclosure—Cont'd
  - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
  - Method of disclosure, **7:544**
  - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
  - Policy basis, **7:527**
  - Prompt disclosure requirement, **7:543**
  - Registration provisions and, **7:547**
  - Regulatory gap, **7:530**
  - Scope of regulation, **7:545**
  - Selective disclosure
    - Generally, **7:529**
    - Avoiding, **7:553**
    - Curing violations, **7:554**
    - Materiality, **7:535**
    - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
    - Triggering full disclosure obligation, **7:532**
    - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Simultaneous disclosure requirements, **7:542**
  - Timing requirements, **7:541 et seq.**
  - Triggering events
    - Generally, **7:531 et seq.**
    - Information, triggering, **7:534**
    - Intentional and nonintentional partial disclosures, **7:538 et seq.**
    - Materiality of triggering information, **7:535**
    - Non-intentional disclosures, **7:540**
    - Nonpublic nature of information disclosed, **7:536**
    - Nontriggering disclosures, **7:533**
    - Persons triggering duty, **7:537**
    - Selective disclosures, **7:532**
    - Unintentional disclosures, **7:540**
  - Validity, **7:550**
  - Violations, curing, **7:554**
- Rifle rules and shotgun rules, **3:36**
- Rule 3a51-1, **14:144**
- Rule 3b-6, **7:21**
- Rule 10b-1 through 17, **3:34**

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5
  - Generally, **1:18 et seq.**
  - Absolute liability, **8:243**
  - Absorption principle, **3:173**
  - Access to investment rewards, equalization of, **4:5**
  - Actions in concert, **8:294**
  - Administrative intent, **3:19**
  - Adoption, validity of, **3:3**
  - Antiwaivers, **12:11**
  - Arbitration of claimed violations, **12:11**
  - Attitudes and unintentional violations, **12:14**
  - Avoiding liability, **12:10**
  - Backdating stock options, **18:3, 18:10**
  - Bargaining positions, equalization of, **4:4**
  - Breadth of fraud proscriptions, **3:52**
  - Broker-dealer transactions, application to, **3:27**
  - Caption changes, **3:22**
  - Causation
    - Generally, **3:48**
    - Proxies and proxy solicitations, **6:181**
  - Changes
    - Generally, **3:20 et seq.**
    - Caption changes, **3:22**
    - Legislation, **3:23**
    - Numbering changes, **3:21**
    - Proposals for, **12:9**
  - Clause 3, primacy of, **3:182**
  - Comparative language, **3:1**
  - Congressional intent
    - Generally, **3:14 et seq.**
    - Deceptive devices, **3:17**
    - Manipulative devices, **3:17**
    - Merger regulation, **6:157**
    - Private enforcement rights, **3:16**
    - SA, **3:10**
    - Scope of coverage, **3:15**
    - Semiofficial evidence, **3:15**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Connection requirement, mergers, **6:185**
  - Construction, **1:18 et seq.**
  - Contraction era, **3:31**
  - Criminal enforcement, **10:4**
  - Curing violations, **12:15**
  - Direct-Impersonal Dealing (this index)
  - Direct-Personal Dealing (this index)
  - Disclosure corrections, **6:314 et seq.**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:218**
  - Disclosure rule, treatment as, **12:3**
  - Displacements within 10b-5, **3:181**
  - Economic background, **3:24**
  - Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**
  - Enactment, **3:18**
  - Equalization of access to investment rewards, **4:5**
  - Equalization of bargaining positions, **4:4**
  - Equalization of information, **4:5**
  - Equalization rule, treatment as, **12:2**
  - Ethical standards, **3:60, 3:80**
  - Evolution of, **12:1**
  - Expanding scope of, **12:8**
  - Expansion era
    - Generally, **3:30**
    - New expansion era, **3:32**
  - Expenses, security for, **3:175**
  - Fairness rule, treatment as, **12:5, 12:13**
  - Federal vs state private actions, relative advantages, **3:200**
  - Fragmented text, **1:19**
  - Front running, **7:139 et seq.**
  - Gap-filling purpose, **3:19**
  - Good faith of plaintiff, **8:254**
  - Growth of, **12:1**
  - History
    - Generally, **3:6 et seq.**
    - Economic background, **3:24**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Implied civil recovery, Rule 10b-5 without, **3:180**
  - Implied liability, **3:175**
    - Generally, **8:242 et seq.**
    - Absolute liability, **8:243**
    - Burden of proof, **8:255**
    - Clause 3, primacy of, **3:182**
    - Constructive fraud, **8:242**
  - Contraction era
    - Generally, **3:74 et seq.**
    - Administrative enforcement, supplement to, **3:81**
    - Administrative interpretation, **3:82**
    - Congressional intent, **3:76**
    - Cort v Ash, **3:95**
    - Flexibility to achieve remedial purpose, **3:88**
    - Judicial restraint, **3:85**
    - Legislative history, uses of, **3:90 et seq.**
    - Modes of interpretation, **3:86 et seq.**
    - Negative implication, **3:87**
    - Policies, **3:75**
    - Policy effectuation, **3:80**
    - Practicality, **3:83**
    - Reasons, **3:75**
    - Statutory jurisdictional grant, **3:79**
    - Statutory literalism, **3:89**
    - Statutory tort, **3:77**
    - Vexatiousness, **3:84, 3:85**
    - Voidability, statutory, **3:78**
  - Contributory negligence, **8:253**
  - Displacements within 10b-5, **3:181**
  - Equitable fraud, **8:242**
  - Expenses, security for, **3:175**
  - Good faith of plaintiff, **8:254**
  - Implied civil recovery, Rule 10b-5 without, **3:180**
  - Innocent defendants, **8:243**
  - Limitations of actions, **3:174**
  - Negligence of plaintiff, **8:253**

## INDEX

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Implied liability, **3:175**—Cont'd
    - Overlaps within 10b-5, **3:181**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge
    - Generally, **8:244 et seq.**
    - Actual knowledge, **8:244**
    - Comparative knowledge, **8:249**
    - Constructive knowledge, **8:250**
    - Limitation of actions, **8:251**
    - Misrepresentation, **8:246**
    - Nondisclosure, **8:245**
    - Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**
  - Pleading, **8:257**
  - Prevalence of rule, **3:179**
  - Privity requirements, **3:176**
  - Proof, **8:256**
  - Proof requirements, **3:177**
  - Remedies, **3:178**
  - Security for expenses, **3:175**
  - Silent conduct, **3:182**
  - Strict liability, **8:243**
- Indirect-impersonal dealing
  - Generally, **3:28**
  - Insiders, **7:163**
- Information, equalization of, **4:5**
- Innocent defendants, **8:243**
- Insider rule, treatment as, **4:1, 12:4**
- Insider trading charges
  - Connection with requirement, **7:370**
  - Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:163**
  - Private actions, **7:497 et seq.**
  - Scienter, **7:374 et seq.**
- Integration proposals, **3:52**
- Intentional and unintentional violations, **12:14**
- Interpretation, **1:18 et seq.**
- Interrelations of fraud rules
  - Generally, **3:37 et seq.**
  - Birnbaum rule, **3:50**
  - Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**
  - Causation, **3:48**
  - Defenses to private actions, **3:51**

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

#### —Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Interrelations of fraud rules
    - Cont'd
      - Displacing provisions, **3:53**
      - Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**
      - Exempt offerings, **3:46**
      - Implied and express private actions, **3:50**
      - Implied Liability (this index)
      - Integration proposals, **3:52**
      - Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**
      - Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**
      - Parties subject to rule, **3:49**
      - Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**
      - Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**
      - Public offerings, **3:40**
      - Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**
      - Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**
      - Transactions covered, **3:38**
      - Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**
      - Unregistered offerings, **3:46**
  - Investor protection considerations, **3:60, 3:80**
  - Joint and several liability, **9:37 et seq.**
  - Joint use of multiple fraud provisions, **3:53**
  - Jurisdictional means
    - Generally, **11:2 et seq.**
    - Proxies and proxy solicitations, **6:190**
  - Key clauses, **1:18 et seq.**
  - Key phrases, **1:20**
  - Landmarks, **3:29 et seq.**
  - Language, **3:1**
  - Limitations of actions, **3:174**
  - Manipulation, **7:130 et seq.**
  - Market-informing rule, treatment as, **12:6**
  - Materiality of violations, **12:2**
  - Materiality standard, **6:168**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Merger regulation
    - Congressional intent, **6:157**
    - Private action challenges, **6:162**
  - Misappropriation theory of insider liabilities, **7:585 et seq.**
  - Misrepresentations
    - Fact or opinion as subject of, **8:2**
    - Omnicare decision, fact vs. opinion standard, **8:3**
    - Opinion or fact as subject of, **8:2**
    - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:246**
    - Rule 10b-5 elements generally, **8:2**
  - Net effect of rule, **1:21**
  - New expansion era, **3:146**
  - Nondisclosure
    - Fact or opinion as subject of, **8:2**
    - Omnicare decision, fact vs. opinion standard, **8:3**
    - Opinion or fact as subject of, **8:2**
    - Rule 10b-5 elements generally, **8:2**
  - Numbering changes, **3:21**
  - Other § 10(b) rules
    - Generally, **3:33 et seq.**
    - Proposed rules, **3:35**
  - Overlaps within 10b-5, **3:181**
  - Parking, **7:143 et seq.**
  - Parties subject to rule, **3:49**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge
    - Generally, **8:244 et seq.**
    - Actual knowledge, **8:244**
    - Comparative knowledge, **8:249**
    - Constructive knowledge, **8:250**
    - Limitation of actions, **8:251**
    - Nondisclosure, **8:245**
    - Theoretical knowledge, **8:248**
  - Pleading, particularity
    - Generally, **11:115 et seq.**
    - Analysts' statements, **11:127**
    - Fact statements, **11:120 et seq., 11:122**
    - Failure to anticipate, **11:131**
    - Falsity, **11:116, 11:117**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Pleading, particularity—Cont'd
    - Forward looking statements, **11:132**
    - Group statements, **11:123, 11:124**
    - Hindsight cases, **11:130 et seq.**
    - Information and belief, **11:128, 11:129**
    - Misleading character, **11:118, 11:119**
    - Nondisclosure, **11:131**
    - Predictions, **11:132**
    - Scienter, **11:133 et seq.**
    - Third party statements, **11:127**
    - Unattributed statements, **11:125, 11:126**
  - Possession of inside information
    - Generally, **7:318 et seq.**
    - Access, proof of, **7:323**
    - Awareness and possession distinguished, **7:349**
    - Burden of proof, **7:321**
    - Contact, proof of, **7:324**
    - Individuals, proof as to, **7:322**
    - Knowing possession, **7:320**
    - Mere possession, **7:319**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:326**
    - Proof, **7:322 et seq.**
    - Trading, proof of, **7:325**
    - Use inferred from possession, **7:328**
  - Prevalence of rule, **3:179**
  - Private fraud actions
    - Privity
      - Generally, **8:288 et seq.**
      - Accountants, liability of, **8:404**
      - Actions in concert, **8:294**
      - Agreement, **8:314**
      - Aider-abettors, **8:327 et seq.**
      - Aiding and abetting generally, **8:292**
      - Attorneys, **8:409**
      - Benefit, **8:317**
      - Combination, **8:314**

INDEX

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Private fraud actions—Cont'd
  - Privity—Cont'd
    - Conspiracy generally, **8:292**
    - Conspirators, **8:304 et seq.**
    - Corporate officers, **8:413**
    - Directors, **8:413**
    - Extent of liability, **8:318**
    - Intent, **8:316**
    - Knowledge, **8:315**
    - Limits, **8:291**
    - Participants in violations generally, **8:294**
    - Participation generally, **8:292**
    - Pleading, **8:319 et seq.**
    - Policies, **8:289**
    - Reasons, **8:289**
    - Rescission, availability of, **8:290**
    - Suability, meaning of generally, **8:293**
    - Theory of action, **8:290**
  - Scienter
    - Generally, **8:154 et seq.**
    - Actual knowledge
      - Generally, **8:165 et seq.**
      - Burden of proof, **8:178**
      - Criminal prosecutions, **8:176**
    - Direct-impersonal transactions, **8:171**
    - Direct-personal transactions, **8:170**
    - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **8:172**
    - Injunctions, **8:174**
    - Insufficiency of, **8:177**
    - Necessity of, **8:167, 8:168**
    - Proof, **8:179**
    - SEC decisions, **8:175**
    - Sufficiency of, **8:169 et seq.**
  - Bad faith
    - Generally, **8:210 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:219**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

**—Cont'd**

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
- Private fraud actions—Cont'd
- Scienter—Cont'd
  - Bad faith—Cont'd
    - Effect of good or bad faith generally, **8:216 et seq.**
    - Good reputation, effect of, **8:218**
    - Insufficiency, **8:215**
    - Necessity of, **8:212, 8:213**
    - Proof, **8:220**
    - Sufficiency, **8:214**
  - Belief of defendant, **8:240**
  - Breadth of rule, **8:160**
  - Congressional intent, **8:158**
  - Constructive knowledge
    - Generally, **8:180 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:189**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:187**
  - Injunctions, **8:185**
  - Insufficiency, **8:188**
  - Necessity, **8:182, 8:183**
  - Proof, **8:190**
  - SEC decisions, **8:186**
  - Sufficiency, **8:184 et seq.**
- Defendant standards, **8:164**
- Definitions, **8:155 et seq.**
- Diligence, lack of
  - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
  - Injunctions, **8:234**
- Flexibility, need for, **8:162**
- Formulations, **8:155**
- Intent
  - Generally, **8:191 et seq.**
  - Absence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
  - Burden of proof, **8:201**
  - Criminal cases, **8:197**
  - Criminal prosecutions, **8:197**
  - Injunctions, **8:195**
  - Insufficiency, **8:199**
  - Necessity, **8:193 et seq.**

## SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

## —Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Private fraud actions—Cont'd
    - Scienter—Cont'd
      - Intent—Cont'd
        - Presence of intent, effect of, **8:200**
        - Proof, **8:202**
        - SEC decisions, **8:196**
        - Sufficiency, **8:198**
      - Motive
        - Generally, **8:203 et seq.**
        - Absence, effect of, **8:207**
        - Burden of proof, **8:208**
        - Necessity, **8:205, 8:206**
        - Presence, effect of, **8:207**
        - Proof, **8:209**
      - Negligence
        - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
        - Injunctions, **8:234**
      - Other elements, relation of scienter to, **8:163**
      - Plaintiff standards, **8:164**
      - Policy, **8:161**
      - Reasons, **8:161**
      - Recklessness, **8:221 et seq.**
      - Reputation, **8:218**
      - Scope of rule, **8:160**
      - Semantic confusion, **8:156, 8:157**
      - Unreasonable conduct
        - Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
        - Injunctions, **8:234**
    - Versions of scienter, relations among
      - Actual knowledge, **8:166**
      - Bad faith, **8:211**
      - Constructive knowledge, **8:181**
      - Diligence, lack of, **8:230**
      - Intent, **8:192**
      - Motive, **8:204**
      - Negligence, **8:230**
      - Purpose, **8:204**
      - Recklessness, **8:222**
      - Unreasonable conduct, **8:230**

## SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS

## —Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Private fraud actions—Cont'd
    - Scienter—Cont'd
      - Willfulness, **8:241**
    - Private transactions, application to
      - Generally, **3:26**
      - Broker-dealer transactions, **3:27**
    - Privity
      - Actions in concert, **8:294**
      - Implied liability, **3:176**
    - Proliferation of rule, **12:1**
    - Promulgation, **3:18**
    - Proof requirements, **3:177**
    - Proposals for change, **12:9**
    - Proposed companion rules, **3:35**
    - Proxies and proxy solicitations
      - Causation, **6:181**
      - Jurisdictional means, **6:190**
      - Materiality standard, **6:168**
      - Privity, **6:175**
      - Reliance, **6:178**
      - Scienter standard, **6:171**
    - Proxy rules, relation to, **6:159 et seq.**
    - PSLRA and, **3:1**
    - Purpose of rule, **3:19**
    - Rationales for protection afforded by, **4:2 et seq.**
    - Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**
    - Releases of liability, **12:11**
    - Reliance
      - Generally, **8:493 et seq.**
      - Proxies and proxy solicitations, **6:178**
    - Remedies, implied liability, **3:178**
    - Rescission offers to cure violations, **12:15**
    - Retrenchment era, **3:31**
    - Rule 15c1-2 compared, **3:27**
    - SA § 17(a) compared
      - Generally, **3:27**
      - Early version, **3:8**
      - Final version, **3:9**
    - Sanctions, **3:4**

INDEX

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

—Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - SA provisions and history of, **3:7 et seq.**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act implied liabilities, **3:172**
  - Scienter
    - Insider trading charges, **7:374 et seq.**
    - Intent, proof of in private actions, **8:194**
    - Proxies and proxy solicitations, **6:171**
  - Scope of operation
    - Generally, **3:25 et seq.**
    - Broker-dealer transactions, **3:27**
    - Direct-impersonal transactions, **3:28**
    - Direct-personal transactions
      - Generally, **3:26**
      - Broker-dealer transactions, **3:27**
    - Expansion of, **12:8**
    - Indirect-impersonal transactions, **3:28**
    - Private transactions, **3:26**
  - SEA 10(b) and
    - Early version, **3:12**
    - Final version, **3:13**
    - Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**
  - SEA and, **3:11 et seq.**
  - Seller protection, **4:3**
  - Shot gun use of SEA § 10(b), **3:36**
  - Silent conduct, **3:182**
  - Special facts and common law fraud, **3:19**
  - State and federal laws, relationships between, **3:184 et seq.**
  - Status of rule, **3:2 et seq.**
  - Statutory limits on rules, **3:5**
  - Strict liability, **8:243**
  - Suitability claims, **14:197 et seq.**
  - Supreme Court, **3:148**
  - Text of rule, **App A**
  - Transaction Planning (this index)
  - Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS**

—Cont'd

- Rule 10b-5—Cont'd
  - Unintentional violations, **12:14**
  - Use of inside information
    - Generally, **7:327 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **7:331**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:332**
    - Inferences, **7:328**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:339**
    - Possession, use inferred from, **7:328**
    - Rebuttal evidence, **7:337, 7:338**
    - Size of transaction, proof value, **7:334**
    - Standard of proof, **7:331**
    - Timing, proof of, **7:333**
    - Type of transaction, proof value, **7:335**
  - Validity, **3:3**
  - Violations, preventive law responses, **12:15**
  - Waivers of, **12:11**
- Rule 13a-1, **18:3**
- Rule 13a-13, **18:3**
- Rule 13a-14, **18:3**
- Rule 14a, **18:3, 18:10**
- Rule 14a-9
  - Causation, proxy fraud, **6:179**
  - Disclosures of corrections, **6:303 et seq.**
  - Jurisdictional means, **6:188, 6:189**
  - Materiality standard, **6:166**
- Mergers
  - Connection requirement, **6:183**
  - Private action challenges, **6:160**
- Proxies and proxy solicitations
  - Causation, **6:179**
  - Jurisdictional means, **6:188, 6:189**
  - Materiality standard, **6:166**
  - Privity, **6:173**
  - Reliance, **6:176**
  - Scienter standard, **6:169**
- Reliance, **6:176**
- Rule 14c-6
  - Connection requirement mergers, **6:184**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS****—Cont'd**

- Rule 14c-6—Cont'd
  - Disclosure corrections, **6:307 et seq.**
  - Materiality standard, **6:167**
  - Mergers, private action challenges, **6:161**
  - Privity, **6:174**
  - Proxies and proxy solicitations
    - Causation, **6:180**
    - Materiality standard, **6:167**
    - Privity, **6:174**
    - Reliance, **6:177**
    - Scienter standard, **6:170**
  - Reliance, **6:177**
  - Scienter, **6:170**
- Rule 14e-3
  - Generally, **7:632 et seq.**
  - Broker-dealer supervisory liabilities, **14:169**
  - Duty imposed, **7:633**
  - Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:166**
  - Insider trading charges
    - Connection with requirement, **7:371**
    - Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:166**
    - Private actions, **7:500**
    - Scienter, **7:412**
  - Possession of inside information
    - Generally, **7:340 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **7:341**
    - Chinese walls, **7:343 et seq.**
    - Individuals, proof for, **7:342**
    - Organizations, proof for, **7:343 et seq.**
  - Precautions against trading, **7:346**
  - Standard of proof, **7:341**
  - Scienter, **7:412**
  - Supreme Court validation, **7:636, 7:637**
  - Use of inside information, **7:347**
  - Validity, **7:634 et seq.**
- Rule 15c1-2
  - 10b-5 compared, **3:27**
  - Causation, **3:48**

**SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS****—Cont'd**

- Rule 15c1-2—Cont'd
  - Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**
  - Implied Liability (this index)
  - Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:165**
  - Insiders, **7:165**
  - Integration proposals, **3:52**
  - Interrelations of fraud rules
    - Generally, **3:37 et seq.**
    - Birnbaum rule, **3:50**
    - Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**
    - Causation, **3:48**
    - Defenses to private actions, **3:51**
    - Displacing provisions, **3:53**
    - Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**
    - Exempt offerings, **3:46**
    - Implied and express private actions, **3:50**
    - Implied Liability (this index)
    - Integration proposals, **3:52**
    - Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**
    - Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**
    - Parties subject to rule, **3:49**
    - Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**
    - Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**
    - Public offerings, **3:40**
    - Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**
    - Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**
    - Transactions covered, **3:38**
    - Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**
    - Unregistered offerings, **3:46**
  - Joint use of multiple fraud provisions, **3:53**
  - Parties subject to rule, **3:49**
  - Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**
  - Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**
- Rule 15c2-11, **14:147**
- Rule 15g-1, **14:144**

## INDEX

### SEC RULES AND REGULATIONS —Cont'd

- Rule 15g-8, **14:145**
- Rule 15g-9, **14:142**
- Rule 16a-3, **18:3**
- Rule 144, indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:167**
- Rule 144A, crowdfunding, **14:216**
- Rule 174, **14:145**
- Rule 175, **7:21**
- Rule 176, **14:7**
- Rule 412, **14:7, 14:10**
- Rule 419, **14:145**
- Rule 506, crowdfunding, **14:216**
- SA § 17(a) and 10b-5 compared, **3:27**
- Sanctions
  - Generally, **3:4**
  - Rule 10b-5, **3:4**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **3:164 et seq.**
- Special facts and common law fraud, **3:19**
- Status of rules generally, **3:2 et seq.**
- Statutory limits on rules, **3:5**
- Suitability rules, **14:195**
- Triggering events, **7:540**
- Validity
  - Antifraud rules generally, **3:3**
  - Regulation FD, **7:550**
  - Rule 10b-5, **3:3**
- What is a Security (this index)

### SECURITIES ACT (SA)

- Backdating of stock options, violations of federal securities laws, **18:3**
- Congressional intent, Rule 10b-5 history, **3:10**
- Cybersecurity, class actions, **26:7**
- Disclosure requirements in filings, **6:279**
- Enactment, **3:7**
- Implied Liability (this index)
- Insiders and inside trading, Mail and wire fraud, **7:172**
- Interrelations of fraud rules
  - Generally, **3:37 et seq.**
  - Birnbaum rule, **3:50**
  - Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**
  - Causation, **3:48**

### SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd

- Interrelations of fraud rules—Cont'd
  - Defenses to private actions, **3:51**
  - Displacing provisions, **3:53**
  - Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**
  - Exempt offerings, **3:46**
  - Implied and express private actions, **3:50**
  - Implied Liability (this index)
  - Integration proposals, **3:52**
  - Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**
  - Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**
  - Parties subject to rule, **3:49**
  - Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**
  - Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**
  - Public offerings, **3:40**
  - Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**
  - Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**
  - Transactions covered, **3:38**
  - Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**
  - Unregistered offerings, **3:46**
- Materiality
  - Generally, **8:49 et seq.**
  - Registration fraud, **8:51**
  - Sales fraud, **8:50, 8:52**
  - Section 11, **8:51**
  - Section 12(a)(2), **8:50**
  - Section 17(a), **8:52**
  - Tests of, **8:10**
- Mergers, registration requirements, **6:152**
- Proxy solicitation antifraud provisions, **6:187**
- Public offerings, interrelations of fraud rules, **3:40**
- Risk disclosures requirements in filings, **6:279**
- Rules. See SEC Rules and Regulations (this index)
- Section 2(1)(a), what is a security
  - Generally, **5:10**
  - Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**
  - Guarantees, **5:15**

**SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd**

- Section 2(1)(a), what is a security—Cont'd
  - Interest, **5:14**
  - 9 month notes, **5:17**
  - Oil and gas interests, **5:16**
  - SEA § 3(a)(10) differences, **5:12 et seq.**
  - SEA § 3(a)(10) similarities, **5:11**
- Section 5
  - Generally, **6:217**
  - Crowdfunding, application of law, **14:215**
  - Exemptions, **14:24**
  - Violations, **14:26**
- Section 11
  - Broker-dealer liability, **14:2 et seq.**
  - Broker-Dealer Liability (this index)
  - Class actions, **14:18**
  - Contraction era, implied private actions in
    - Generally, **3:109 et seq.**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:112**
    - Documents excluded, **3:113**
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**
    - Securities excluded, **3:110**
    - Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**
    - Transactions excluded, **3:110**
  - Court cases, **14:6**
  - Damages, **14:15**
  - Disclosure corrections, **6:294 et seq.**
  - Due diligence defense
    - Generally, **14:5**
    - SEC view, **14:9**
  - Expansion era, implied private actions in, **3:70**
  - Implied Liability (this index)
  - Implied private actions in contraction era
    - Generally, **3:109 et seq.**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:112**
    - Documents excluded, **3:113**

**SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd**

- Section 11—Cont'd
  - Implied private actions in contraction era—Cont'd
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:115**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:111**
    - Securities excluded, **3:110**
    - Substantive elements, failure to satisfy, **3:115**
    - Transactions excluded, **3:110**
  - Implied private actions in expansion era, **3:70**
  - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
  - Interrelations of fraud rules
    - Generally, **3:37 et seq.**
    - Birnbaum rule, **3:50**
    - Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**
    - Causation, **3:48**
    - Defenses to private actions, **3:51**
    - Displacing provisions, **3:53**
    - Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**
    - Exempt offerings, **3:46**
    - Implied and express private actions, **3:50**
    - Implied Liability (this index)
    - Integration proposals, **3:52**
    - Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**
    - Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**
    - Parties subject to rule, **3:49**
    - Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**
    - Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**
    - Public offerings, **3:40**
    - Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**
    - Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**
    - Transactions covered, **3:38**
    - Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**
    - Unregistered offerings, **3:46**
  - Joint and several liability, **9:24**
  - Joint use of multiple fraud provisions, **3:53**
  - Later filings, effect of, **14:10**
  - Limitation of actions, **11:57 et seq.**

INDEX

**SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd**

- Section 11—Cont'd
  - Materiality, **8:51**
  - Non-managing underwriters, **14:13**
  - Participating underwriters, **14:13**
  - Parties, **8:273**
  - Pleading particularity, **11:112**
  - Policy considerations, **14:12**
  - Reasonable investigation defense
    - Generally, **14:5**
    - Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**
    - SEC Rule 176, **14:8**
  - Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:11**
  - Registered offerings, fraud rules applicable to, **3:39, 3:45**
  - Reliance, **8:491**
  - SEA § 10(b) compared, **14:16**
  - SEC Rule 176, **14:7**
  - SEC Rule 412, **14:7**
  - SEC view of due diligence techniques, **14:9**
  - Underwriters
    - Generally, **14:4**
    - Due diligence, **14:14**
- Section 11(f)
  - Contribution, **9:67**
  - Proportionate liability, **9:48**
- Section 12(1), **11:47 et seq.**
- Section 12(2)
  - Contraction era, implied private actions in
    - Generally, **3:116 et seq.**
    - Commercial paper, **3:119**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:121**
    - Documents excluded, **3:122**
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:124**
    - Government securities, **3:118**
    - Municipal securities, **3:117**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:120**
    - Securities excluded, **3:117 et seq.**
    - Substantive elements, **3:124**
  - Disclosure corrections, **6:293**
  - Exempt offerings, application of fraud rules to, **3:46**

**SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd**

- Section 12(2)—Cont'd
  - Expansion era, implied private actions in, **3:71**
  - Implied Liability (this index)
  - Implied private actions (IPA)
    - Contraction era
      - Generally, **3:116 et seq.**
      - Commercial paper, **3:119**
      - Defendants excluded, **3:121**
      - Documents excluded, **3:122**
      - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:124**
      - Government securities, **3:118**
      - Municipal securities, **3:117**
      - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:120**
      - Securities excluded, **3:117 et seq.**
      - Substantive elements, **3:124**
    - Expansion era, **3:71**
  - Interrelations of fraud rules
    - Generally, **3:37 et seq.**
    - Birnbaum rule, **3:50**
    - Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**
    - Causation, **3:48**
    - Defenses to private actions, **3:51**
    - Displacing provisions, **3:53**
    - Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**
    - Exempt offerings, **3:46**
    - Implied and express private actions, **3:50**
    - Implied Liability (this index)
    - Integration proposals, **3:52**
    - Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**
    - Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**
    - Parties subject to rule, **3:49**
    - Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**
    - Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**
    - Public offerings, **3:40**
    - Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**
    - Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**
    - Transactions covered, **3:38**

**SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd**

- Section 12(2)—Cont'd
  - Interrelations of fraud rules
    - Cont'd
    - Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**
    - Unregistered offerings, **3:46**
    - Joint and several liability, **9:23**
    - Joint use of multiple fraud provisions, **3:53**
    - Limitation of actions, **11:54 et seq.**
    - Parties, **8:263 et seq.**
    - Pleading particularity, **11:111**
    - Public offerings and interrelations of fraud rules, **3:40**
    - Unregistered offerings, fraud rules applicable to, **3:46**
  - Section 12(a)(1)
    - Generally, **14:19 et seq.**
    - Broker-Dealer Liability (this index)
  - Section 12(a)(2)
    - Generally, **14:27 et seq.**
    - Broker-Dealer Liability (this index)
    - Materiality, **8:50**
    - Pinter case, **14:30, 14:38**
    - Privity, **14:34**
    - Punitive damages, **14:54**
    - Reasonable investigation requirement, **14:43**
    - Reliance, **8:490**
    - Relief available, **14:45**
    - SEA § 10(b) and, overlap between, **14:55**
  - Section 12 class actions, **14:57**
  - Section 15
    - Control person liability, **8:393 et seq.**
    - Good faith defense, **8:393 et seq.**
    - Joint and several liability, **9:25**
  - Section 17(a)
    - Breadth of fraud proscriptions, **3:52**
    - Disclosure corrections, **6:299**
    - Drafting, **3:8**
    - Final version, **3:9**
    - Implied Liability (this index)

**SECURITIES ACT (SA)—Cont'd**

- Section 17(a)—Cont'd
    - Implied private actions (IPA), **3:155**
    - Insiders, **7:164**
    - Interrelations of fraud rules
      - Generally, **3:37 et seq.**
      - Birnbaum rule, **3:50**
      - Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**
      - Causation, **3:48**
      - Defenses to private actions, **3:51**
      - Displacing provisions, **3:53**
      - Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**
      - Exempt offerings, **3:46**
      - Implied and express private actions, **3:50**
      - Implied Liability (this index)
      - Integration proposals, **3:52**
      - Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**
      - Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**
      - Parties subject to rule, **3:49**
      - Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**
      - Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**
      - Public offerings, **3:40**
      - Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**
      - Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**
      - Transactions covered, **3:38**
      - Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**
      - Unregistered offerings, **3:46**
    - Joint use of multiple fraud provisions, **3:53**
    - Materiality, **8:52**
    - Parties, **8:274 et seq.**
    - Reliance, **8:492**
    - Rule 10b-5 compared, **3:27**
    - Text, **App C**
    - USCA cross reference table, **App H**
    - What is a Security (this index)
- SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC)**
- Generally, **1:4 et seq., 10:1 et seq.**

## INDEX

### SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd

See also SEC Rules and Regulations  
(this index)

Accessibility of decisions, **1:6**

Accountants, rulemaking authority as  
to, **3:5**

Accounting orders, **13:84**

Actions against attorneys by. See  
Attorneys (this index)

Administrative enforcement  
See also Administrative Enforce-  
ment (this index)

Role in

Generally, **10:1**

In court, **10:3**

Out of court, **10:2**

Administrative intent, Rule 10b-5  
history, **3:19**

Admission of wrongdoing, compro-  
mise and settlement, **13:166 et  
seq.**

Amicus curiae participation in private  
litigation, **13:79**

Ancillary relief, **13:107 et seq.**

Articulation of standards, **1:7**

Asset freezes, **13:100**

Attorneys (this index)

Authority, rulemaking, **3:5**

Authority of staff to negotiate,  
**13:162**

Authority to investigate, **13:6**

Backdating of stock options,  
investigations, **18:3, 18:6, 18:8**

Bar orders. Collateral bars against  
individuals, below

Bounties to informants, **7:445**

Briefs, **1:13**

Broker-dealers

Cybersecurity, **26:4, 26:5**

Supervisory authority over, **10:1**

Cady, Roberts & Co case, **App E**

Cease and desist orders

Permanent, **13:85**

Temporary, **13:86**

Collateral bars against individuals

Generally, **13:87**

Corporate office orders, **13:88**

### SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd

Collateral bars against individuals  
—Cont'd

Injunctions including, **13:117**

Collateral effects of orders, **13:92**

Compliance orders, **13:82**

Compromise and settlement, admis-  
sion of wrongdoing, **13:166 et  
seq.**

Conferences with staff, **13:26**

Conflicts of interest in investigations,  
**13:15**

Connection with requirement, **10:1**

Contested cases

Generally, **1:5**

Initial decisions, **1:8**

Control person liability

Generally, **7:451 et seq.**

A test, **7:453**

All control persons, **7:453**

Amount of liability, **7:459**

Broker-dealer control persons,  
**7:456**

B test, **7:456**

Contribution to violation, **7:458**

Failure to act, **7:455**

Investment adviser control  
persons, **7:456**

Knowledge

Failure to have preventive poli-  
cies in place, **7:457**

Likelihood of violation, **7:454**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

Policy/procedure failures, **7:457**

Reckless disregard

Failure to have preventive poli-  
cies in place, **7:457**

Likelihood of violation, **7:454**

Requirements, **7:452**

Respondeat superior liability,  
**7:450**

Substantial contribution to viola-  
tion, **7:458**

Cooperation agreements, **20:15**

Counsel investigations, **13:27**

Criminal enforcement references

Generally, **13:122 et seq.**

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE  
COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd**

Criminal enforcement references  
—Cont'd  
See also Criminal Enforcement  
(this index)  
Role in prosecution, **10:1, 10:4**  
Crowdfunding, **14:218**  
Cryptocurrencies (this index)  
Cybersecurity, **26:4, 26:5**  
Decisions, **1:4 et seq.**  
Director and officer regulation,  
Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **8:464**  
Disclosures  
Correction requirements, **6:313**  
Filings as, **7:285**  
Discovery  
Generally, **13:66 et seq.**  
Document subpoenas, **13:67**  
FOIA requests, **13:68**  
Production requests, **13:69**  
Disgorgement orders, **13:84**  
Document production, **13:25**  
Documents, third party access to,  
**13:66 et seq.**  
Due diligence defense techniques,  
**14:9**  
Enforcement actions. See  
Administrative Enforcement  
(this index)  
Enforcement focus, ESG, **29:1**  
ESG-related enforcement actions  
Climate, **29:2**  
Task force, **29:2**  
False reports to  
Generally, **8:146**  
Corrections, **6:313**  
Defendant's knowledge  
Burden of proof, **8:148**  
Proof, **8:149**  
Good faith, **8:150**  
Joint and several liability, **9:32**  
Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**  
Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:151**  
Pleading, **8:152**  
Privity, **8:287**  
Quantitative factors, **8:153**  
SEA § 18, **8:287**

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE  
COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd**

Filings  
Disclosures, **7:285**  
Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**  
Reliance on and implied private  
actions  
Contraction era  
Generally, **3:133 et seq.**  
Decisions rejecting IPA,  
**3:137**  
Decisions sustaining IPA,  
**3:138**  
Defendants excluded, **3:141**  
Documents excluded, **3:142,**  
**3:143**  
Failure to satisfy substantive  
elements, **3:145**  
Filed and unfiled documents,  
**3:142 et seq.**  
Fischman rationale, **3:135**  
Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**  
Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**  
Reexamination, reasons for,  
**3:134**  
Scienter, **3:135**  
Securities excluded, **3:139**  
Substantive elements, **3:145**  
Expansion era, **3:73**  
Finding decisions, **1:6**  
FOIA requests, **13:68**  
Foreign government officials, pay-  
ments to. Foreign Corrupt Prac-  
tices Act (FCPA) (this index)  
Front running  
Generally, **7:140**  
Decisions, **7:142**  
Implied liabilities, SEC role in  
developing theories of, **10:1**  
Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:58,**  
**7:59, 7:72 to 7:74, 7:77, 7:80,**  
**7:93**  
Informal enforcement actions, **13:78**  
Informal warnings, **13:72**  
Informants, awards to, **7:445**  
Initial decisions in contested cases,  
**1:8**  
Injunctions (this index)

INDEX

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE  
COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd**

Insider trading. Insider and Insider Trading (this index)  
Insurance coverage for settling defendants, **13:183**  
Interrogations, **13:29**  
Investigations  
    Generally, **13:1 et seq.**  
    See also Investigations (this index)  
    Backdating of stock options, **18:6, 18:8**  
    Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA) (this index)  
    Madoff Ponzi Scheme (this index)  
    Reports, **1:10**  
Jurisdictional means  
    Generally, **10:1, 11:2 et seq., 12:10**  
    See also Jurisdiction (this index)  
    Adviser activities, **11:15**  
    Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**  
    Broker-dealer activities, **11:15**  
    Check clearance as interstate activity, **11:11**  
    Class actions, **11:42**  
    Defenses, **11:41**  
    Derivative suits, **11:43**  
    Foreign cubed cases, **11:37**  
    Foreign transactions, **11:16**  
    Fraud, interstate nature of, **11:9**  
    International transactions, **11:16**  
    Interstate commerce, **11:3**  
    Local telephone use, **11:4**  
    Mails, use of, **11:6**  
    Misconduct, relation of jurisdictional means to  
        Generally, **11:8 et seq.**  
        Agent's interstate activities, **11:13**  
        Check clearances, **11:11**  
        Fraud, **11:9**  
        Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**  
        Transaction, **11:10, 11:12**  
    Plaintiff's interstate activities, **11:14**  
    Pleading, **11:38**

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE  
COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd**

Jurisdictional means—Cont'd  
    Procedure, **11:39 et seq.**  
    Process, **11:40**  
    Scope of commerce, **11:3**  
    Securities exchanges and interstate commerce, **11:7**  
    Service of process, **11:40**  
    Telephone use, **11:4**  
    Transaction, interstate, **11:10, 11:12**  
    Venue, **11:39**  
Justice Department references  
    Generally, **13:122 et seq.**  
    See also Criminal Enforcement (this index)  
Limitation of actions, enforcement actions, **13:184 et seq.**  
Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2, 20:5, 20:6**  
Markup and markdown practices, SEC basis criteria, **14:150 et seq.**  
Negotiations with  
    Generally, **13:161 et seq., 13:266**  
    Advantages and disadvantages, **13:163**  
    Authority of staff, **13:162**  
    Considerations, **13:165**  
    Objectives, **13:164**  
No-action letters, **1:12**  
NSMIA preemption of state registration laws, **3:187 et seq.**  
Observations on private litigation, **13:182**  
Orders  
    Accountings, **13:84**  
    Bar orders. Collateral bars against individuals, below  
    Cease and desist orders  
        Permanent, **13:85**  
        Temporary, **13:86**  
    Collateral bars against individuals  
        Generally, **13:87**  
        Corporate office orders, **13:88**  
        Injunctions including, **13:117**  
    Collateral effects of orders, **13:92**

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE  
COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd**

Orders—Cont'd  
 Compliance orders, **13:82**  
 Disgorgement, **13:84**  
 Duration of orders, **13:94**  
 Formal orders of investigation,  
**13:16 et seq.**  
 Validity challenges, **13:20**  
 Outcomes of investigations, **13:70 et  
 seq.**  
 Penalty actions  
 Generally, **7:438**  
 See also Civil Penalties (this  
 index)  
 Aider-abettors, **7:449**  
 Amount of penalty  
 Control persons, **7:459**  
 Court-imposed, **7:439**  
 Bounties, **7:445**  
 Control persons, penalties imposed  
 on, **7:440**  
 Court imposed penalties, **7:439**  
 Disposition of penalties, **7:445**  
 Double jeopardy limitations, **7:443**  
 Factors considered in imposition of  
 penalties, **7:442**  
 Informants, awards to, **7:445**  
 Insider trading law enforcement,  
**7:438 et seq.**  
 Judge or jury, **7:446**  
 Maximum penalties imposed,  
**7:441**  
 Persons liable  
 Generally, **7:447**  
 Aider-abettors, **7:449**  
 Control person liability, above  
 Employers, **7:450**  
 Respondeat superior liability,  
**7:450**  
 Tippers, **7:448**  
 Traders, **7:448**  
 Respondeat superior liability,  
**7:450**  
 Settled penalties, **7:444**  
 Tippees, penalties imposed on,  
**7:439**

**SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE  
COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd**

Penalty actions—Cont'd  
 Traders, penalties imposed on,  
**7:439**  
 Private relief, role in  
 In court, **10:3**  
 Out of court, **10:2**  
 Pronouncements, **1:4 et seq.**  
 Proposed ESG regulations, **29:4**  
 Public reports of investigations,  
**13:74 et seq.**  
 Quasi-judicial jurisdiction, **10:1**  
 Regulation G and Sarbanes-Oxley  
 Act liabilities, **3:170**  
 Releases  
 Generally, **1:11**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act rules and  
 releases, **3:164 et seq.**  
 Reports of investigations, **1:10, 13:74  
 et seq.**  
 Requests for information, **13:11**  
 Respondeat superior liability, penalty  
 actions, **7:450**  
 Restitution to defrauded investors,  
 role in  
 In court, **10:3**  
 Out of court, **10:2**  
 Right to counsel in investigations,  
**13:14**  
 Rulemaking authority, **3:5**  
 Rules. See SEC Rules and Regula-  
 tions (this index)  
 Safeguards rule, violations of, **26:4,  
 26:5**  
 Sarbanes-Oxley Act  
 Attorneys (this index)  
 Director and officer regulation,  
**8:464**  
 Implementation, **8:473**  
 Reporting obligations, **8:432 et  
 seq.**  
 Rules and releases, **3:164 et seq.**  
 SEA § 21(a) reports of investigations,  
**13:74 et seq.**  
 SEA Release No. 3230, **App B**  
 Settled cases, **1:9**  
 Settlement of penalty actions, **7:444**

## INDEX

### SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION (SEC)—Cont'd

- Settlements, admission of wrongdoing, **13:166 et seq.**
- Staff conferences, **13:26**
- Standards, articulation, **1:7**
- Subpoenas
  - Generally, **13:21 et seq.**
  - Content, **13:22**
  - Document production, **13:25**
  - Document subpoenas, **13:67**
  - Evaluation, **13:23**
  - Responses, **13:25**
  - Validity challenges, **13:24**
- Suitability rules, **14:195**
- Tender offer challenges, **6:138**
- Tender offer disclosure filings
  - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**
  - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
  - Date of information, **6:52**
  - Other disseminations, **6:54**
  - Processing, **6:53**
  - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
  - Time of filing, **6:50**
- Testimony before
  - Generally, **13:28 et seq.**
  - Interrogations, **13:29**
  - Preparing witnesses, **13:28**
  - Transcripts, **13:30**
- Transcripts
  - Generally, **13:30**
  - Third party access to, **13:66 et seq.**
- Unreasonable search and seizure, **13:34**
- Ward La France Truck Corp case, **App D**
- Warnings, **13:72**
- Wells submissions
  - Generally, **13:158**
  - Advantages and disadvantages, **13:160**
  - Character, **13:159**
- What is a Security (this index)

### SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (SEA)

- Congressional intent
  - Generally, **3:11**

### SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (SEA)—Cont'd

- Congressional intent—Cont'd
  - Rule 10b-5 history
    - Generally, **3:14 et seq.**
    - Deceptive devices, **3:17**
    - Manipulative devices, **3:17**
    - Private enforcement rights, **3:16**
    - Scope of coverage, **3:15**
    - Semiofficial evidence, **3:15**
- Cybersecurity, class actions, **26:6**
- Disclosure requirements in filings, **6:280**
- Implied Liability (this index)
- Interrelations of fraud rules
  - Generally, **3:37 et seq.**
  - Birnbaum rule, **3:50**
  - Breadth of proscriptions, **3:52**
  - Causation, **3:48**
  - Defenses to private actions, **3:51**
  - Displacing provisions, **3:53**
  - Elements of private cause of action, **3:50**
  - Exempt offerings, **3:46**
  - Implied and express private actions, **3:50**
  - Implied Liability (this index)
  - Integration proposals, **3:52**
  - Joint use of multiple provisions, **3:53**
  - Overlapping provisions, **3:53 et seq.**
  - Parties subject to rule, **3:49**
  - Place of transaction as factor, **3:38**
  - Prospectus fraud, **3:41 et seq.**
  - Public offerings, **3:40**
  - Registered offerings, **3:39, 3:45**
  - Relationship of conduct to transaction, **3:48**
  - Transactions covered, **3:38**
  - Types of violations proscribed, **3:47**
  - Unregistered offerings, **3:46**
- Materiality
  - Generally, **8:53 et seq.**
  - Market manipulation, **8:54**
  - Proxy fraud, **8:56**
  - Section 9(a), **8:54**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT**

**(SEA)—Cont'd**

- Materiality—Cont'd
  - Section 10, **8:55**
  - Section 14, **8:57**
  - Tender offer fraud, **8:57**
  - Tests of, **8:11**
- Release No. 3230, **App B**
- Risk disclosure requirements in filings, **6:280**
- Rule 10b-5 history
  - Generally, **3:11 et seq.**
  - Congressional intent, **3:14 et seq.**
  - Deceptive devices, **3:17**
  - Enactment, **3:18**
  - Manipulative devices, **3:17**
  - Private enforcement rights, **3:16**
  - Promulgation, **3:18**
  - Scope of coverage, **3:15**
  - Section 10(b) and
    - Early version, **3:12**
    - Final version, **3:13**
  - Semiofficial evidence, **3:15**
- Rules. See SEC Rules and Regulations (this index)
- Section 3(A)(10), what is a security
  - Generally, **5:10**
  - Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**
  - Guarantees, **5:15**
  - Interest, **5:14**
  - 9 month notes, **5:17**
  - Oil and gas interests, **5:16**
  - SA § 2(1)(a) differences, **5:12 et seq.**
  - SA § 2(1)(a) similarities, **5:11**
- Section 7, **14:59**
- Section 9
  - Contraction era, implied private actions in
    - Generally, **3:125 et seq.**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:129**
    - Documents excluded, **3:130**
    - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**
    - Government securities, **3:127**
    - Municipal securities, **3:127**
    - OTC securities, **3:126**
    - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT**

**(SEA)—Cont'd**

- Section 9—Cont'd
  - Contraction era, implied private actions in—Cont'd
    - Securities excluded, **3:126 et seq.**
    - Substantive elements, **3:132**
  - Expansion era, implied private actions in, **3:72**
  - Implied private actions (IPA)
    - Contraction era
      - Generally, **3:125 et seq.**
      - Defendants excluded, **3:129**
      - Documents excluded, **3:130**
      - Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:132**
      - Government securities, **3:127**
      - Municipal securities, **3:127**
      - OTC securities, **3:126**
      - Plaintiffs excluded, **3:128**
      - Securities excluded, **3:126 et seq.**
      - Substantive elements, **3:132**
    - Expansion era, **3:72**
  - Privity, **8:282**
- Section 9(a)
  - Disclosure corrections, **6:300**
  - False and misleading, **3:1**
  - Joint and several liability, **9:28**
  - Manipulation of market, **8:102 et seq.**
  - Materiality, **8:54**
  - Scienter, **8:102 et seq.**
- Section 9(a)(1), **7:121**
- Section 9(a)(2), manipulation
  - Generally, **7:122 et seq.**
  - Actual or apparent trading, **7:124**
  - Depressing prices, **7:124**
  - Purpose, **7:125**
  - Raising prices, **7:124**
  - Series of transactions, **7:123**
- Section 9(a)(3), **7:126**
- Section 9(a)(4), **7:126**
- Section 9(a)(5), **7:126**
- Section 9(a)(6), **7:127**
- Section 9(b), **7:128**

## INDEX

### SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (SEA)—Cont'd

- Section 9(e)
    - Contribution, **9:67**
    - Manipulation, **7:129**
  - Section 10
    - Disclosure corrections, **6:301**
    - Implied liability, **8:55**
    - Materiality, **8:55**
    - Privity, **8:283**
    - Scienter, **8:124**
  - Section 10(b)
    - Foreign cubed cases. Foreign and International Transactions (this index)
    - Front running, **7:139 et seq.**
    - Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**
    - Manipulation, **7:130 et seq.**
    - Parking, **7:143 et seq.**
    - Proposed rules, **3:35**
    - Rule 10b-5 history and
      - Early version, **3:12**
      - Final version, **3:13**
      - Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**
  - Rules
    - Generally, **3:33 et seq.**
    - See also SEC Rules (this index)
  - Rules 1 through 17, **3:34**
  - SA § 11 compared, **14:16**
  - SEA § 12(a)(2) and, overlap between, **14:55**
  - Shotgun use, **3:36**
  - Suitability claims, **14:197 et seq.**
  - Underwriters' due diligence, **14:14**
- Section 14
  - Disclosure corrections, **6:302**
  - Implied liability, **8:132 et seq.**
  - Joint and several liability
    - Proxy fraud, **9:29**
    - Tender offer fraud, **9:30**
  - Manipulation of market, **8:132 et seq.**
  - Materiality, **8:57**
  - Privity
    - Proxy fraud, **8:284**
    - Tender offer fraud, **8:285**
  - Proxy fraud, joint and several liability, **9:29**

### SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT (SEA)—Cont'd

- Section 14—Cont'd
  - Scienter, **8:125, 8:132 et seq.**
  - Tender offer fraud, joint and several liability, **9:30**
- Section 14(a)
  - Congressional intent, **6:155**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:215**
  - Merger regulation, **6:155**
- Section 14(c)
  - Congressional intent, **6:156**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:216**
  - Merger regulation, **6:156**
- Section 14(e)
  - Proxies and proxy solicitations, **6:186**
  - Proxy rules, relation to, **6:24**
  - Scope of provision, **6:25**
- Section 15(b)(4)(D), **14:166**
- Section 15(b)(4)(E), **14:165**
- Section 15(b)(6), **14:165**
- Section 15(c)(1)
  - Joint and several liability, **9:31**
  - Manipulation of market, **8:139 et seq.**
  - Privity, **8:286**
  - Scienter, **8:139 et seq.**
- Section 16(b)
  - Administrative enforcement, **7:159**
  - Backdating of stock options, **18:10**
  - Blackouts, director and officer trading during, **7:161**
  - Civil penalties, **7:159**
  - Private actions, **7:160**
  - Short sales, **7:157**
  - Short swing trading, **7:156**
  - Tipping, **7:158**
- Section 18
  - Generally, **8:146 et seq.**
  - Contraction era, implied private actions in
    - Generally, **3:133 et seq.**
    - Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**
    - Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**
    - Defendants excluded, **3:141**
    - Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT**

**(SEA)—Cont'd**

Section 18—Cont'd

Contraction era, implied private actions in—Cont'd

Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**

Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**

Fischman rationale, **3:135**

Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**

Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**

Scienter, **3:135**

Securities excluded, **3:139**

Substantive elements, **3:145**

Expansion era, implied private actions in, **3:73**

Fischman rationale, **3:135**

Implied private actions (IPA)

Contraction era

Generally, **3:133 et seq.**

Decisions rejecting IPA, **3:137**

Decisions sustaining IPA, **3:138**

Defendants excluded, **3:141**

Documents excluded, **3:142, 3:143**

Failure to satisfy substantive elements, **3:145**

Filed and unfiled documents, **3:142 et seq.**

Fischman rationale, **3:135**

Narrow focus of § 18, **3:136**

Plaintiffs excluded, **3:140**

Reexamination, reasons for, **3:134**

Scienter, **3:135**

Securities excluded, **3:139**

Substantive elements, **3:145**

Expansion era, **3:73**

Narrow focus, **3:136**

Privity, **8:287**

Scienter, **3:135**

Section 18(b), **9:67**

Section 19, broker-dealer supervisory liabilities, **14:170**

**SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT**

**(SEA)—Cont'd**

Section 20(a)

Broker-dealer supervisory liabilities, **14:167**

Control person liability, **8:393 et seq.**

Good faith defense, **8:393 et seq.**

Section 20A(c), **9:36**

Section 20(f), **8:348**

Section 21(a), **13:74 et seq.**

Section 21D(b), pleading particularity

Conflicting concerns, **11:110**

Fact statements, **11:122**

Falsity, **11:117**

Group statements, **11:124**

Information and belief, **11:129**

Misleading character, **11:119**

Purposes, **11:108**

Scienter, **11:134**

Tactical importance, **11:106**

Unattributed statements, **11:126**

Section 21D(e), **9:11**

Section 21D(g)

Contribution, **9:69**

Proportionate liability, **9:48**

Text, **App C**

USCA cross reference table, **App H**

What is a Security (this index)

Whistleblowers, protection, **22:16**

Williams Bill, **6:13**

**SECURITIES INVESTOR**

**PROTECTION ACT (SIPA)**

**AND CORPORATION (SIPC)**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, definition of customer, **20:3, 20:24**

**SECURITIES LITIGATION**

**UNIFORM STANDARDS ACT**

**(SLUSA)**

Generally, **3:201 et seq.**

Abolition of state claims, **3:202**

Administrative actions by states, **3:210**

Administrative enforcement, **3:216**

Bonds, actions on, **3:211**

## INDEX

### SECURITIES LITIGATION UNIFORM STANDARDS ACT (SLUSA)—Cont'd

Chadbourne & Parke LLP v. Troice,  
**3:217 et seq.**  
Congressional intent, **3:201, 3:214**  
Consolidation restrictions, **3:206**  
Criminal enforcement, **3:216**  
Derivative suits, **3:212**  
Discovery limitations, **3:203**  
Effective date, **3:213**  
Enactment, **3:32**  
Government enforcement, **3:216**  
Incorporation state, actions under  
laws of, **3:209**  
Joinder restrictions, **3:206**  
Mass-type actions, **3:206**  
NMSIA scope compared, **3:207**  
Post-Chadbourne cases, **3:220 to  
3:222**  
Private rights, effect on, **3:215**  
PSLRA, **3:214**  
Recklessness, **3:214**  
Related class-type actions, **3:205**  
Retroactivity, **3:213**  
Scienter, **3:214**  
Securities covered, **3:207**  
State class action limitations  
Generally, **3:201 et seq.**  
Administrative actions by states,  
**3:210**  
Administrative enforcement, **3:216**  
Bonds, actions on, **3:211**  
Covered class actions, **3:204**  
Criminal enforcement, **3:216**  
Derivative suits, **3:212**  
Discovery limitations, **3:203**  
Government enforcement, **3:216**  
Incorporation state, actions under  
laws of, **3:209**  
Indenture contract actions, **3:211**  
Individual fraud claims, **3:215**  
Mass-type actions, **3:206**  
Permitted class actions, **3:208 et  
seq.**  
Private rights, effect on, **3:215**  
Recklessness, **3:214**  
Related class-type actions, **3:205**

### SECURITIES LITIGATION UNIFORM STANDARDS ACT (SLUSA)—Cont'd

State class action limitations—Cont'd  
Scienter, **3:214**  
Scope, **3:204 et seq.**  
Securities covered by SLUSA,  
**3:207**  
State governments, actions by,  
**3:210**

### SELECTIVE DISCLOSURE

See Disclosure (this index)

### SELF-DEALING

Coordinated investigations following  
subprime mortgage crisis,  
**13:338**

### SELF REGULATORY ORGANIZATIONS (SRO)

Amicus curiae participation in private  
litigation, **13:293**  
Arbitration procedures, **15:8**  
Auction Rate Securities (ARS) litiga-  
tion, coordinated SEC-state-  
SRO investigations, **13:322 et  
seq.**  
Authority  
Injunctions, **13:303**  
Investigations, **13:268**  
Orders, **13:278**  
Subpoenas, **13:279**  
Broker-dealer supervision liabilities  
Generally, **14:171 et seq.**  
Amex requirements, **14:174**  
Branch office managers, **14:178**  
Chief executive officers, **14:180**  
Compliance officers, **14:181**  
Court cases, **14:176**  
Deficiencies, **14:175**  
General counsel, **14:182**  
Heads of functional areas, **14:179**  
Individual responsibilities, **14:177  
et seq.**  
NASD requirements, **14:172**  
NYSE requirements, **14:173**  
Safe harbor programs, **14:175**  
Sanctions, **14:175**

**SELF REGULATORY ORGANIZATIONS (SRO)**  
**—Cont'd**  
 CFTC references of investigations to, **13:231**  
 Collateral effects of orders, **13:298**  
 Conferences with staff, **13:280**  
 Conflicts of interest in investigations, **13:277**  
 Counsel investigations, **13:281**  
 Criminal enforcement references, **13:304**  
 Disciplinary authority  
     Joint and several liability, **9:45**  
     References by arbitrators, **15:62**  
     Relationship to arbitration, **15:61**  
 Discovery, **13:286**  
 Documents, third party access to, **13:286**  
 Front running  
     Generally, **7:140**  
     Criticisms of SRO interpretations, **7:141**  
     Decisions, **7:142**  
     Insider trading, **7:168**  
 Implied liabilities under SRO rules  
     Generally, **14:62 et seq.**  
     Arbitration, **14:72**  
     Buttrey doctrine, **14:65**  
     Colonial Realty doctrine, **14:64**  
     Contraction era, **14:71**  
     Court cases, **14:64 et seq.**  
     Expansion era, **14:63 et seq.**  
 Informal enforcement actions, **13:292**  
 Informal warnings, **13:289**  
 Information requests, **13:273**  
 Injunctions, **13:303**  
 Insider trading, front running, **7:168**  
 Interrogations, **13:283**  
 Investigations  
     Generally, **13:1 et seq.**  
     See also Investigations (this index)  
 Negotiations with  
     Generally, **13:308 et seq.**  
     Advantages and disadvantages, **13:310**  
     Considerations, **13:312**  
     Objectives, **13:311**

**SELF REGULATORY ORGANIZATIONS (SRO)**  
**—Cont'd**  
 Orders  
     Generally, **13:278**  
     Collateral effects of orders, **13:298**  
     Duration of orders, **13:300**  
 Outcomes of investigations, **13:287 et seq.**  
 Public reports of investigations, **13:291**  
 Reports of investigations, **13:291**  
 Requests for information, **13:273**  
 Right to counsel in investigations, **13:276**  
 SEC investigations, information sharing by Office of Market Intelligence, **20:14**  
 Staff conferences, **13:280**  
 Subpoena power, **13:270, 13:279**  
 Suitability rules  
     Generally, **14:183 et seq.**  
     See also Suitability (this index)  
     Chicago Board Options Exchange (CBOE), **14:192**  
     Disciplinary actions, **14:194**  
     FINRA Rule 2090, know your customer, **14:191**  
     FINRA Rule 2111, **14:186**  
     FINRA Rule 2111(a), **14:187, 14:188**  
     FINRA rules generally, **14:185**  
     Inquiry duties of brokers, **14:189**  
     Institutional investors, **14:190**  
     Investment strategy, **14:188**  
     Know your customer, **14:191**  
     Municipal securities, **14:193**  
     NASD IM-2320-3, **14:190**  
     NASD rules generally, **14:185**  
     Options, **14:192**  
     Recommendations to customers, **14:187**  
 Testimony  
     Generally, **13:282 et seq.**  
     Interrogations, **13:283**  
     Preparing witnesses, **13:282**  
     Transcripts, **13:284**

INDEX

**SELF REGULATORY**

**ORGANIZATIONS (SRO)**

**—Cont'd**

Transcripts

Generally, **13:284**

Third party access to, **13:286**

Warnings, **13:289**

Wells submission equivalents

Generally, **13:306**

Character, **13:307**

**SENIOR INVESTOR FINANCIAL ABUSE**

Generally, **23:1**

Compliance practices, **23:3**

Enforcement actions by regulators, **23:2**

Protection against, **23:3**

**SENIOR MANAGEMENT**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

Mutual fund violations, **17:19**

**SENTENCING**

Insiders and inside trading, Raj Rajaratnam criminal case, **21:28 to 21:49**

**SERVICE OF PROCESS**

See Process (this index)

**SETTLEMENT**

See Compromise and Settlement (this index)

**703 SLUSH FUND**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

**SHAREHOLDERS**

Insider trading liability, **7:651**

Securities class action

Freeze out mergers, claims of minority, **2:5**

Unfair terms, effect of shareholder votes as to

Generally, **5:146**

Reasons and policies, **5:151**

**SHIFTING COUNTERPARTIES**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

**SHORT SALES**

Insider short sales, **7:157**

**SHORT SALES—Cont'd**

Manipulation, **7:137**

NASD risk disclosure requirements, **6:287**

**SHORT SWING TRADING**

SEA § 16(b), **7:156**

**SHOULD HAVE KNOWN**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

**SONJA KOHN**

Madoff feeder funds, globalization, **20:21**

**SPECIAL PURPOSE**

**ACQUISITION COMPANIES (SPACS)**

Overview, **28:1**

Private damage actions, **28:3**

SEC

Disclosure guidance, **28:1**

Enforcement actions, **28:2**

Proposed rule changes, **28:4**

Senator Elizabeth Warren report, **28:4**

**SPECIFICITY**

Investigations, **13:104**

Materiality factors, **8:35**

**SPLIT-STRIKE CONVERSION**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6**

**STANDARD AND POOR'S RATINGS**

Coordinated investigations following subprime mortgage crisis, **13:338**

**STANDING**

Generally, **8:258 et seq.**

See also Parties; Private Actions (this index)

State law, **6:196**

Suability, meaning of generally, **8:293**

Tender offers, standing to challenge

Generally, **6:124**

Implied rights, **6:124**

Issuer offers, **6:143**

**STANDING—Cont'd**

- Tender offers, standing to challenge—Cont'd
  - Offerees
    - Nontendering, **6:126**
    - Tendering, **6:125**
  - Offerors, **6:129**
  - Target companies, **6:128**
  - Tenderees
    - Generally, **6:125**
    - Nontendering, **6:126**
    - Undecided, **6:127**
    - Third parties, **6:130**

**STATE AGENCIES**

- Investigations (this index)

**STATE LAW**

- Generally, **3:184 et seq.**
- Administrative actions by states, **3:210**
- Administrative enforcement
  - Generally, **13:318**
  - Effect of SLUSA, **3:216**
- Auction Rate Security (ARS) litigation. Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, below
- Authority of state agencies, **13:314**
- Blue sky laws
  - Generally, **3:186**
  - Corrections of disclosures, **6:292**
  - Crowdfunding, **14:222**
  - Defendant's intent, **8:61**
  - Insider trading, **7:154**
  - Joint and several liability, **9:21**
  - Joint liabilities, **8:262**
  - Materiality, **8:7**
  - Parties to fraud actions, **8:262**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:62**
  - Privity, **8:262**
  - Reliance, **8:488**
- Bonds, actions on, **3:211**
- California statutes, insider trading, **App G**
- CFTC references of investigations to, **13:231**
- Chadbourne & Parke LLP v. Troice, **3:217 et seq.**
- Churning actions, **14:137 et seq.**

**STATE LAW—Cont'd**

- Class action limitations under SLUSA
  - Generally, **3:201 et seq.**
  - Abolition of state claims, **3:202**
  - Administrative actions by states, **3:210**
  - Administrative enforcement, **3:216**
  - Bonds, actions on, **3:211**
  - Congressional intent, **3:201**
  - Covered class actions, **3:204**
  - Criminal enforcement, **3:216**
  - Derivative suits, **3:212**
  - Discovery limitations, **3:203**
  - Government enforcement, **3:216**
  - Incorporation state, actions under laws of, **3:209**
  - Indenture contract actions, **3:211**
  - Individual fraud claims, **3:215**
  - Mass-type actions, **3:206**
  - Permitted class actions, **3:208 et seq.**
  - Private rights, effect on, **3:215**
  - Recklessness, **3:214**
  - Related class-type actions, **3:205**
  - Scienter, **3:214**
  - Scope, **3:204 et seq.**
  - Securities covered by SLUSA, **3:207**
  - State governments, actions by, **3:210**
- Commodities fraud, investigations, **13:197**
- Common law, **3:185**
- Consolidation, SLUSA restrictions, **3:206**
- Contraction era, **3:184**
- Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations
  - Generally, **13:322 et seq.**
  - ARS securities and market, **13:325**
  - ARS seller management liability, **13:330**
  - ARS violations, **13:326**
  - Auction Rate Security (ARS) litigation, generally, **13:323**
  - Criminal aspects, **13:331**

## INDEX

### STATE LAW—Cont'd

- Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations—Cont'd
  - Government regulatory suits, **13:329**
  - Investor recovery as objective, **13:324**
  - Private litigation, **13:327, 13:328**
  - State law, private litigation, **13:328**
- Court v Ash, **3:99**
- Criminal enforcement
  - Generally, **13:320**
  - Effect of SLUSA, **3:216**
- Defendant's intent, **8:61**
- Expansion era, **3:184**
- Federal vs state private actions, relative advantages, **3:200**
- Incorporation state, actions under laws of, **3:209**
- Injunctions, **13:319**
- Insider trading
  - Generally, **7:153**
  - Blue sky law, **7:154**
  - California statutes, **App G**
- Insurance companies
  - McCarran Act, **6:203**
  - Proxy rules, applicability of, **6:202, 6:203**
- Investigations
  - Generally, **13:313 et seq. 13:318**
  - Administrative enforcement, **13:318**
  - Authority of state agencies, **13:314**
  - Coordinated SEC-state-SRO investigations, above
  - Criminal prosecutions, **13:320**
  - Injunctions, **13:319**
  - Outcomes, **13:317**
  - References of to state authorities
    - CFTC references, **13:231**
    - SEC references, **13:73**
    - SRO references, **13:290**
  - Settlements, **13:321**
  - Subpoenas, **13:315**
- Joinder, SLUSA restrictions, **3:206**
- Joint and several liability, **9:20**
- Joint liabilities, **8:262**
- Materiality, **8:7**

### STATE LAW—Cont'd

- Mergers
    - Generally, **6:153, 6:191 et seq.**
    - Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**
    - Delaware law, **6:196**
    - Effect of merger or dissolution, **6:194**
    - Equitable approach, **6:197**
    - Standing approach, **6:196**
  - Parties to fraud actions, **8:262**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:62**
  - Post-Chadbourne cases, **3:220 to 3:222**
  - Privity, **8:262**
  - Proxies and proxy solicitations
    - Generally, **6:191 et seq.**
    - Appraisal rights, **6:192, 6:193**
    - Delaware law, **6:196**
    - Effect of merger or dissolution, **6:194**
    - Equitable approach, **6:197**
    - Standing approach, **6:196**
  - Punitive damages, **14:107 et seq.**
  - References of investigation to state authorities
    - CFTC references, **13:231**
    - SEC references, **13:73**
    - SRO references, **13:290**
  - Reliance, **8:488**
  - SEC references of investigations to, **13:73**
  - Settlements of investigations, **13:321**
  - SRO references of investigations to, **13:290**
  - Standing, **6:196**
  - Subpoenas, state agency investigations, **13:315**
  - Suitability claims
    - Generally, **14:200 et seq.**
    - Consumer fraud, **14:204**
    - Fiduciary breaches, **14:202**
    - Negligence, **14:203**
    - Statutory violations, **14:201**
  - Traditional areas, **3:99**
  - What is a security, **5:19**
- ### STATE OF MIND
- Intent (this index)
  - Knowledge (this index)

**STATE OF MIND—Cont'd**

Purpose (this index)

Scienter (this index)

**STATURE IN SECURITIES  
INDUSTRY**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

**STATUTES OF LIMITATION**

See Limitation of Actions (this index)

**STEIN DECISION**

SEC investigation, attorney-client  
privileges, **13:39 et seq.**

**STRICT LIABILITY**

Innocent defendants, **8:243**

**SUBJECT MATTER  
JURISDICTION**

Jurisdiction, foreign cubed case,  
**11:21**

**SUBPOENAS**

See also Securities and Exchange  
Commission (this index)

CFTC, **13:200**

Investigations

See also Investigations (this index)

CFTC, **13:200**

SROs, **13:270**

State agencies, **13:315**

SROs, **13:270**

State agency investigations, **13:315**

**SUBSTANTIAL ASSISTANCE**

Generally, **8:359 et seq.**

See also Aider-Abettors (this index)

**SUBSTANTIAL PARTICIPATION**

Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:89**

**SUITABILITY**

Generally, **14:183 et seq.**

Arbitration, **14:205**

Consumer fraud claims, **14:204**

Damage claims, **14:196 et seq.**

Fiduciary breaches, **14:202**

Fiduciary duties, **14:206**

Fraud claims, **14:199**

Inquiry duties of brokers, **14:189**

Institutional investors, **14:190**

**SUITABILITY—Cont'd**

Misrepresentation, claims based on,  
**14:198**

Negligence claims, **14:203**

Option trading, **14:192**

Private damage claims, **14:196 et  
seq.**

Recommendations to customers,  
**14:186**

Retirement accounts, **14:206**

Rule 10b-5 claims, **14:197 et seq.**

SEA § 10(b) claims, **14:197 et seq.**

SEC rules, **14:195**

SRO rules

Chicago Board Options Exchange  
(CBOE), **14:192**

Disciplinary actions, **14:194**

FINRA Rule 2090, know your  
customer, **14:191**

FINRA Rule 2111, **14:186**

FINRA Rule 2111(a), **14:187,  
14:188**

FINRA rules generally, **14:185**

Inquiry duties of brokers, **14:189**

Institutional investors, **14:190**

Investment strategy, **14:188**

Know your customer, **14:191**

Municipal securities, **14:193**

NASD IM-2320-3, **14:190**

NASD rules generally, **14:185**

Options, **14:192**

Recommendations to customers,  
**14:187**

State law claims

Generally, **14:200 et seq.**

Consumer fraud, **14:204**

Fiduciary breaches, **14:202**

Negligence, **14:203**

Statutory violations, **14:201**

**SUPERVISORS OF STOCK  
TRADING DESKS**

Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5**

**SUPPLEMENTARY  
COMMUNICATIONS**

Generally, **6:239**

See also Disclosure (this index)

## INDEX

### SUPREME COURT

- Indirect-impersonal dealing, scheme to defraud, Zandford case, **7:117**
- Omnicare decision, fact vs. opinion standard, **8:3**
- Private actions, loss causation, **8:556 to 8:570**
- Whistleblowers (this index)

### TASK FORCE

- SEC's ESG-related enforcement actions, **29:2**

### TAX FRAUD

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:6, 20:9**

### TECHNICAL SUPPORT

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:5, 20:7**

### TENDER OFFER FRAUD

- See also Proxy Fraud (this index)
- Antifraud provisions, applicability to
  - Generally, **6:22 et seq.**
  - Connection, **6:26**
  - Jurisdictional means, **6:27**
  - Opposition, applicability to, **6:23**
  - Proxy rules, **6:24**
  - SEA § 14(e), **6:24**
- Banks, regulation of, **6:29**
- Challenging
  - Balance of equities, **6:134**
  - Clean hands, **6:136**
  - Final relief, **6:140**
  - Inadequacy of other remedies, **6:133**
  - Irreparable injuries, **6:133**
  - Preliminary, **6:131 et seq.**
  - Probability of success, **6:132**
  - Proof elements, **6:132**
  - Relief available generally, **6:131 et seq.**
  - SEC actions, **6:138**
  - Standing to challenge, below
  - Time for relief, **6:139**
  - Types of relief, **6:135**
- Congressional intent
  - Generally, **6:16 et seq.**
  - Disclosure, **6:17**
  - Fairness, **6:19**
  - Investor protection, **6:17**

### TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd

- Congressional intent—Cont'd
  - Target management protection, **6:18**
- Connection with requirement, **7:371**
- Definitional exclusions, **6:40**
- Definitions, **6:31**
- Direct-impersonal dealing
  - Generally, **6:33**
  - Disclosure corrections, **6:311**
  - Issuer offer disclosure requirements, **6:144**
- Disclosure requirements
  - Regulated offers
    - Generally, **6:41**
    - Arrangements, **6:47**
    - Changes, effects of
      - Generally, **6:49**
      - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Control change information, **6:61**
  - Control purposes, **6:64**
  - Date of information
    - Generally, **6:49**
    - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Deviation from stated plans, **6:70**
  - Funds, source of, **6:44**
  - Fund source data, **6:44**
  - Groups, data on, **6:48**
  - Ideas vs plans, **6:68**
  - Issuer offers, **6:144**
  - Noncompliance, effects of, **6:74**
  - Offer data, **6:43**
  - Offeror data, **6:42**
  - Ownership, **6:55**
  - Plans and proposals, **6:45, 6:66 et seq.**
- Publicity
  - Offeror, **6:94**
  - Target company, **6:98**
  - Third persons, **6:108**

**TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Disclosure requirements—Cont'd
  - Regulated offers—Cont'd
    - Purposes, **6:45, 6:62 et seq.**
    - Sanctions for noncompliance, **6:74**
  - SEC filings
    - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**
    - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
    - Date of information, **6:52**
    - Other disseminations, **6:54**
    - Processing, **6:53**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
    - Time of filing, **6:50**
  - Securities, data on, **6:46**
  - Ten percent threshold
    - Generally, **6:55 et seq.**
    - Changes, effect of, **6:57**
    - Date of information, **6:57**
    - Exemptions, **6:60**
    - Other disseminations, **6:59**
    - Ownership, **6:55**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:56**
    - SEC processing, **6:58**
  - Understandings, **6:47**
  - Unregulated offers
    - Generally, **6:113**
  - Insiders, **6:114**
  - Outsiders
    - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
    - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
    - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
    - Other information, **6:118**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
    - Policy factors, **6:120**
    - Target company, **6:121**
    - Third persons, **6:122**
  - Disclosures in offers, **7:288**
  - Exchange offers, **6:36**
  - Excluded offers, **6:38 et seq.**
  - Express exclusions, **6:39**
  - Fairness, Congressional intent, **6:19**
  - Five percent offers
    - Generally, **6:32**
    - Base for percentages, **6:34**
  - Foreign laws, **6:15**

**TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing
  - Disclosures in, **7:288**
- Inside information re
  - Generally, **7:267**
- Acquisitions
  - Generally, **7:248 et seq.**
- Agreements
  - Disclosure not required, **7:261**
  - Disclosure required, **7:260**
  - Company, trading by, **7:256**
  - Definitions, **7:250**
  - Disclosure document obligations, **7:259**
  - Leaks, **7:255**
  - Materiality of negotiated acquisitions, **7:262 et seq.**
  - Preliminary negotiations
    - Misleading statements, **7:253**
    - No statement made, **7:252**
    - Other situations, **7:254**
  - Prior statement now misleading, **7:257**
  - Rumors, **7:255**
  - Stages of negotiated acquisitions, **7:249**
  - Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
  - When disclosure of agreement required, **7:260**
  - When disclosure required, **7:251 et seq.**
- Connection with requirement, **7:371**
- Materiality, **7:270**
- Pending offers, **7:214**
- Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**
- Target response to tender offers, **7:258**
- When disclosure required, **7:269**
- Target response to tender offers, disclosure of, **7:258**
- Inside information re
  - Generally, **7:267**
  - Materiality, **7:270**

## INDEX

### TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd

- Inside information re—Cont'd
  - Pending offers, **7:214**
  - Stages of nonnegotiated acquisitions, **7:268**
  - When disclosure required, **7:269**
- Insiders, offers by
  - Generally, **6:111**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:114**
- Insurance company offers, **6:30**
- Investment Bankers (this index)
- Issuer offers
  - Generally, **6:141**
  - Disclosure requirements, **6:144**
  - Price, **6:142**
  - Redemptions, **6:145**
  - Standing to challenge, **6:143**
- Joint and several liability, **9:30**
- Managers, protection, **6:18**
- Market activities
  - Offeror
    - Before offer, **6:97**
    - During offer, **6:96**
  - Target company
    - Generally, **6:106 et seq.**
    - Filing, **6:107**
    - Information to be disclosed, **6:107**
    - Scope of regulation, **6:106**
    - Third persons, **6:109**
- Materiality, **8:57**
- Medium of payment, **6:36**
- Opposition, applicability of antifraud provisions to, **6:23**
- Outsiders, offers by
  - Generally, **6:112**
  - Disclosures
    - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
    - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
    - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
    - Other information, **6:118**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
    - Policy factors, **6:120**
- Price
  - Increases, effect of, **6:90 et seq.**
  - Issuer offers, **6:142**
  - Third-party offers, **6:123**
- Privity, **8:285**

### TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd

- Proxy rule antifraud provisions, applicability to, **6:24**
- Proxy solicitations
  - Generally, **6:13 et seq.**
  - See also Proxy Fraud (this index)
- Publicity
  - Offeror
    - Before offer, **6:95**
    - During offer, **6:94**
  - Target company
    - Generally, **6:98, 6:101**
    - Attack, modes of, **6:105**
    - Date of information, **6:101**
    - Exemptions, **6:103**
    - Other disseminations, **6:102**
    - Scope of antifraud provisions, **6:104**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:100**
    - Time of filing, **6:99**
  - Third persons, **6:108**
- Recommendations
  - Offeror
    - Before offer, **6:95**
    - During offer, **6:94**
  - Third persons, **6:108**
- Scienter in fraud actions
  - Defendant's intent, **8:136**
  - Defendant's knowledge and belief
    - Generally, **8:133 et seq.**
    - Burden of proof, **8:134**
    - Proof, **8:135**
  - Intent, **8:136**
  - Plaintiff's knowledge, **8:137**
  - Pleading, **8:138**
- SEA § 14(e) antifraud provisions, applicability to, **6:24**
- Special bids, **6:37**
- Standing to challenge transaction
  - Generally, **6:124**
  - Implied rights, **6:124**
  - Issuer offers, **6:143**
- Offerees
  - Nontendering, **6:126**
  - Tendering, **6:125**
- Offerors, **6:129**
- Target companies, **6:128**

**TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Standing to challenge transaction
  - Cont'd
  - Tenderees
    - Generally, **6:125**
    - Nontendering, **6:126**
    - Undecided, **6:127**
  - Third parties, **6:130**
- State laws, **6:14**
- Target company disclosures, **6:121**
- Ten day pro rata takeup
  - Exemptions, **6:88**
  - Procedures, **6:87**
  - Purpose, **6:86**
- Terms
  - Generally, **6:75 et seq.**
  - Duration of offer, **6:89**
  - Freedom of offerer, degrees of, **6:75**
  - Ten day pro rata takeup, above
  - Withdrawal rights
    - Generally, **6:80 et seq.**
    - Procedure, **6:82**
    - Purpose, **6:81**
    - Voluntary, **6:84**
- Third-party offers
  - Antifraud provisions, applicability to
    - Generally, **6:22 et seq.**
    - Connection, **6:26**
    - Jurisdictional means, **6:27**
    - Opposition, applicability to, **6:23**
    - Proxy rules, **6:24**
    - SEA § 14(e), **6:24**
  - Banks, regulation of, **6:29**
- Challenging
  - Balance of equities, **6:134**
  - Clean hands, **6:136**
  - Final relief, **6:140**
  - Inadequacy of other remedies, **6:133**
  - Irreparable injuries, **6:133**
  - Preliminary, **6:131 et seq.**
  - Probability of success, **6:132**
  - Proof elements, **6:132**
  - Relief available, **6:131 et seq.**
  - SEC actions, **6:138**

**TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Third-party offers—Cont'd
  - Challenging—Cont'd
    - Standing to challenge, below
    - Time for relief, **6:139**
    - Types of relief, **6:135**
  - Congressional intent
    - Generally, **6:16 et seq.**
    - Disclosure, **6:17**
    - Fairness, **6:19**
    - Investor protection, **6:17**
    - Target management protection, **6:18**
  - Coverage of regulations, **6:28 et seq.**
  - Definitional exclusions, **6:40**
  - Direct-impersonal dealings, **6:33**
  - Disclosure requirements
    - Generally, **6:41**
    - Arrangements, **6:47**
    - Changes, effects of
      - Generally, **6:49**
      - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Control change information, **6:61**
  - Control purposes, **6:64**
  - Date of information
    - Generally, **6:49**
    - SEC filings, **6:52**
    - Ten percent threshold disclosure requirements, **6:57**
  - Deviation from stated plans, **6:70**
  - Funds, source of, **6:44**
  - Fund source data, **6:44**
  - Groups, data on, **6:48**
  - Ideas vs plans, **6:68**
  - Noncompliance, effects of, **6:74**
  - Offer data, **6:43**
  - Ownership, **6:55**
  - Plans and proposals, **6:45, 6:66 et seq.**
  - Purposes, **6:45, 6:62 et seq.**

## INDEX

### TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd

- Third-party offers—Cont'd
  - Disclosure requirements—Cont'd
    - Sanctions for noncompliance, **6:74**
  - SEC filings
    - Generally, **6:50 et seq.**
    - Changes, effects of, **6:52**
    - Date of information, **6:52**
    - Other disseminations, **6:54**
    - Processing, **6:53**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:51**
    - Time of filing, **6:50**
  - Securities, data on, **6:46**
  - Ten percent threshold
    - Generally, **6:55 et seq.**
    - Changes, effect of, **6:57**
    - Date of information, **6:57**
    - Exemptions, **6:60**
    - Other disseminations, **6:59**
    - Ownership, **6:55**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:56**
    - SEC processing, **6:58**
  - Understandings, **6:47**
  - Unregulated offers
    - Generally, **6:113**
    - Insiders, **6:114**
    - Outsiders
      - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
      - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
      - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
      - Other information, **6:118**
      - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
      - Policy factors, **6:120**
      - Target company, **6:121**
      - Third persons, **6:122**
  - Excluded offers, **6:38 et seq.**
  - Express exclusions, **6:39**
  - Foreign laws, **6:15**
  - Insiders, offers by
    - Generally, **6:111**
    - Disclosure requirements, **6:114**
  - Insurance companies, **6:30**
  - Market activities
    - Offeror
      - Before offer, **6:97**
      - During offer, **6:96**

### TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd

- Third-party offers—Cont'd
  - Market activities—Cont'd
    - Target company
      - Generally, **6:106 et seq.**
      - Filing, **6:107**
      - Information to be disclosed, **6:107**
      - Scope of regulation, **6:106**
    - Third persons, **6:109**
- Outsiders, offers by
  - Generally, **6:112**
  - Disclosures
    - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
    - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
    - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
    - Other information, **6:118**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
    - Policy factors, **6:120**
- Price, **6:123**
- Price increases, effect of, **6:90 et seq.**
- Publicity
  - Offeror
    - Before offer, **6:95**
    - During offer, **6:94**
  - Target company
    - Generally, **6:98**
    - Attack, modes of, **6:105**
    - Change, effect of, **6:101**
    - Date of information, **6:101**
    - Exemptions, **6:103**
    - Other disseminations, **6:102**
    - Scope of antifraud provisions, **6:104**
    - Scope of disclosure, **6:100**
    - Time of filing, **6:99**
    - Third persons, **6:108**
- Recommendations
  - Offeror
    - Before offer, **6:95**
    - During offer, **6:94**
  - Third persons, **6:108**
- Regulated offers
  - Generally, **6:13 et seq.**
  - Williams Bill, **6:13**

**TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Third-party offers—Cont'd
  - Scope of regulation
    - Generally, **6:28 et seq., 6:31 et seq.**
    - Definitions, **6:31**
    - Direct-impersonal dealings, **6:33**
    - Exchange offers, **6:36**
    - Five percent offers
      - Generally, **6:32**
      - Base for percentages, **6:34**
    - Jurisdictional means, **6:35**
    - Medium of payment, **6:36**
    - Special bids, **6:37**
    - Two percent offers
      - Generally, **6:32**
      - Base for percentages, **6:34**
  - Standing to challenge transaction
    - Generally, **6:124**
    - Implied rights, **6:124**
    - Nontendering offerees, **6:126**
    - Offerees, tendering, **6:125**
    - Offerors, **6:129**
    - Target companies, **6:128**
  - Tenderees
    - Nontendering, **6:126**
    - Undecided, **6:127**
    - Tendering offerees, **6:125**
    - Third parties, **6:130**
  - State laws, **6:14**
  - Target company disclosures, **6:121**
  - Ten day pro rata takeover
    - Generally, **6:85 et seq.**
    - Exemptions, **6:88**
    - Procedures, **6:87**
    - Purpose, **6:86**
  - Terms
    - Generally, **6:75 et seq.**
    - Duration of offer, **6:89**
    - Freedom of offerer, degrees of, **6:75**
    - Ten day pro rata takeover, above
    - Withdrawal rights
      - Generally, **6:80 et seq.**
      - Exemptions, **6:83**
      - Procedure, **6:82**
      - Purpose, **6:81**
      - Voluntary, **6:84**

**TENDER OFFER FRAUD—Cont'd**

- Third-party offers—Cont'd
  - Third person disclosures, **6:122**
  - Unregulated offers
    - Generally, **6:110**
  - Insiders
    - Generally, **6:111**
    - Disclosure requirements, **6:114**
  - Outsiders
    - Generally, **6:112**
  - Disclosures
    - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
    - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
    - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
    - Other information, **6:118**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
    - Policy factors, **6:120**
  - Target company disclosures, **6:121**
    - Third party disclosures, **6:122**
    - Williams Bill, **6:13**
  - Third person disclosures, **6:122**
  - Two percent offers
    - Generally, **6:32**
    - Base for percentages, **6:34**
  - Types of direct-impersonal dealings, **6:1**
  - Unregulated tender offers
    - Generally, **6:110**
  - Insiders
    - Generally, **6:111**
    - Disclosure requirements, **6:114**
  - Outsiders
    - Generally, **6:112**
  - Disclosures
    - Generally, **6:115 et seq.**
    - Issuer, information about, **6:117**
    - Offer, identity of, **6:119**
    - Other information, **6:118**
    - Plans and proposals, **6:116**
    - Policy factors, **6:120**
  - Target company disclosures, **6:121**
  - Third person disclosures, **6:122**
  - Williams Bill, **6:13**

## INDEX

### TIPPERS AND TIPPEES

Generally, **7:623 et seq.**  
See also *Insiders and Insider Trading*  
(this index)

### TORTS

Common Law Fraud (this index)  
Joint and Several Liability (this  
index)

### TRADES AND TRADING

Broker-Dealer Liability (this index)  
Definition, **1:2**  
Direct-Impersonal Dealing (this  
index)  
Direct-Personal Dealing (this index)  
Illegal, cybersecurity, **26:2, 26:3**  
Indirect-Impersonal Dealing (this  
index)  
Mutual Fund Violations (this index)  
Private transaction liabilities, **5:8**

### TRANSACTION PLANNING

Generally, **12:10 et seq.**  
Antiwaiver provision of Rule 10b-5,  
**12:11**  
Arbitration provisions, **12:11**  
Attorneys' fees allocations, **9:75**  
Contribution provisions, **9:75**  
Costs allocations, **9:75**  
Disclaimers, **8:514, 12:11**  
Disclosures of risk factors, **12:11**  
Fairness, techniques promoting,  
**12:13**  
Indemnification provisions, **12:11**  
Integration clauses, **8:513**  
No-action clauses, **12:11**  
Procedures, **12:12**  
Releases of liability, **12:11**  
Reliance, anti-reliance devices, **8:511  
et seq.**  
Representation, **12:11**  
Risk factors, disclosures of, **12:11**  
Waivers of Rule 10b-5, **12:11**  
Warranties, **12:11**

### TRANSCRIPTS

CFTC investigations, **13:222**  
SEC investigations, **13:30**  
SRO investigations, **13:284**

### TRAVEL EXPENSES

Foreign Corrupt Practices Act  
(FCPA), affirmative defense,  
**19:4**

### TREMONT-RYE

Madoff feeder funds, **20:20**

### TRUSTEES

Whistleblower bounty program, orig-  
inal information, **22:9**

### UNDERWRITERS

See also *Broker-Dealer Liability* (this  
index)  
Court cases, **14:6**  
Definition, **14:4**  
Due diligence defense  
Generally, **14:5, 14:14**  
SEC view, **14:9**  
Non-managing underwriters, **14:13**  
Participating underwriters, **14:13**  
Reasonable investigation defense  
Generally, **14:5**  
Integrated disclosure systems, **14:7**  
SEC Rule 176, **14:8**  
SA § 11 liabilities, **14:4**  
Subprime mortgage crisis,  
coordinated investigations,  
**13:335**

### UNFAIR TERMS

Generally, **5:142 et seq.**  
Actual control, **5:156**  
Arms length transactions  
Generally, **5:144**  
Reasons and policies, **5:149**  
Book value, **5:162**  
Burden of proof, **5:153**  
Business decisions as value determin-  
ers, **5:171**  
Capitalization of earnings as test of  
value, **5:161**  
Conflict transactions  
Generally, **5:145**  
Reasons and policies, **5:150**  
Control, proof of, **5:155**  
Control premiums and discounts,  
**5:166**  
Control sales, **5:191**

**UNFAIR TERMS—Cont'd**

- Court cases, **5:183 et seq.**
- Definition, **5:143**
- Disclosure
  - Generally, **5:187 et seq.**
  - Information disclosed, **5:189**
  - Method of disclosure, **5:188**
  - Persons to whom disclosure made, **5:190**
- Discounts, control, **5:166**
- Earnings tests of value, **5:161**
- Fair terms, effect of, **5:147**
- Full disclosure, effect of
  - Generally, **5:146**
  - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
- Influence, proof of, **5:155**
- Investment bankers
  - Generally, **5:172 et seq.**
  - Controlled company bankers, **5:175**
  - Controlling company bankers, **5:177**
  - Dual representation bankers, **5:176**
  - No banker transactions, **5:178**
  - Opinions of, challenging, **5:181**
  - Prior relations of, **5:182**
  - Qualities of bankers, **5:173**
  - Roles of bankers, **5:174**
  - Successive bankers, **5:179**
  - Trials, bankers for, **5:180**
- Legal decisions as value determiners, **5:170**
- Liquidation value, **5:163**
- Market prices as value indicators, **5:160**
- No banker transactions, **5:178**
- Pleading, **5:152**
- Policies, **5:148 et seq.**
- Potential control, **5:156**
- Premiums, control, **5:166**
- Proof of elements, **5:154**
- Range of fairness, **5:143**
- Reasons, **5:148 et seq.**
- Shareholder votes, effect of
  - Generally, **5:146**
  - Reasons and policies, **5:151**
- Tax factors in value determination, **5:164**

**UNFAIR TERMS—Cont'd**

- Time factors in value determination, **5:165**
- Value determiners, **5:169 et seq.**
- Value indicators, **5:158 et seq.**

**UNINSURED PRODUCTS**

- NASD risk disclosure requirements, **6:288**

**UN IRAQI OIL-FOR-FOOD PROGRAM**

- Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (FCPA), **19:7**

**UNITEDHEALTH GROUP INC.**

- Backdating of stock options, **18:1, 18:5, 18:8, 18:10**

**UNREASONABLE CONDUCT**

- Generally, **8:229 et seq.**
- Burden of proof, **8:238**
- Criminal cases, **8:236**
- Injunctions, **8:234**
- Insufficiency, **8:237**
- Necessity, **8:231, 8:232**
- Proof, **8:239**
- Scienter, **8:234**
- SEC decisions, **8:235**
- Sufficiency, **8:233 et seq.**
- Versions of scienter, relations among, **8:230**

**UTE INDIANS**

- Private actions, **8:484, 8:559**

**VAGUENESS**

- Materiality factors, **8:35**

**VALUE**

- Asset valuation
  - Generally, **6:263 et seq.**
  - See also Assets (this index)
- Backdating of Stock Options (this index)
- Business decisions as determiners, **5:171**
- Control premiums and discounts, **5:166**
- Determiners, **5:169 et seq.**
- Discounts, control, **5:166**

## INDEX

### VALUE—Cont'd

- Indicators
  - Generally, **5:158 et seq.**
  - Book value, **5:162**
  - Capitalization of earnings as test of value, **5:161**
  - Earnings capitalization, **5:161**
  - Earnings tests of value, **5:161**
  - Liquidation value, **5:163**
  - Market prices as, **5:160**
  - Legal decisions as determiners, **5:170**
  - Premiums, control, **5:166**
  - Tax factors in value determination, **5:164**
  - Time factors in value determination, **5:165**

### VARIABLE ANNUITIES

- What is a security, **5:23**

### VENUE

- Generally, **11:39**

### VERIFICATION OF RETURNS

- Madoff Ponzi scheme, **20:2**

### VICARIOUS LIABILITY

- See also Control Person Liability; Parties (this index)
- Broker-dealer supervisory duties
  - Generally, **14:164 et seq.**
  - Amex requirements, **14:174**
  - Branch office managers, **14:178**
  - Chief executive officers, **14:180**
  - Compliance officers, **14:181**
  - Court cases, **14:176**
  - Deficiencies, **14:175**
  - General counsel, **14:182**
  - Heads of functional areas, **14:179**
  - Individual responsibilities, **14:177 et seq.**
  - Insider Trading and Securities Fraud Enforcement Act, **14:168**
  - NASD requirements, **14:172**
  - NYSE requirements, **14:173**
  - Rule 14e-3(b), **14:169**
  - Safe harbor programs, **14:175**
  - Sanctions, **14:175**
  - SEA § 15(b)(4)(D), **14:166**

### VICARIOUS LIABILITY—Cont'd

- Broker-dealer supervisory duties
  - Cont'd
  - SEA § 15(b)(4)(E), **14:165**
  - SEA § 15(b)(6), **14:165**
  - SEA § 19, **14:170**
  - SEA § 20(a), **14:167**
  - SRO requirements, **14:171 et seq.**
- Contribution (this index)
- Disgorgement sanctions, **7:431**
- Indemnification, **9:76**
- Insurance, **9:76**
- Joint and Several Liability (this index)
- Proportionate Liability (this index)

### VIRGINIA BANKSHARES

- Private actions, loss causation in Supreme Court decision, **8:566**

### VITESSE SEMICONDUCTOR CORP.

- Backdating of stock options, **18:1**

### VOLUNTARY ACT

- Whistleblower bounty program, voluntary submission of original information, **22:6**

### WASH SALES

- Manipulation, **7:121**

### WEISS DECISION

- SEC action against bond counsel issuing improper legal opinion, **8:442**

### WELLS SUBMISSIONS

- Generally, **13:158**
- Advantages and disadvantages, **13:160**
- Character, **13:159**
- Timeframe, **20:13**

### WHAT IS A SECURITY

- Generally, **5:9 et seq.**
- Alternative government regulation, **5:35**
- Certificates of deposit, **5:28**
- Characteristics of instrument in commerce, **5:39**

**WHAT IS A SECURITY—Cont'd**

Common elements in defining a security, **5:32 et seq.**  
 Context clause, **5:18**  
 Cooperative apartment corporation shares, **5:26**  
 Court cases, **5:20 et seq.**  
 Employee benefit plans  
     Generally, **5:42 et seq.**  
 Contributory plans  
     Involuntary, **5:46**  
     Voluntary, **5:48**  
 Defined plans, **5:49**  
 Distinguishing contributory from noncontributory, **5:52**  
 Distinguishing voluntary from involuntary plans, **5:51**  
 ERISA, preemptive effect of, **5:43**  
 ESOPs, **5:48**  
 Involuntary contributory plans, **5:46**  
 Involuntary noncontributory plans, **5:45**  
 Noncontributory plans  
     Involuntary, **5:45**  
     Voluntary, **5:47**  
 Pension plans, **5:49**  
 Relative importance of elements, **5:41**  
 Sales, **5:44**  
 Voluntary contributory plans, **5:48**  
 Voluntary noncontributory plans, **5:47**  
 Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**  
 Expectations of public, **5:40**  
 Flexible fund annuities, **5:24, 5:25**  
 Fractional interests in mineral rights, **5:21**  
 Guarantees, **5:15**  
 Howey test, **5:22**  
 Interest, **5:14**  
 International Brotherhood of Teamsters case, **5:27**  
 Investment risk as factor, **5:34**  
 Joiner Leasing Corp case, **5:21**  
 Judicial decisions, **5:20 et seq.**  
 Landreth Timber Co case, **5:29**  
 Marine Bank case, **5:28**

**WHAT IS A SECURITY—Cont'd**

Marketing as factor, **5:33**  
 Motivations of purchasers, **5:37**  
 Motivations of sellers, **5:38**  
 9 month notes, **5:17**  
 Notes, **5:30**  
 NSMIA, **3:189, 3:207**  
 Oil and gas interests  
     Generally, **5:16**  
     Fractional interests, **5:21**  
 Passive or active purchasers, **5:36**  
 Perceptions of public, **5:40**  
 Proxy rules, applicability of  
     Generally, **6:199 et seq.**  
     Insurance companies  
         Generally, **6:201**  
         Antifraud provisions, federal, **6:204**  
         Federal and state rules, **6:202**  
         McCarran Act, **6:203**  
     Investment companies, **6:205**  
     Public utility holding companies, **6:206**  
 Reeves v. Ernst & Young case, **5:30**  
 SA § 2(1)(a) definition  
     Generally, **5:10**  
     Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**  
     Guarantees, **5:15**  
     Interest, **5:14**  
     9 month notes, **5:17**  
     Oil and gas interests, **5:16**  
     SEA § 3(a)(10) differences, **5:12 et seq.**  
     SEA § 3(a)(10) similarities, **5:11**  
 SEA § 3(A)(10) definition  
     Generally, **5:10**  
     Evidence of indebtedness, **5:13**  
     Guarantees, **5:15**  
     Interest, **5:14**  
     9 month notes, **5:17**  
     Oil and gas interests, **5:16**  
     SA § 2(1)(a) differences, **5:12 et seq.**  
     SA § 2(1)(a) similarities, **5:11**  
 SEC v. Edwards case, **5:31**  
 SLUSA definition, **3:207**  
 State law definitions, **5:19**  
 Statutory definitions, **5:10 et seq.**

## INDEX

### WHAT IS A SECURITY—Cont'd

- United Benefit Life Ins Co case, **5:24**
- United Housing Foundation, Inc case, **5:26**
- Variable annuities, **5:23**

### WHISTLEBLOWERS

- Accountants, original information, **22:10**
- Administrative action covered, Whistleblower Bounty Program, **22:3**
- Administrative enforcement action success, information leading to, **22:14**
- Amicus curiae, Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:21**
- Anonymity, **22:16**
- Anti-retaliation actions and proceedings, **22:32**
- Attorney-client privilege as to original information, **22:8**
- Bounty programs
  - Dodd-Frank Whistleblower Bounty Program, **22:1 et seq.**
  - Duties and responsibilities, **22:35 et seq.**
  - Case law, **22:41**
  - Dodd-Frank, **22:38**
  - NY Ethics Committee opinion 746, **22:40**
  - Sarbanes-Oxley Act, SEC Series 205, **22:37**
  - SEC v. National Student Marketing Corp., **22:36**
  - State rules of professional conduct, **22:39**
  - 1988 Program under SEA § 21A(e), **22:2**
  - SEC investigations, bounties to whistleblowers, **20:15**
- Case law, **22:25 to 22:28**
- Case law, bounty program, duties and responsibilities, **22:41**
- Claims, decisions, **22:15**
- Compliance personnel, original information, **22:9**
- Criminal enforcement, retaliation, **22:16**

### WHISTLEBLOWERS—Cont'd

- Definition of whistleblower, **22:5, 22:23 et seq.**
- Definitions, **22:23 et seq.**
- Digital Realty Trust, Inc. v. Somers
  - Generally, **22:23, 22:28**
  - Decisions reversed by, **22:26**
  - Decisions vindicated by, **22:27**
- Dodd-Frank Whistleblower Bounty Program
  - Administrative action covered, **22:3**
  - Definition, **22:5, 22:23, 22:28**
  - Duties and responsibilities, **22:38**
  - Judicial action covered, **22:3**
  - Original information, voluntary submission, **22:6**
  - Protection, **22:16 et seq.**
  - Related action, **22:4**
- Employees of public accounting firms, original information, **22:10**
- Employees of public and private companies, **22:17**
- Employer-employee relationship, whistleblower protection outside, **22:34**
- Exceptions to limitations, original information, **22:11**
- Excluded persons, information from, **22:13**
- Extraterritoriality, protection, application of law, **22:31**
- First Circuit decision, Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:19, 22:20**
- Foreign countries, protection, application of law, **22:31**
- Judicial action covered, Whistleblower Bounty Program, **22:3**
- Judicial enforcement action success, information leading to, **22:14**
- Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:18 et seq.**
- Limitations in original information, **22:8, 22:12**
- 1988 bounty program under SEA § 21A(e), **22:2**
- NY Ethics Committee opinion 746, bounty program, duties and

**WHISTLEBLOWERS—Cont'd**

- responsibilities, **22:40**
- Officer or director, original information, **22:9**
- Original information
  - Generally, **22:7**
  - Accountants, **22:10**
  - Attorney-client privilege, **22:8**
  - Compliance personnel, **22:9**
  - Employees of public accounting firms, **22:10**
  - Exceptions to limitations, **22:11**
  - Limitations, **22:8, 22:12**
  - Officer or director, information obtained by, **22:9**
  - Public accounting firm employees, **22:10**
  - Trustee, information obtained by, **22:9**
  - Unlawfully obtained information, **22:12**
  - Voluntary submission, **22:6**
- Private actions, employers, **22:16**
- Private anti-retaliation actions by, **22:29**
- Proof of retaliatory intent, Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **22:24**
- Protection
  - Dodd-Frank Whistleblower Bounty Program, **22:16 et seq.**
  - Employer-employee relationship, whistleblower protection outside, **22:34**
  - Proceedings, **22:32**
- Public and private company employees, **22:17**
- Reasonable belief standard, **22:16**
- Related actions covered, Whistleblower Bounty Program, **22:4**
- Reporting rights preservation, **22:33**
- Reports, SEC, definition of whistleblower, **22:25 et seq.**
- Retaliation, protection, Dodd-Frank Whistleblower Bounty Program, **22:16 et seq.**
- Sarbanes-Oxley Act
  - Generally, **22:16 et seq.**

**WHISTLEBLOWERS—Cont'd**

- Sarbanes-Oxley Act—Cont'd
    - Amicus curiae, Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:21**
    - Bounty program, duties and responsibilities, SEC Series 205, **22:37**
    - Extraterritoriality, **22:31**
    - First Circuit decision, Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:19, 22:20**
    - Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:18 et seq.**
    - Proof of retaliatory intent, **22:24**
    - Public and private company employees, **22:17**
    - Supreme Court decision, Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:22**
  - SEC decisions regarding bounty claims under SEA § 21F, **20:15**
  - SEC investigations, **20:14, 20:15**
  - SEC rules, definition, **22:23**
  - Securities Exchange Act, protection, **22:16**
  - SEC v. National Student Marketing Corp., bounty program, duties and responsibilities, **22:36**
  - State rules of professional conduct, bounty program, duties and responsibilities, **22:39**
  - Successful enforcement action, information leading to, **22:14**
  - Supreme Court decisions
    - Digital Realty Trust, Inc. v. Somers, **22:23, 22:26 to 28**
    - Lawson v. FMR LLC, **22:22**
  - Trustee, information obtained by, **22:9**
  - UBS Securities decision, proof of retaliatory intent under Sarbanes-Oxley Act, **22:24**
  - Unlawfully obtained information, **22:12**
  - Voluntary submission of original information, **22:6**
- WILLFULNESS**
- Criminal enforcement, SEC references, **13:127**
  - Intent (this index)
  - Knowledge (this index)

INDEX

**WILLFULNESS—Cont'd**

- Manipulation, defendant's willfulness, **8:121**
- Scienter (this index)

**WILLIAMS BILL**

- Generally, **6:13**

**WIRE FRAUD**

- See Mail and Wire Fraud (this index)

**WIRETAP IN ENFORCEMENT**

- Authority, **13:145**
- Control of wiretap results, **13:148**
- Galleon cases, **13:146, 13:153**
- Insider trading, **13:146, 13:153**
- Judicial approval, **13:151**
- Privacy interests, **13:149, 13:150**
- Public access, **13:149**

**WIRETAP IN ENFORCEMENT**

**—Cont'd**

- Rajaratnam case issues yet to be resolved, **13:153**
- Relevancy of wiretap, **13:152**
- Review, **13:147**
- SEC access, **13:150**
- SEC investigation, **13:144 et seq.**

**WORLDCOM**

- Injunctions and ancillary relief, **13:109**

**ZANFORD CASE**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing, **7:117**

**ZONE**

- Indirect-impersonal dealing
- Curtailing scheme to defraud, **7:78**